



DEPARTMENT OF THE NAVY
HEADQUARTERS UNITED STATES MARINE CORPS
WASHINGTON, DC 20380-0001

MCO 3501.14
C 461
7 OCT 94

MARINE CORPS ORDER 3501.14

From: Commandant of the Marine Corps
To: Distribution List

Subj: MARINE CORPS, COMBAT READINESS EVALUATION SYSTEM (SHORT
TITLE: MCCRES); VOLUME X PART A, TANK UNITS

Ref: (a) MCO 3501.1B

Encl: (1) Volume X Part A - Mission Performance Standards
(MPS's) for Tank Units.

1. Purpose. To promulgate Volume X Part A of MCCRES for use in the training and evaluation of tank units per the reference.
2. Cancellation. MCO 3501.11 Sections 10B, 10C, 10D and 10X.
3. Information. The reference establishes MCCRES for implementation within the Marine Corps. The enclosure, supported by the policies and procedures set forth in the reference provides the MPS's for use in evaluation of the combat readiness of tank units to perform combat operations.
4. Action. Commanders will:
 - a. Use the MPS's contained in the enclosure as guidelines for establishing training goals, training programs, and to prepare for formal readiness evaluations as directed by higher headquarters per the reference.
 - b. When appropriate, use the MPS's for informal evaluations, and/or as an inventory to determine a unit's current training status and areas for future progressive training programs.
 - c. Make every effort to conduct evaluations when the unit is participating in their appropriate role as part of a Marine Air Ground Task Force (MAGTF) with adequate maneuver space. For tank battalions, twelve square kilometers is considered adequate maneuver space. For tank companies, four square kilometers is considered adequate. For tank platoons, two square kilometers is considered adequate. This method will strengthen integration efforts and give a more complete evaluation of realistic combat readiness.

MCO 3501.14
07 Oct 94

5. Reserve Applicability. This Order is applicable to the Marine Corps Reserve.



B. B. KNUTSON, JR.

DISTRIBUTION: PCN 10203354200

Copy to: 7000110 (55)
7000106 (5)
7000144/8145001 (1)
8145004; 005 (2)

VOLUME X PART A

MISSION PERFORMANCE STANDARDS

TANK UNITS

INTRODUCTION

This MCCRES is divided into five sections: section A contains the tank battalion tasks, section B contains the tank company tasks, section C contains the tank platoon tasks, section D contains the scout platoon tasks, and section E contains the AT(Tow) platoon tasks.

MCCRES MPS's establish the minimum acceptable standards to properly execute the tank communities basic missions. Fundamental to the mission of the tank community is the battalion's ability to execute standard tactical missions listed in the mission performance standards table of contents. The tasks and standards within the MPS's are derived from doctrine, tactics, techniques and procedures, Army Training and Evaluation Program (ARTEP) elements and recommendations from Marine Commands.

The MCCRES and its MPS's have been developed with the goal of enhancing the training readiness of Marine Corps units. The system endeavors to accomplish this by developing a comprehensive series of MPS's for all functional areas of the MAGTF. The MPS's, tasks and standards, attempt to cover the basic missions a tank unit is expected to perform in combat. The MCCRES is not an end "in and of itself" but a basis from which to prepare for "fighting smart" in accordance with FMFM 1. It is understood that only a certain number of these elements can be evaluated during any one exercise. Available training areas, environmental restrictions, units to be supported, external support, time, and scenario will influence the number of MCCRES MPS's that can be evaluated. However, a series of exercises based upon evaluation objectives derived from a viable unit training program should expand the number of MCCRES tasks to be evaluated and assist in assessing a unit's overall combat readiness. Opportunities should be sought to evaluate those standards not evaluated in a given recent exercise. Keeping this in mind will help avoid the problem of going year after year with certain areas repeatedly not being evaluated.

It is preferred that a tank unit be evaluated as part of a MAGTF in the field. Herein, the role of tank unit commanders is critical. Dynamic leadership and the unit's proficiency in executing their tactical missions will be the basis for a successful demonstration of combat readiness.

Tasks are evaluated using the "90 percent rule". This rule allows the evaluator to score a "YES", when based on his observation the unit/element attempted and successfully met the standard's criteria at least 90 percent of the time. See the current edition of MCO 3501.1.

EVALUATOR

MCCRES MPS's for tank units presupposes that personnel and logistics support are sufficient to meet minimum acceptable standards; but it is acknowledged that sufficient people, supplies, and equipment are not always available. The unit is not penalized if they cannot attempt all the standards. When such external factors contribute to limiting a unit's combat readiness, it should be noted in the "COMMENTS" column of an evaluation sheet and recorded in the overall evaluation report.

ENCLOSURE (1)

TABLE OF CONTENTS

	<u>PAGE</u>
<u>SECTION 10A - TANK BATTALION</u>	
MPS 10A.1	X-A-1
COMMAND AND CONTROL	
MPS 10A.2	X-A-13
INTELLIGENCE	
MPS 10A.3	X-A-16
MANEUVER	
MPS 10A.4	X-A-56
FIRE SUPPORT	
MPS 10A.5	X-A-60
MOBILITY/SURVIVABILITY	
MPS 10A.6	X-A-62
AIR DEFENSE	
MPS 10A.7	X-A-65
COMBAT SERVICE SUPPORT	
MPS 10A.8	X-A-76
NBC	
MPS 10A.9	X-A-83
AMPHIBIOUS OPERATIONS	
<u>SECTION 10B - TANK COMPANY</u>	
MPS 10B.1	X-B-1
COMMAND AND CONTROL	
MPS 10B.2	X-B-3
INTELLIGENCE	
MPS 10B.3	X-B-5
MANEUVER	
MPS 10B.4	X-B-50
FIRE SUPPORT	
MPS 10B.5	X-B-53
MOBILITY AND COUNTERMOBILITY	
MPS 10B.6	X-B-56
AIR DEFENSE	
MPS 10B.7	X-B-59
COMBAT SERVICE SUPPORT	
MPS 10B.8	X-B-70
NBC	
MPS 10B.9	X-B-76
AMPHIBIOUS OPERATIONS	
<u>SECTION 10C - TANK PLATOON</u>	
MPS 10C.1	X-C-1
COMMAND, CONTROL, AND COMMUNICATIONS	
MPS 10C.2	X-C-11
INTELLIGENCE AND ELECTRONIC WARFARE	
MPS 10C.3	X-C-17
MANEUVER	
MPS 10C.4	X-C-50
MOBILITY, COUNTERMOBILITY, AND SURVIVABILITY	
MPS 10C.5	X-C-54
AIR DEFENSE	
MPS 10C.6	X-C-57
COMBAT SERVICE SUPPORT	
MPS 10C.7	X-C-61
NBC	

	PAGE
<u>SECTION 10D - SCOUT PLATOON</u>	
MPS 10D.1	X-D-1
COMMAND, CONTROL, AND COMMUNICATIONS	
MPS 10D.2	X-D-10
INTELLIGENCE AND ELECTRONIC WARFARE	
MPS 10D.3	X-D-14
MANEUVER	
MPS 10D.4	X-D-32
MOBILITY AND COUNTERMOBILITY	
MPS 10D.5	X-D-34
AIR DEFENSE	
MPS 10D.6	X-D-36
COMBAT SERVICE SUPPORT	
MPS 10D.7	X-D-40
NBC	
<u>SECTION 10E - AT (TOW) PLATOON</u>	
MPS 10E.1	X-E-1
MANEUVER	
MPS 10E.2	X-E-12
RECONNAISSANCE AND SECURITY	
MPS 10E.3	X-E-16
SUSTAINMENT	
MPS 10E.4	X-E-26
NBC	

ENCLOSURE (1)

SECTION 10A

TANK BATTALION

ENCLOSURE (1)

TABLE OF CONTENTS

	<u>PAGE</u>
<u>MPS 10A.1 - COMMAND AND CONTROL</u>	
TASK 10A.1.1	X-A-1
CAD AND CONTROL THE BATTALION	
TASK 10A.1.2	X-A-3
PERFORM 53 OPERATIONS	
TASK 10A.1.3	X-A-6
CAD GROUP OPERATIONS	
TASK 10A.1.4	X-A-10
MAINTAIN COMMUNICATIONS	
TASK 10A.1.5	X-A-11
MOVE A COMMAND GROUP	
TASK 10A.1.6	X-A-11
ESTABLISH A STATIONARY COMMAND GROUP	
<u>MPS 10A.2 - INTELLIGENCE</u>	
TASK 10A.2.1	X-A-13
PERFORM INTELLIGENCE OPERATIONS	
TASK 10A.2.2	X-A-13
PERFORM 52 OPERATIONS	
<u>MPS 10A.3 - MANEUVER</u>	
TASK 10A.3.1	X-A-16
OCCUPY AN ASSEMBLY AREA	
TASK 10A.3.2	X-A-17
PERFORM TACTICAL ROAD MARCH	
TASK 10A.3.3	X-A-20
PERFORM PASSAGE OF LINES	
TASK 10A.3.4	X-A-22
MOVE TACTICALLY	
TASK 10A.3.5	X-A-24
PERFORM HASTY RIVER/GAP CROSSING	
TASK 10A.3.6	X-A-25
FIGHT A MEETING ENGAGEMENT	
TASK 10A.3.7	X-A-27
ASSAULT	
TASK 10A.3.8	X-A-29
ATTACK/ COUNTERATTACK BY FIRE	
TASK 10A.3.9	X-A-30
DEFEND	
TASK 10A.3.10	X-A-32
COVER PASSAGE OF LINES	
TASK 10A.3.11	X-A-34
WITHDRAW NOT UNDER ENEMY PRESSURE	
TASK 10A.3.12	X-A-35
WITHDRAW UNDER ENEMY PRESSURE	
TASK 10A.3.13	X-A-37
DELAY	
TASK 10A.3.14	X-A-38
PERFORM A RELIEF IN PLACE	
TASK 10A.3.15	X-A-39
PERFORM LINKUP	
TASK 10A.3.16	X-A-40
PERFORM RESERVE OPERATIONS	
TASK 10A.3.17	X-A-42
PERFORM REAR OPERATIONS	
TASK 10A.3.18	X-A-43
INFILTRATE	
TASK 10A.3.19	X-A-45
BYPASS ENEMY FORCE	
TASK 10A.3.20	X-A-46
CONSOLIDATE AND REORGANIZE	

TASK 10A.3.21	. . . . .	X-A-47
	BREAKOUT FROM ENCIRCLEMENT	
TASK 10A.3.22	. . . . .	X-A-48
	PERFORM SCREEN	
TASK 10A.3.23	. . . . .	X-A-50
	PERFORM GUARD OPERATION	
TASK 10A.3.24	. . . . .	X-A-51
	BREACH DEFENDED OBSTACLES	
TASK 10A.3.25	. . . . .	X-A-54
	MAINTAIN OPERATION SECURITY	

MPS 10A.4 - FIRE SUPPORT

TASK 10A.4.1	. . . . .	X-A-56
	EMPLOY FIRE SUPPORT	
TASK 10A.4.2	. . . . .	X-A-57
	OPERATE FIRE SUPPORT COORDINATION CENTER	

MPS 10A.5 - MOBILITY/SURVIVABILITY

TASK 10A.5.1	. . . . .	X-A-60
	PERFORM MOBILITY/SURVIVABILITY SURVEY	
TASK 10A.5.2	. . . . .	X-A-62
	REACT TO INDIRECT FIRE	

MPS 10A.6 - AIR DEFENSE

TASK 10A.6.1	. . . . .	X-A-62
	PERFORM AIR DEFENSE OPERATIONS	
TASK 10A.6.2	. . . . .	X-A-63
	DEFEND AGAINST AN AIR ATTACK	

MPS 10A. 7 - COMBAT SERVICE SUPPORT

TASK 10A.7.1	. . . . .	X-A-65
	PERFORM COMBAT SERVICE SUPPORT OPERATIONS	
TASK 10A.7.2	. . . . .	X-A-69
	OPERATE COMBAT TRAINS CP	
TASK 10A.7.3	. . . . .	X-A-73
	OPERATE FIELD TRAINS	
TASK 10A.7.4	. . . . .	X-A-74
	OPERATE PERSONNEL ADMINISTRATION CENTER	
TASK 10A.7.5	. . . . .	X-A-75
	TREAT AND EVACUATE CASUALTIES	

MPS 10A.8 - NBC

TASK 10A.8.1	. . . . .	X-A-76
	REACT TO CHEMICAL ATTACK	
TASK 10A.8.2	. . . . .	X-A-79
	REACT TO A NUCLEAR ATTACK	
TASK 10A.8.3	. . . . .	X-A-81
	PREPARE FOR A CHEMICAL ATTACK	
TASK 10A.8.4	. . . . .	X-A-82
	PREPARE FOR A NUCLEAR ATTACK	

MPS 10A.9 - AMPHIBIOUS OPERATIONS

TASK 10A.9.1	. . . . .	X-A-83
	CONDUCT AMPHIBIOUS STAFF PLANNING	
TASK 10A.9.2	. . . . .	X-A-84
	DEVELOP THE LANDING PLAN	
TASK 10A.9.3	. . . . .	X-A-85
	CONDUCT ASSAULT LANDING	
TASK 10A.9.4	. . . . .	X-A-87
	CONDUCT PLANNING FOR AMPHIBIOUS WITHDRAWAL	
TASK 10A.9.5	. . . . .	X-A-88
	CONDUCT AMPHIBIOUS WITHDRAWAL	

10A.1 COMMAND AND CONTROL

TASK: 10A.1.1 COMMAND AND CONTROL THE BATTALION

CONDITION(S): The higher headquarters issues an operation order, warning order, or fragmentary order.

STANDARDS: EVAL: Y; N; NE

- .1 ____ Battalion leaders issue the warning order.
 - a. A complete warning order is issued.
 - b. Warning order is received by all platoons.
- .2 ____ Battalion commander analyzes mission and gives initial guidance.
 - a. Guidance includes restated mission, which includes higher headquarters commander's intent for the the battalion, and identifies all specified and implied tasks.
 - b. Guidance includes instructions on planning time available, information requirements and initially required preparation actions (movement/resupply) to start.
- .3 ____ Battalion accomplishes reconnaissance and other actions to gather needed information.
 - a. Reconnaissance actions begin to physically gain information on the enemy and terrain as early as possible.
 - b. Commander/subordinate leaders and staff conduct personal reconnaissance when possible. If not, the commander conducts a detailed map reconnaissance.
 - c. Staff coordinates with subordinate, higher, supported, and adjacent headquarters to gather information for planning.
 - d. Staff provides operations, intelligence, and CSS estimates to include all critical METT-TSL factors.
- .4 ____ Battalion commander develops and war games courses of action, and selects one.
 - a. Tactically feasible courses of action (include CS and maneuver) are made and war gamed with the available staff.
 - b. An appropriate course of action is selected.
- .5 ____ Staff develops an operation order from the commander's guidance.
- .6 ____ Battalion commander and staff issue the operation order/fragmentary order.
 - a. Operation order/fragmentary order is issued, and makes full use of all available time.
 - b. Operation order/fragmentary order accomplishes all directed tasks and complies with the higher headquarters commander's intent.
 - c. All subordinate and supporting units receive the operation order/fragmentary order.
 - d. Operation order is a five paragraph order (a matrix order is acceptable in the field). Fragmentary Order contains at a minimum mission and execution and those elements that have changed (to include task organization and fire support changes).
 - e. Order is given at a location that reduces travel time, allows observation of the zone/sector, and promotes OPSEC.
 - f. Battalion commander conducts brief backs and war gaming after the order to ensure subordinate understanding and reaction (time permitting).
 - g. Subordinate leaders and staff perform lateral coordination before leaving the orders site.

- .7 _____ Commander and staff coordinate and refine the plan.
 - a. Continue gathering information and improve the plan (contingency plans, fire plans).
 - b. Disseminate and coordinate critical new information with higher, adjacent, and supporting headquarters.
- .8 _____ Battalion executes changes in task organization.
 - a. Coordinates linkup location, time, and designates responsible unit.
 - b. Attachments/new units are received at the coordinated location and time; updated on current situation, operation orders, and communications; and resupplied.
 - c. Detachments reach the linkup point at the time and place directed.
- .9 _____ Battalion prepares, and commander and staff conduct, supervise, and monitor preparations.
 - a. Maintains status of preparations.
 - b. Units make effective use of time to prepare for the operation.
- .10 _____ Battalion sees the battlefield.
 - a. Command groups are positioned to see, move and communicate.
 - b. Companies and other subordinates accurately report critical information within five minutes.
 - c. Collects, analyzes, and passes processed critical information.
 - d. Subordinates execute intelligence collection plan.
- .11 _____ Commanders command and control the execution.
 - a. Subordinate units report enemy and friendly actions, change in status, and any other factors that would require change within five minutes.
 - b. Commanders win the battle by directing the maneuver of units, controlling direct and indirect fires, and directing other actions to cope with new METT-TSL factors.
Indicators are:
 - 1) Units not following operation order are corrected.
 - 2) Responses to new METT-TSL are directed when new situation occurs.
 - 3) No friendly casualties inflicted by friendly direct or indirect fires.
 - 4) Number/percentage of direct fire weapons engaging enemy.
 - 5) Number of indirect fire missions fired and percentage achieving desired effects.
 - 6) Bomb damage assessment on enemy forces.
 - 7) Number of friendly casualties.
 - c. Command and control, and CSS assets are controlled to support maneuver effort.
Indicators are:
 - 1) Effective CSS, and command and control.
 - 2) Command and control or CSS unit not destroyed by enemy direct fires.
 - d. Fragmentary orders are clear, concise, and quickly executed by subordinates.
 - e. Changes that affect the battle are disseminated within five minutes.

7 Oct 94

- .12 _____ Subordinate commanders, leaders, and staff laterally coordinate actions during the battle. (All battle actions requiring coordination between battalion subordinate units are laterally coordinated.)
- .13 _____ Battalion coordinates with higher, adjacent and supporting headquarters.
- .14 _____ Battalion reports. (Battalion command group submits all critical and required reports to higher headquarters. They report events to adjacent and supporting units that impact on them in time for those units to react).

KEY INDICATORS:CRITICAL STANDARDS

- a. The battalion plan accomplishes the directed specified tasks IAW the higher headquarters commander's intent. The plan is received and understood by the leadership of the battalion. It is coordinated with higher, adjacent, and supporting units.
 - b. The battalion is prepared to initiate the mission at the directed time.
 - c. Planning process directly relates to time available.
 - d. The battalion controls and synchronizes subordinate and supporting units so that it accomplishes the mission and preserves the force.
 - e. The battalion keeps higher, adjacent, subordinate, supporting, and supported headquarters informed.
-

TASK: 10A.1.2 PERFORM S3 OPERATIONS

CONDITION(S): The battalion section plans, coordinates, supervises, and communicates to ensure accomplishment of the mission.

STANDARDS: EVAL: Y; N; NE

- .1 _____ S3 section maintains communications with-
 - a. Higher headquarters.
 - b. Subordinate and supporting units.
 - c. Logistic trains.
- .2 _____ S3 section issues warning order.
 - a. Warning order is issued to all subordinates and staff within 30 minutes of receipt of a higher headquarters order or instructions from the battalion commander.
 - b. Warning order is complete. It contains the mission, time, and place of receipt of the operation order; and any necessary preparatory instructions.
 - c. S3 section acknowledges and records receipt by all subordinates.
- .3 _____ S3 section collects and updates information.
 - a. Estimate is correct and current, and contains friendly status impacting on the operation from-
 - 1) Higher headquarters situation.
 - 2) Logistic trains-combat status of the battalion.

X-A-3

ENCLOSURE (1)

- 3) Fire support status.
- 4) Other supporting units-combat status.
- 5) S2 provides enemy, terrain, and weather information.

b. Information is updated before the commander's war gaming.

.4 ____ S3 section issues fragmentary orders to implement guidance or directions.

.5 ____ S3, combat engineer, and fire support coordinator plan and coordinate mobility, countermobility, and survivability operations.

- a. Plan makes use of battalion assets to conduct mobility, countermobility, and survivability tasks to support the commander's intent.
- b. All avenues of approach are identified and correctly classified.
- c. Routes for movement of maneuver units, support units, and evacuation are identified.
- d. Existing obstacles and likely/effective potential positions for reinforcing obstacles along enemy approaches, friendly approaches, and routes are identified.
- e. Physical reconnaissance is conducted to find/verify route, approach, and obstacles characteristics.
- f. Critical mobility, countermobility, and survivability tasks are selected and listed in priority IAW their contributions to concept of operations and mission accomplishment.
- g. Tasks are assigned for execution. Executors allocate resources. Coordination made with unit controlling the ground by tasked unit.
- h. Required reports are received from emplacing units and are submitted to higher headquarters.
- i. Subordinate units are informed of obstacle completion status.

.6 ____ S3 and Air Officer (AO) plan and coordinate air defense.

- a. Plan provides for continuous coverage of critical vulnerable battalion units and maximum possible passive protection of all units to best support the mission.
- b. S2, and AO identify enemy air approaches.
- c. S3 and AO establishes priority of protection to air defense units to best cover the battalion.
- d. S3 and AO coordinates coverage from higher headquarters-controlled air defense assets.
- e. S3 changes air defense priority of protection to meet new METT-TSL factors.
- f. S3 disseminates early warning of enemy air from higher headquarters or presence of friendly air within one minute.
- g. S3 passes information of enemy air to higher headquarters within one minute.

.7 ____ S3 and S2 plan and coordinate R, S&C plan.

- a. Plan provides for information gathering in support of EEIs, TAIIs and NAIIs.
- b. Plan includes deception and EW operations.

.8 ____ NBC officer plans and coordinates NBC defense.

- a. Provides NBC information for estimates to include:

- 1) Analyzing enemy NBC threat.

ENCLOSURE (1)

7 Oct 94

- 2) Identifying NBC posture/capabilities.
 - 3) Recommending MOPP levels, personnel safety, and other command NBC guidance.
 - 4) Identifying decontamination sites.
- b. Supervises NBC monitoring and reconnaissance efforts to find all contamination.
 - c. Recommends an increase or decrease in NBC protective postures.
 - d. Maintains accurate and complete radiological exposure status.
 - e. Analyses, prepares, and disseminates needed NBC reports.
- .9 ____ S3 section develops an operation order from the commander's guidance.
- a. Operation order implements the commander's guidance and intent.
 - b. Operation order is prepared for issuance at time directed by the commander.
 - c. Operation order accomplishes all directed missions and tasks, complies with the higher headquarters commander's intent.
 - d. Operation order must contain an operations overlay.
- .10 ____ S3 section refines plans, coordinates and supervises preparation activities, and disseminates new information.
- a. Critical new information is quickly disseminated to the commander, staff, and subordinate/supporting headquarters.
 - b. Preparation actions and combat status of all supporting units are currently and accurately maintained (reconnaissance, construction of obstacles/survivability positions, resupply, maintenance, locations and actions of subordinate/supporting units, and movement).
 - c. Preparation problems are identified, corrected, or coordinated with the appropriate unit for correction.
 - d. Detachment and attachment are coordinated.
- .11 ____ S3 coordinates with adjacent and supporting units.
- a. Exchange overlays and orders with adjacent units.
 - b. Forward, adjacent, supporting, and supported units are kept abreast of any developments in the battalion impacting on their operations.
 - c. Any events impacting on the forward, adjacent, supporting, and supported units that will impact on the battalion's operation on higher headquarters command net are monitored and passed to the commander, command group, or appropriate unit.
- .12 ____ S3 supports the command, control, and coordination of the battle.
- a. Issues fragmentary orders for the commander.
 - b. Passes processed information coming on other nets and keeps the commander updated by providing concise consolidated updates.
 - c. Coordinates with adjacent and supporting units.
 - d. Controls actions the commander cannot.
 - e. Communicates to subordinates the commander cannot reach.
 - f. Coordinates additional support from higher headquarters.
 - g. Acts as NCS for command net.

ENCLOSURE (1)

h. Plans for future operations.

.13 ____ S3 reports.

a. Higher headquarters can follow the battle.

b. All required operational reports are submitted IAW higher headquarters SOP.

KEY INDICATORS:

CRITICAL STANDARDS

a. The S3 section plans, coordinate, supervise, and communicates to ensure accomplishment of the mission.

b. The S3 section sends the required operational reports to higher headquarters IAW the higher headquarters SOP.

TASK: 10A.1.3 COMMAND GROUP OPERATIONS

CONDITION(S): The battalion conducts tactical operations against an enemy.

STANDARDS: EVAL: Y; N; NE

.1 ____ Command group is located where it can control the battle.

a. Command group survives.

b. Command groups are positioned to maintain communication with -

1) All companies.

2) Battalion CP.

3) Scout platoon.

4) Higher headquarters tactical CP.

5) Fire support agencies.

6) Other maneuver units (passage of lines, relief in place).

c. XO positions to assume command as required.

.2 ____ Command groups maintains situational awareness.

.3 ____ Command group directs the maneuver and fires of combat units and direct changes in mission/tasks as required.

.4 ____ FSC coordinates the execution of fire support.

a. Fire support assists the battalion to accomplish the mission and does not fire on friendly forces.

b. FSC modifies the fire support plan to conform to new factors of METT-TSL or new guidance from the battalion commander. He changes priorities of fires or priority of targets, or gives other fire support guidance.

c. FSC coordinates the actions of fire support representatives.

.5 ____ AO allocates CAS/CIFS.

Enclosure (1)

7 Oct 94

- a. CAS/CIFS strikes support mission success.
 - b. CAS/CIFS does not strike friendly units.
- .6 ____ Command group performs lateral coordination with adjacent/forward battalions.
- a. XO/S3 augments the reports of subordinate unit to keep the CP informed of the forward tactical situation.
 - b. Sends critical reports to the higher headquarters.
- .7 ____ CP issues warning orders.
- .8 ____ Battalion commander or command group analyzes mission.
- a. Higher headquarters commanders intent is identified.
 - b. All specified and implied tasks are identified.
 - c. Commander is updated within five minutes if he is not located with command group or aware of higher headquarters order.
- .9 ____ Command group collects or updates estimates.
- a. S3, and logistics trains provide current and accurate friendly status. Initial status is provided within 15 minutes. Completed estimates are available before commander's war gaming.
 - b. S2 provides intelligence estimate within 15 minutes, and situational and events templates before commander begins war gaming.
- .10 ____ Battalion commander or CP OIC gives initial guidance.
- a. Restates mission, which includes higher headquarters commanders intent for battalion, and identifies all specified and implied tasks.
 - b. Disseminates instructions on information requirements and initially required preparation actions (movement, resupply).
 - c. Presents initial guidance within 30 minutes of receipt of order.
- .11 ____ Command group issues warning orders implementing movement, reconnaissance, and other preparations.
- .12 ____ Command group coordinates collection of additional information.
- a. Staff collects all needed and available information from higher headquarters, supporting units, adjacent units, and subordinates to update estimates.
 - b. All information directed by the battalion commander is collected.
 - c. Information is available when the commander returns from reconnaissance and finishes war gaming.
- .13 ____ Battalion commander and staff develop and war game courses of action and select one.
- a. Tactically feasible and full courses of action are made and war gamed with the available staff.
 - b. Selected course of action accomplishes the mission and all directed tasks, and complies with the higher headquarters commander's intent.
 - c. Selected course of action is war gamed and refined by the commander and staff so the staff understands the concept, produces a sound operation order, and rehearses the battle. The commander's concept and guidance for preparation of the order includes:
 - 1) An intent (overall purpose and end result).
 - 2) Designation of main effort (for each phase if shifting is envisioned).

ENCLOSURE (1)

X-A-7

- 3) A scheme of maneuver outlining missions, movement, and primary tasks of all combat units to include reserves through completion of mission.
 - 4) A plan of fires outlining fire support available, tasks, and priorities for fire support.
 - 5) A plan for engineer support outlining missions, primary tasks, and priorities for attached or supporting engineers.
 - 6) Operations, primary tasks, priorities, and air defense, or other CS units.
 - 7) Operations, primary tasks, and priorities for battalion CSS.
- .14 _____ Command group and staff develop the operation order from the commander's guidance.
- a. The operation order complies with the commander's guidance.
 - b. The operation order is completed at the time directed.
- .15 _____ Battalion commander or CP OIC reviews, modifies, and approves the operation order.
- .16 _____ Battalion issues the operation order/fragmentary order/warning order.
- a. Operation order/fragmentary order/warning order is issued IAW one-third, two-thirds rule and makes full use of daylight time.
 - b. Operation order/fragmentary order/warning order accomplishes all directed missions and tasks, complies with the higher headquarters commander's intent, and is doctrinally sound.
 - c. All subordinate and supporting units receive the operation order.
 - d. Higher headquarters and adjacent units receive battalion operation order.
 - e. Operation order issued with an annotated overlay.
 - f. The operation order has -
 - 1) Task organization.
 - 2) Mission.
 - 3) Concept and intent for maneuver, fire support plan, and mobility, countermobility, and survivability.
 - 4) Missions/tasks for each subordinate and fire support asset.
 - 5) Coordinating instructions needed to synchronize the efforts of maneuver forces and combat support.
 - 6) Necessary CSS instructions.
 - g. If more time is available, a more developed operation order is issued. (An initial fragmentary order may be issued to allow subordinates to begin preparation.)
 - h. If possible, order is given at a location that reduces travel time, allows observation of the zone/sector, and promotes OPSEC.
 - i. If time is available, the battalion commander conducts brief backs and war gaming immediately after the order to improve subordinate understanding and reaction.
 - j. Subordinate leaders and staff should conduct lateral coordination before leaving the orders site.
- .17 _____ Command group refine plans, coordinate and supervise preparation activities, and disseminate new information.

- a. Time is used to continue gathering information and to improve the plan (develop contingency plans, refine fire plans).
- b. Critical new information is disseminated to the commander, staff, and subordinate/supporting headquarters.
- c. Preparation and combat status are kept current and accurately maintained (reconnaissance, construction of obstacles/survivability positions, resupply, maintenance, locations and actions of subordinate/supporting units, movement).
- d. Preparation problems are identified, corrected, or coordinated with the appropriate unit for correction.

.18 ____ Signal officer prepares a communication plan. The plan -

- a. Provides for antijamming (alternate frequencies, code words).
- b. Coordinates issuance of CEOs.
- c. Provides for use of relays to maintain communications with subordinates.
- d. Recommends alternate means of communication for radios.

.19 ____ CP supports the command group command, control, and coordination of the battle. The CP -

- a. Issues fragmentary orders for the commander.
- b. Analyzes and collates information from other nets, and keeps the commander updated by providing concise and consolidated updates.
- c. Coordinates with adjacent and supporting units.
- d. Provides critical CS and CSS information to the commander.
- e. Communicates to subordinates who the commander cannot reach.
- f. Coordinates additional support from higher headquarters.
- g. Performs any action needed to support the commander fighting the battle.

.20 ____ CP reports.

- a. Reports allow the higher headquarters to follow the battle.
- b. Reports are accurate, follow prescribed formats, and submitted NLT time specified in operation orders or SOPs.

KEY INDICATORS:

CRITICAL STANDARDS

- a. The command group coordinates and directs the maneuver of combat units, controls direct and indirect fires, and coordinates other critical activities to win the battle.
- b. The commander informs the command group of anticipated changes in subordinate unit missions.
- c. The CP plans, coordinates, supervises and communicates to ensure the successful accomplishment of the assigned mission.
- d. The CP submits required operational/intelligence reports to the higher headquarters IAW higher headquarters SOP.
- e. The CP is not destroyed.
- f. There is a smooth transition of command, control, and communication between forward, main, and rear command groups as the situation dictates.

ENCLOSURE (1)

TASK: 10A.1.4 MAINTAIN COMMUNICATIONS

CONDITION(S): The command group conducts tactical operations in support of the battalion. The enemy can employ deception jamming and reconnaissance operations.

STANDARDS: EVAL: Y; N; NE

- .1 ____ Command group establishes radio communication at the start of tactical operations. (All external and internal designated frequencies and key settings are applied to the equipment within 15 minutes without error.)
- .2 ____ Command group establishes alternate communications means. (Wire or messengers are used when possible with priority to main combat trains link.)
- .3 ____ Command group maintains communications.
 - a. Communications are maintained with all subordinate units and higher headquarters stations with no interruptions.
 - b. Only approved radiotelephone procedures are used.
 - c. Command group encodes all critical messages without error.
 - d. Command group decodes all critical messages without error.
 - a. Command group keeps transmissions to 15 seconds.
 - f. Command group uses challenge and reply authentication IAW CEOI without error.
 - g. Radio listening silence is observed as directed.
 - h. Radio silence is violated only on commander's order.
 - i. Lowest possible power settings and directional antennas are used when possible.
 - j. Command group continues to communicate while the enemy attempts to jam communication.
 - k. MIJI reports are submitted within five minutes after attempted jam.

KEY INDICATORS:

CRITICAL STANDARDS

- a. The command group maintains communication with required internal/external units.
- b. The command group does not become acquired and engaged by the enemy due to detection of electronic signatures.

ENCLOSURE (1)

TASK: 10A.1.5 MOVE A COMMAND GROUP

CONDITION(S): Tactical operations require the command group to move to a new location.

STANDARDS: EVAL: Y; N; NE

- .1 ____ Command group establishes two echelons ("A" command and "B" command).
- .2 ____ Command group first echelon moves to the new location.
 - a. Movement is conducted to maintain survivability while meeting the operation requirements- (Command group arrives at the right site at the right time.)
 - b. Command group moves to the new site on a covered and concealed route.
 - c. Command group maintains communications with all units.
- .3 ____ Second echelon becomes assumes control of battle - if required.
- .4 ____ Remainder (second echelon) moves to the new site.
 - a. Moves to the new site on a covered and concealed route.
 - b. Moves to the new site after the new site is operational.

KEY INDICATORS:

CRITICAL STANDARDS

- a. The command group moves to a new location while the alternate command group maintains essential functions. Command group is not surprised by the enemy.

TASK: 10A.1.6 ESTABLISH A STATIONARY COMMAND GROUP

CONDITION(S): The battalion conducts a tactical operation against an organized enemy.

STANDARDS: EVAL: Y; N; NE

- .1 ____ Command group establishes communications in appropriate battalion and higher headquarters radio nets.
- .2 ____ Establish security to provide early warning.
 - a. Security is in place before command group arrives.
 - b. Security force provides all-round protection.
 - c. OPs are on likely avenues of approach. OPs are as far forward as possible while still being within small-arms support range. Wire communications are maintained with OPs.
 - d. Security measures are upgraded, as time allows. Booby traps, trip wires, listening devices, and patrols are employed.
 - e. M8 NBC alarms are properly emplaced.
- .3 ____ Establish a perimeter defense of the site.
 - a. Ensure an immediate reaction force is available.

ENCLOSURE (1)

- b. Continually, upgrade defensive position, when time allows. Add overhead cover, cut fields of fire, harden fighting positions with sandbags, and camouflage area.
- c. Employ obstacles IAW factors of METT-TSL. Add wire and mines on high-speed avenues of approach.
- d. Select and prepare armored vehicles primary and alternate firing positions.
- e. Camouflage vehicles and positions.
- f. Maintain air guards on a 24-hour basis.
- g. Establish and maintain NBC defense. Monitor alarms, radiacmeters, and chemical detection paper.

.4 ____ Starts control of operations.

- a. Ensures radios are on proper frequencies and are manned.
- b. Posts and updates situation maps.
- c. Maintain operations log and ensures significant events are recorded.
- d. Ensures sections update personnel on critical events occurring during movement.
- e. Establishes a time hack.

.5 ____ Move by echelon.

- a. Second echelon integrates into the tactical plan.
- b. Second echelon integrates in to the operation of the CP within 15 minutes of arrival at the site.

KEY INDICATORS:

CRITICAL STANDARDS

- a. Command, control, and communications actions are maintained.
- b. The CP is not surprised by the enemy.

10A.2 INTELLIGENCE

TASK: 10A.2.1 PERFORM INTELLIGENCE OPERATIONS

CONDITION(S): The battalion performs combat operations. The size of the Threat is regimental size in battalion defensive operations and company size in battalion offensive operations.

STANDARDS: EVAL: Y; N; NE

- .1 ____ Battalion commander, staff, and subordinates identify intelligence requirements and plan intelligence operations.
- a. S2 prepares intelligence estimate, and situational and events templates.
 - b. Commander and staff determine information needed for the operation.

ENCLOSURE (1)

7 Oct 94

- c. S2 develops a plan to collect/request needed intelligence.
- d. Subordinate units plan patrolling/reconnaissance/surveillance to collect needed intelligence information.
- e. Counterreconnaissance is planned.
- f. Assist FSC is targeting and fire support planning.
- g. S2 provides FSC with reconnaissance and security plan to ensure development of appropriate restricting fire support coordination measures.

.2 ____ Battalion performs reconnaissance/surveillance.

- a. Battalion identifies front trace of enemy defensive positions before the attack.
- b. All battalion-size mounted avenues of approach and company-size dismounted avenues of approach are accurately identified and classified.
- c. All enemy movements observed of platoon-size or larger units are identified and reported to the battalion within 10 minutes.
- d. Information needed to use terrain critical to the battalion scheme of maneuver is gathered by physical reconnaissance in advance of the start of the maneuver to allow adjustment to plans.

.3 ____ Intelligence information is disseminated.

- a. Critical information/intelligence (needed to modify the plan) reaches the battalion commander within five minutes.
- b. Critical information/intelligence is disseminated to effected subordinate units within five minutes.
- c. Critical intelligence/information is passed to higher/adjacent units within 10 minutes.
- d. Critical and directed intelligence/information (PIR/IR and information relating to NAIs, DPs, and TAIs) is reported to higher headquarters as directed.
- e. S2 tracks and assesses BDA and recommends changes to the target list.

.4 ____ Battalion performs counterreconnaissance actions.

- a. Helicopter support is requested to locate enemy OPs.
- b. Reaction force is forward and prepared to defeat enemy reconnaissance units.
- c. Battalion OPs and patrols are emplaced and active.
- d. Battalion destroys 60 percent of enemy reconnaissance units during offensive and defensive operations.

KEY INDICATORS:

CRITICAL STANDARDS

- a. All available information about the enemy capabilities, terrain, and weather necessary to plan, coordinate, and perform combat operations is identified, reported, and used.
- b. Battalion obtains all PIR/IR in the battalion sector.
- c. All higher headquarters-directed intelligence acquisition tasks on the enemy, terrain, or weather are accurately collected and reported by the battalion.

ENCLOSURE (1)

TASK: 10A.2.2 PERFORM S52 OPERATIONS

CONDITION(S): The battalion conducts combat operations.

STANDARDS: EVAL: Y; N; NE

- .1 ____ 52 prepares intelligence estimate and situational/event templates and assists with the preparation of the decision criteria.
 - a. Situational/event templates provided to the commander accurately locate likely enemy positions, and identify likely enemy courses of action and potential enemy weaknesses.
 - b. All air/ground avenues of approach are correctly identified and classified (size, type, speed, exposure).
 - c. Significant obstacles and GO, NO-GO, and SLOW-GO terrain are correctly identified.
 - d. Weather and its impacts are considered (effects on visibility, trafficability, personnel, equipment, NBC, and smoke).
 - e. Key terrain and potential enemy and friendly use are identified.
 - f. Potential enemy weaknesses are identified.
 - g. Templates and estimate are provided to the battalion commander before his war gaming.
 - h. S2s situation map is current and complete.
- .2 ____ S2 coordinates with battalion commander for EEIs, completes requests and forwards them to higher headquarters so appropriate agencies can be tasked with collection of information.
- .3 ____ S2 provides information to the battalion commander during war gaming.
- .4 ____ S2 directs and coordinates intelligence collection within the battalion.
 - a. R, S & C plan meet the battalion commander's PIR needs and reduce enemy surveillance of friendly action.
 - b. All PIR and IR are refined into specific collection tasks (what, where, and who).
 - c. Mission of observing NAIs, TAIs, and DPs is assigned to a specific unit with guidance of what to look for.
 - d. Specific OP/patrolling responsibilities other than local security are assigned.
 - e. Patrols are briefed and debriefed.
 - f. Collection tasks are directed to accomplish higher headquarters-directed requirements.
 - g. All collection taskings are coordinated with the S3.
 - h. Methods for communication are provided (relays and frequencies, reporting schedules).
 - i. All phases of operation are included.
 - j. All available assets are used.
 - k. R, S & C plan is coordinated with the -
 - 1) S3 (approval of taskings).
 - 2) Communications officer (communications).
 - 3) FSC (fire support and coordination).
 - 4) Subordinate units (passage of lines, prevention of accidental engagement).

ENCLOSURE (1)

5) Higher headquarters.

1. S2 maintains communications with all battalion-controlled patrols.

.5 _____ S2 requests information from higher headquarters.

- a. S2 uses available outside intelligence assets (HUMINT, SIGINT, and ELINT) to obtain information.
- b. Information is requested early and continually.
- c. S2 uses all available collection resources (scouts, patrols, OPs, FOs, engineers, air defense, and aviation information).
- d. S2 requests current information from adjacent/forward units.

.6 _____ S2 disseminates and coordinates intelligence information.

.7 _____ S2 coordinates intelligence information with the staff.

- a. Combat trains CP: Estimated EPW number and rate; map pickup and distribution.
- b. S3 section: Templates, estimates, terrain analysis, and R & S plan.
- c. FSC: Known, suspected, and likely enemy locations and other targeting information; likely enemy fire support actions for inclusion into templates and estimates.
- d. All staff personnel: All intelligence information received on their nets is reported to the S2.

.8 _____ S2 assists OPSEC/counterreconnaissance.

- a. IPB identifies enemy reconnaissance routes, objectives, and events.
- b. Destroys all classified material when no longer needed.
- c. Assists OPSEC surveys in battalion area.

.9 _____ S2 section reports intelligence.

KEY INDICATORS:

CRITICAL STANDARDS

- a. The S2 section collects, analyzes, and disseminates information on enemy, terrain, and weather timely and accurately, which allows the battalion to conduct combat operations.
- b. The S2 section prepares and updates IPB that is 70 percent accurate and prevents the battalion from being surprised by the enemy.
- c. Templates are validated with updated information gathered.

ENCLOSURE (1)

10A.3 MANEUVER

TASK: 10A.3.1 OCCUPY AN ASSEMBLY AREA

CONDITION(S): The battalion is ordered to move to a rear assembly area and prepare for future operations. The situation makes an enemy breakthrough or airborne assault possible but not likely. Enemy air and level II ground attacks are likely. The enemy performs squad-and platoon-level probes. The battalion is given a general area and allowed to select the exact location of the assembly area. Resupply and maintenance support are available.

STANDARDS: EVAL: Y; N; NE

- .1 ____ Battalion commander and his staff select an assembly area that provides:
 - a. Concealment and space for dispersion.
 - b. Entry and exit routes.
 - c. Drainage and level areas.
 - d. Defense and security. Open areas around assembly area allow security with allocation of manpower.
- .2 ____ Battalion commander/staff issues an operation order that-
 - a. Designates areas for each subordinate element.
 - b. Designates a quartering party, quartering party instructions, and quartering party leader. Quartering party includes personnel to select and mark routes, to guide main body into positions, and to secure the area.
 - c. Specifies an order of march that allows occupation.
 - d. Provides for an all-round defense.
 - e. Designates priority of work and provides for maintenance and resupply.
 - f. Has the occupation accomplished under conditions of limited visibility.
- .3 ____ Battalion conducts quartering party operations.
 - a. Selects sites that support the occupation and execution of the assembly area mission.
 - b. Detects all enemy forces, chemical or radiological contamination, or other reasons for changing the location of the assembly area.
 - c. Establishes security.
 - d. Selects the site and prepares to receive the main body before its arrival.
- .4 ____ Battalion occupies the assembly area.
 - a. Main body moves into position without halting or blocking routes.
 - b. Light discipline is maintained.
 - c. Aerial observation does not show track marks that lead the enemy to battalion vehicles.
 - d. Within 45 minutes, all elements are under cover or have camouflage nets erected. After-operations PMC5 is initiated.
- .5 ____ Battalion conducts assembly area operations and prepares for combat operations.
 - a. Security is maintained. No enemy squad-size element can move to within 300 meters of any position without detection.
 - b. Concealment is maintained.

7 Oct 94

- c. Radio listening silence or minimum radio transmission is maintained, based upon higher headquarters operation order. Hot looping with wire from battalion to companies is conducted.
- d. Use of time is made to prepare for the next operation to include:
 - 1) Improvement in readiness rates to 95 percent if repair parts are on hand.
 - 2) Increase percentage of basic loads, combat loads, and PLL on hand (100 percent should be requisitioned and on hand if available from the FSB).
 - 3) Preparation and dissemination of company- and platoon-level operation orders, conduct of brief backs and rehearsals, and leader reconnaissance.
 - 4) Refueling, which is completed before departure.
- e. Enemy activity does not impede battalion operations for more than one hour.

.6 ____ Battalion departs the assembly area.

- a. All equipment and supplies are moved at the designated time as stated in the operation order.
- b. Last element to depart clears the assembly area as scheduled in the operation order.
- c. No intelligence information or trash is left behind.
- d. Vehicles do not line up on roads but move directly from their hide positions to road march configuration at the designated time.
- e. Order of march facilitates orderly departure by emptying from front to rear.
- f. Security is maintained.

KEY INDICATORS:

CRITICAL STANDARDS

- a. The battalion occupies the assembly area at the time specified.
- b. The battalion brings 95 percent of fighting, CS, and CSS systems to operationally ready status.
- c. OPSEC is maintained. Enemy actions do not stop battalion preparations for more than one hour a day.
- d. Within 24 hours the battalion replenishes all basic and combat loads, takes necessary actions to replenish PLLs, and is as prepared for future operations as directed in the operation order.
- e. The battalion leaves the assembly area at the time specified in the order.

TASK: 10A.3.2 PERFORM TACTICAL ROAD MARCH

CONDITION(S): The battalion has received an order to move to a new location on a designated route. SP and RP are designated. Platoon-size enemy elements are known to be operating within the battalion area. Enemy CAS strikes are possible. Radio listening silence may be imposed.

STANDARDS: EVAL: Y; N; NE

.1 ____ Battalion and staff plan and issue march order to include:

- a. Routes to RP and SP.
- b. Route strip map.
- c. Order of march.
- d. SP and RP locations and times.
- e. Maximum catch-up speed.
- f. Designation of quartering parties.
- g. Intervals between vehicles and march units.
- h. How routes will be marked and by whom.
- i. Road restrictions.
- j. Actions on enemy contact.
- k. Actions at halts or for disabled vehicles.
- l. Responsibilities of trail parties.
- m. Actions in assembly area.
- n. Resupply, maintenance, and feeding procedures.
- o. Leader's location and communications plan.
- p. Security elements (front, rear, and flanks) are designated.
- q. Planned refueling along the route of march.
- r. Scheduled halts.
- s. Fire support plan.

.2 ____ Battalion prepares for road march.

- a. PMCS are pulled on all vehicles before movement and all nonoperational ready vehicles are identified.
- b. All vehicles are topped off before movement.
- c. All vehicles are loaded LAW load plans and CSS plan.
- d. Road guides are briefed and posted, and routes are marked.

.3 ____ Battalion conducts route reconnaissance that identifies-

- a. Availability and conditions of routes.
- b. Start point/release point confirmation.
- c. Location of critical points.
- d. Location and suitability of holding/assembly area and areas for maintenance/refueling.
- e. Distances between critical points, and total distance between start point and release point.
- f. Location of obstacles. Number of guides required and their locations.

- g. NBC monitoring of assembly area.
 - h. Information on all enemy on routes.
 - i. Alternate routes, if required.
- .4 _____ Battalion conducts road march.
- a. Elements move IAW march order directives.
 - b. Each march unit arrives and clears the start point IAW operation order (+ or - one minute).
 - c. March units maintain speed and intervals IAW operation order.
- .5 _____ Battalion maintenance perform recovery operations.
- a. All vehicles rejoin the battalion or are reported or moved to designated MCPs/MSR as directed by higher headquarters in the operation order.
 - b. Vehicles with minor damage are repaired.
- .6 _____ Battalion maintains security during march.
- a. Main body is not surprised by the enemy.
 - b. Security elements eliminate enemy elements to allow uninterrupted movement of the main body.
 - c. Enemy aircraft are detected before they attack.
- .7 _____ Battalion maintains radio listening silence if directed by higher headquarters.
- a. No radio traffic exists on internal nets.
 - b. Control is maintained.
- .8 _____ Battalion performs actions at halts.
- a. PMCS checks are made on all vehicles.
 - b. Security is maintained. Refueling locations are coordinated or set up by the battalion, if needed, by length of march.
 - c. March units refuel.

KEY INDICATORS:

CRITICAL STANDARDS

- a. The battalion crosses and clears SP and RP at designated time (+ or - one minute) or as stated in the operation order.
- b. The battalion maintains prescribed rates of speed and intervals.
- c. No more than 10 percent of the battalion becomes nonmission capable during the march.
- d. All vehicles move along prescribed route.
- e. Main body is not surprised by the route.

ENCLOSURE (1)

CONDITION(S): While performing tactical operations, the battalion is required to perform a passage of lines. The enemy is defending with an MRC(+) for a forward passage or is attacking with an MRB(+) in a rearward passage.

STANDARDS: EVAL: Y; N; NE

- .1 _____ Battalion commander and staff plan and coordinate the passage.
 - a. Routes and lanes provide cover and concealment. They do not disrupt defense and provide for rapid movement.
 - b. Recognition signals and markings are designated (day, night, near, and far).
 - c. Direct and indirect fire plans are coordinated.
 - d. Common maneuver control measures and graphics are designated.
 - e. Plans ensure maintaining contact with and constant fire on the enemy.
 - f. Emergency CSS needs are planned and coordinated with the stationary unit.
 - g. Measures for disengagement, coordination of supporting fires, and handover of the enemy are outlined.
 - h. Passage lanes/routes for contaminated units are designated.
2. _____ Battalion performs liaison to exchange information for a passage of lines.
 - a. Designation and types of units to pass.
 - b. Battle handover line location and point or time at which handover is complete.
 - c. Mission for each unit and concept of the operation with rationale.
 - d. NBC contamination (if any).
 - e. Direct and indirect fire support plans/control measures to include when the fire control lines transfer.
 - f. Enemy situation.
 - g. Friendly locations (day and night).
 - h. Contact/coordination points.
 - i. OPs and patrol routes.
 - j. Lanes and passage points.
 - k. Obstacles locations and types.
 - l. Assembly areas/attack positions.
 - m. CS and CSS locations for emergency support.
 - n. Routes.
 - o. Recognition signals.
 - p. CEOI information.
 - q. Liaison is early enough to disseminate information to battalion elements.

.3 _____ Battalion performs reconnaissance.

7 Oct 94

- a. Reconnaissance party locates contact points, which are easily recognizable and are on movement routes.
 - b. Reconnaissance party is guided to points and passage lanes. Lanes are clear of obstacles, provide concealment, and allow for integration with the plan of attack or withdrawal.
 - c. Reconnaissance party locates assembly area/ attack positions. Areas and positions are located where they do not interfere with stationary units, but provide cover, concealment, and enough room for dispersion.
 - d. Units guides are briefed and posted.
- .4 _____ Battalion links up with stationary units.
- a. Establishes liaison at contact points before lead elements reach them.
 - b. Provides plan changes to the stationary units within 10 minutes of linkup.
 - c. Collocates command groups for ease of coordination.
 - d. Stationary unit supports the moving unit with CSS, if requested and available.
- .5 _____ Battalion executes passage.
- a. The element designated to coordinate and assist the passage knows which elements go through which passage points.
 - b. Units move along assigned routes/lanes.
 - c. Passing vehicles display correct visual signals.
 - d. Contaminated units are identified and sent to passage points designated for such units.
 - e. Units pass through the stationary element without halting.
 - f. Cover and concealment and dispersion are maintained.
 - g. Casualties do not exceed 10/20 percent.
 - h. No fratricides occur from friendly direct or indirect fires or mines.
 - i. For forward passage, minimum radio traffic or radio listening silence is maintained.

KEY INDICATORS:CRITICAL STANDARDS

- a. The passage is performed IAW the operation order.
- b. The passage does not disrupt stationary unit's defense.
- c. The battalion main body is not surprised by the enemy.
- d. The battalion suffers no losses due to fratricide (friendly direct/indirect fires/mines).
- e. The battalion suffers no more than 20 percent losses during rearward passage and 10 percent during forward passage.
- f. The battalion can execute its offensive concept in a forward passage.
- g. The defending organization can execute its defensive concept in a rearward passage.

7 Oct 94

TASK: 10A.3.4 MOVE TACTICALLY

CONDITION(S): The battalion has been given the order for movement to contact, or it has a mission requiring a tactical movement where enemy contact is likely as a part of another mission. An axis or zone has been assigned. The width of the zone or maneuver space is 3 to 8 km. The depth of movement may be 3 or more km. An LD and LD time may be given. The enemy is performing security operations in an MRP(+) strength and has guidance to delay but withdraw before decisive engagement. Guidance on the rate of movement precludes deliberate movement yet does not force the battalion to move so fast as to have to disregard security. Use of scouts ahead of LD time is allowed but is limited to the degree necessary to allow a realistic movement to take place.

STANDARDS: EVAL: Y; N; NE

- .1 ____ The battalion plans and gives the operation order for tactical movement.
- a. Operation order provides for security, making initial contact with minimum forces, speed, and flexibility, and avoiding exposure.
 - b. Routes and axis provide concealment and avoid canalization unless cleared first.
 - c. If multiple routes are selected, they provide for mutual support between columns; for example, one element can quickly move to assist the other by fire or maneuver.
 - d. Battalion elements are designated to provide forward, flank, and rear security. Scouts or other elements provide forward screen on the battalion's axis and have provisions to be far enough forward of the battalion to accomplish the mission (cross LD early).
 - e. Advance guard is designated for each axis. It is a combined arms element, normally tank heavy in open terrain, and balanced or mechanized heavy in mixed or close terrain. Advance guard has sufficient engineer assets to accomplish the mission.
 - f. Formation and order of march are designated.
 - g. Danger areas are designated (areas of increased exposure or restriction), and contingencies are designated or planned for likely danger areas or locations where lead elements must switch (formations change).
 - h. Sufficient control and coordination measures are designated to facilitate reporting and fragmentary orders.
 - i. Mortars (if available), and engineers are positioned forward in the column.
 - j. Antitank elements are given tasks, depending on the terrain and Threat.
 - k. Air defense elements are positioned forward for security and for covering movement across exposed areas.
 - l. Placement of combat trains provides protection and rapid CSS.
- .2 ____ Battalion crosses the LD at designated time and is prepared for contact.
- .3 ____ Battalion maintains security.
- a. Security forward to flanks and rear is maintained.
 - b. Gaps do not develop between the main body and security elements.
 - c. Battalion main body is not surprised. Enemy cannot place surprise direct fire on the main body or advance guard.
 - d. All likely high-speed approaches into the battalion's main body are kept under observation.
Battalion is warned of approaching enemy force in time to deploy.
- .4 ____ Battalion maintains mutual support.
- a. When two advance guard teams are designated, they can maneuver to support each other within five minutes.

- b. Lead elements of the main body can move to positions within 10 minutes to support the advance guard.

.5 ____ Battalion minimizes exposure.

- a. The combination of dispersion, overwatch, use of smoke, and security must limit the exposure of the battalion to no more than one company from any one direction at any one time.
- b. Air defense weapons are positioned to keep all battalion elements in open areas under air defense coverage.

.6 ____ Battalion takes actions at halts.

- a. Disperses.
- b. Takes cover.
- c. Sets up all-round security within five minutes.

.7 ____ Battalion moves through restricted areas/defile/choke points.

- a. Restricted areas are cleared and secured before commitment of the main body.
- b. Far side of restricted area (next terrain feature) is cleared and secured before the main body moves out.
- c. Dispersion is maintained by all elements.

.8 ____ Battalion reports all information on terrain or obstacles that would impact on other higher headquarters elements.

.9 ____ Battalion finds and reports all enemy platoon-size or larger elements.

.10 ____ Battalion bypasses or defeats enemy security elements.

- a. MRP(+) is either forced to withdraw or destroyed by the advance guard.
- b. Battalion loses no more than 10 percent combat vehicles and infantry casualties and CSS assets.
- c. Battalion meets higher headquarters movement rates.

KEY INDICATORS:

CRITICAL STANDARDS

- a. The battalion crosses the LD at the designated time and meets higher headquarters guidance on movement rates.
 - b. The battalion locates and reports all enemy platoons, directed PIR, other intelligence requirements/tasks, or other critical information on the enemy and terrain in its zone or along its axis.
 - c. The battalion's main body is not surprised by the enemy.
-

ENCLOSURE (1)

TASK: 10A.3.5 PERFORM HASTY RIVER/GAP CROSSING

CONDITION(S): River/gap is bridgeable by am AVLB. The battalion has AVLB support. Enemy consists of security forces of am MRP(+). A bridge may be left guarded but intact and prepared for destruction.

STANDARDS: EVAL: Y; N; NE

- .1 _____ The battalion commander and staff plan a river/gap crossing.
 - a. Crossing site is chosen, which allows for a successful crossing.
 - b. Measures are chosen to seize existing bridge before the enemy can destroy it.
 - c. Task organization provides for crossing, security of crossing site, and seizure of foothold on the far side.
 - d. Crossing site control officer and crossing control measures (assembly areas, sequence of crossing) are designated.
 - e. Air defense protection if crossing site is planned.
 - f. Suppressive fires and smoke are planned to cover crossing.
 - g. CAS/CIFS are planned and requests are submitted to higher headquarters.
 - h. Far side objectives selected allow protection of crossing elements.
- .2 _____ Battalion performs reconnaissance action.
 - a. Gathers information without disclosing plan.
 - b. Finds access/exit roads.
 - c. Determines width of river/gap.
 - d. Determines river velocity and depth.
 - e. Determines bank slope and condition.
 - f. Finds cover and concealment on near and far sides.
 - g. Determines if obstacles are in the area.
 - h. Finds enemy defenses.
 - i. Determines soil consistency at crossing site.
- .3 _____ Battalion prepares for crossing.
 - a. Task organization is accomplished before the advance on the obstacle.
 - b. Enemy cannot determine crossing locations or plans.
 - c. Battalion performs rehearsals to include AVLBS and engineers.
 - d. Battalion reorganizes for crossing, as required.
- .4 _____ Advance guard secures near side.
 - a. Clears near bank of all defending/delaying forces.
 - b. Secures all existing bridging before the enemy can destroy it.
 - c. Detects all enemy elements on far side.
 - d. Prepares the entry and, if possible, exit site for crossing by engineer work, positioning guides, and marking area to facilitate crossing before arrival of main body.

- .5 ____ Battalion secures far side of river/gap.
- a. Area secured is large enough so the enemy cannot bring direct fires on crossing force and, when feasible, observed indirect fire.
 - b. Enemy cannot penetrate the security force.
 - c. Fire support is planned on known/suspected enemy positions.
 - d. Secured area on the far side is large enough to allow dispersion.
 - e. Far side is secured within 45 minutes to prevent enemy reaction.
- .6 ____ Battalion crosses river/gap.
- a. Elements cross in specified sequence.
 - b. Elements maintain dispersion.
 - c. Crossing completed within time specified in the higher headquarters operation order.
 - d. Battalion continues the mission within 15 minutes of crossing of last combat element.

KEY INDICATORS:

CRITICAL STANDARDS

- a. All maneuver, CS, command group, and combat trains elements cross within time specified in the higher headquarters operation order.
 - b. The battalion losses during the operation do not exceed 20 percent of combat vehicle and infantry.
 - c. The bridge (if available) is secured before the enemy can destroy it.
-

TASK: 10A.3.6 FIGHT A MEETING ENGAGEMENT

CONDITION(S): The battalion performs a tactical movement and encounters an enemy force that is not completely deployed for battle or that the advance guard element cannot overcome. It may be an MRC(+) in a security defensive position, an MRB(+), or an MRR in march formation, which is organized and reacts (an immediate attack from the march).

STANDARDS: EVAL: Y; N; NE

- .1 ____ Scout platoon identifies the location and actions of the enemy.
- a. Lead/forward enemy elements and their actions are accurately reported.
 - b. Presence of enemy obstacles are reported.
 - c. Report is early enough to allow the lead element to deploy before contact.
 - d. Information is provided before contact to aid the advance guard commander in determining a scheme of maneuver.
 - e. Scout platoon maintains contact until relieved.
 - f. Contact is maintained. Scout platoon gains information on deeper enemy positions and formations.
- .2 ____ Advance guard performs actions on contact and develops the situation.

- a. Battalion loses no more than four combat vehicles to the initial engagement.
- b. Advance guard immediately reacts to defeat or fix the enemy within its capabilities and the intent of the battalion commander.
- c. Size, actions, and location of the enemy are accurately reported within five minutes. Information is sufficient to allow the battalion commander to determine his immediate reaction (defend, ambush, fix and bypass, or attack).
- d. Moving enemy reconnaissance elements are destroyed or prevented from seeing the deployment of the main body.
- e. A moving enemy's leading MRB is stopped.
- f. A defending enemy is prevented from improving forward defenses.

.3 _____ Battalion commander issues a fragmentary order.

- a. Plan is appropriate for the enemy size and actions. Companies are directed to either set up a hasty ambush (when the enemy is not aware of the presence of the battalion, and the terrain allows a company- or battalion-size ambush to be set up), defend (when the enemy is on dominant terrain in strength or to fix attacking enemy elements), attack by fire (enemy is moving and battalion can get to dominant terrain), assault the enemy (the enemy is temporarily unprepared or otherwise vulnerable), bypass (when the enemy's defense is not tied in with adjacent elements, and higher headquarters commander's concept is to maintain momentum), or continue to develop the situation. Reconnoiter the enemy's position and prepare for an attack (the enemy's position is strong and bypass is not permitted or possible).
- b. If the plan is to defend, the fragmentary order adequately provides for-
 - 1) Seizing dominant terrain as quickly as possible. (The side that first gets to dominant terrain normally wins a meeting engagement between moving forces).
 - 2) Occupation of company positions in a sequence that allows the coverage of the most dangerous approach first.
 - 3) Maximum use of existing obstacles.
 - 4) Rapid establishment of all-round security and defense along likely enemy routes. The enemy normally goes in to an immediate attack and tries to envelope the battalion. Screening elements must be far enough out to give a 10-minute warning.
 - 5) Indirect fires to disrupt the enemy maneuver.
- c. Coordinated fire support requested.
- d. If the plan is to assault quickly, it provides sufficient control measures to coordinate the attack and provides initiation time early enough to preclude the enemy from adjusting.

.4 _____ Battalion main body deploys.

- a. Deployment into the attack, defense, or hasty ambush begins within 10 minutes.
- b. Deployment is IAW battalion commander's fragmentary order.
- c. Deployment is faster than the enemy's.
- d. Security is maintained during deployment.
- e. If defending, companies must be prepared to defend within five minutes of arrival.
- f. Mutual support is maintained between companies.

.5 _____ Battalion fixes or destroys the enemy.

- a. A moving enemy MRB(+) is destroyed (90 percent) or forced to withdraw. A moving MRR(+) is fixed and sustains at least 50 percent casualties. A defending MRC(+) in hasty positions is destroyed (90 percent) or forced to withdraw.
- b. Battalion loses less than 30 percent of its combat vehicles and infantry.

KEY INDICATORS:

CRITICAL STANDARDS

- a. A moving enemy MRB(+) is destroyed (50 percent) or forced to withdraw. A moving MRB(+) is fixed and sustains at least 50 percent casualties. A defending MRC(+) in hasty positions is destroyed (50 percent) or forced to withdraw.
 - b. The battalion loses less than 30 percent of its combat vehicles and infantry.
-

TASK: 10A.3.7 ASSAULT

CONDITION(S): The battalion encounters an enemy MRC(+) in a hasty defense (only a limited number of surface laid mines, no prepared vehicle fighting positions, only hasty individual positions for the infantry and lack of tie-in with adjacent companies) or a moving MRB(+). The higher headquarters commander's concept or orders do not allow bypass.

STANDARDS: EVAL: Y; N; NE

- .1 ____ Scouts detect the enemy.
 - a. Enemy location, activities, composition, and size along with any other needed information (presence of obstacles, fortifications) are accurately reported to the battalion commander.
 - b. Information is provided before lead companies make contact.
- .2 ____ Battalion develops the enemy situation.
 - a. Information is gained to plan an attack against enemy weaknesses. Locations of enemy and natural obstacles, enemy antiarmor weapons, fire sacks, platoon positions, and flanks are included along with possible routes, overwatch positions, and support-by-fire for use by friendly forces.
 - b. Information is gathered within one hour.
 - c. Companies are not decisively engaged and the battalion does not lose over 5 percent of its combat vehicles or infantry.
- .3 ____ Battalion commander develops and communicates a fragmentary order for the attack.
 - a. Plan provides for destroying the enemy.
 - b. Battalion uses fire and maneuver to fix the enemy. Then it maneuvers against a point of existing or created weakness.
 - c. Maneuver routes avoid obstacles and open areas covered by enemy fires.
 - d. Battalion directs a maneuver against a weakness (location at which the enemy is not oriented to defend).
 - e. Direct and indirect fires are planned to fix and isolate the enemy's antitank weapons.
 - f. CAS/CIFS are planned and requests are sent to higher headquarters.

- g. Battalion concentrates the attack against no more than a defending platoon or moving company and isolates the point of attack.
- h. Battalion assigns a specific mission to each maneuver company (overwatch or support-by-fire positions with sectors of fire or terrain objectives).
- i. Control measures coordinate maneuver with direct and indirect fires.
- j. Method of assault is appropriate given the enemy posture and terrain (dismounted attack when enemy position has obstacles and fields of fire by a dismounted approach is available, mounted attack with no obstacles and an ability to suppress enemy antitank weapons, or attack by fire when the enemy can be destroyed without assault).
- k. Battalion gives subordinate commanders and leaders enough time to give fragmentary orders and plan rapid coordination.

.4 ____ Battalion prepares for the assault.

- a. Task reorganization is accomplished.
- b. Plan is disseminated to all elements, and all leaders are oriented on terrain and missions.
- c. Battalion elements move to positions to begin or support the attack.
- d. Preparations for assault do not disclose the location, or give the enemy time to reposition or adjust his defense.
- e. Breaches or bypass routes are found and marked or known.

.5 ____ Battalion fixes the enemy.

- a. Direct and indirect fires fix and isolate the enemy, deceive him as to the location of the main effort, and prevent him from improving his positions, withdrawing, maneuvering against the battalion, or engaging the maneuver force.
- b. These actions begin as soon as the battalion makes contact and continues his defeat.

.6 ____ Battalion assaults.

- a. Assault is synchronized. (The actions of maneuver and fires are mutually supporting to prevent a piecemeal attack.)
- b. Assault strikes the enemy before he can react.
- a. Battalion renders the enemy combat ineffective.
- d. Battalion loses less than 50 percent of its combat vehicles and infantry.

KEY INDICATORS:

CRITICAL STANDARDS

- a. The battalion renders the enemy combat ineffective.
- b. The battalion loses less than 50 percent of its combat vehicles and infantry.
- c. The attack begins in time to meet the higher headquarters commander's intent.

TASK: 10A.3.8 ATTACK/COUNTERATTACK BY FIRE

CONDITION(S): The battalion is ordered to move to a battle position and perform an attack by fire as a supporting or fixing attack OR counterattack by fire. It is assigned either a battle position and sector of fire/engagement area OR an axis of advance and objective but the intent is not to close with and overrun the enemy position. The enemy may be stationary or moving. A stationary enemy can be from an MRC(+) to MRB(+). A moving enemy can be from an MRB(+) to MRR(+) in march or prebattle formation with little forward reconnaissance. (The element counterattack by fire would have lost most if its reconnaissance elements in initial penetration actions). The intent for the battalion is for destruction, suppression, fixing, or deception.

STANDARDS: EVAL: Y; N; NE

- .1 _____ Battalion commander plans the attack and issues an operation order that provides-
- a. Complete coverage of the enemy defensive positions or avenues of approach. Sectors of fire/engagement areas are assigned to each company to ensure this coverage.
 - b. Control measures for massing, distributing, and shifting direct and indirect fires.
 - c. Allocation of space: BPs or zones/axis of advance to allow positioning to engage the enemy. Provision is made for the fire and maneuver normally needed to accomplish the mission.
 - d. Security and all-round defense; contact points or other coordination measures designated to promote tie-in between companies. Maximum use of hide positions and natural fighting positions before initiation of the attack should be provided.
 - e. Measures to hide and deceive from the enemy movement; occupation and intent of the operation.
 - f. Instructions for preparing for the attack by fire. Possible preparations include reconnaissance, preparation of routes, security of movement routes, firing positions before movement of the main body, and stocking Class V items.
 - g. Movement instructions to the initial BPs.
 - h. Resupply of the Class V items used during the attack by fire (LOGPACs or supplies in the combat trains) to allow continuation of the attack.
 - i. CAS/CIFS are planned and requests sent to higher headquarters.
- .2 _____ Battalion prepares for the attack.
- a. Preparation for movement and occupation of BPs are made. Amount of leader reconnaissance, marking/preparation of routes and firing positions, completion of fire plans, stocking of ammunition, and other activities must be considered.
 - b. Security detects all enemy elements on movement routes, and on all front and flank approaches to the BP before the arrival of the battalion.
 - c. Preparation activities do not disclose the operation to the enemy.
- .3 _____ Battalion moves to and occupies initial BPs.
- a. Battalion is in position to begin the attack at the designated time.
 - b. Enemy does not observe or disrupt the movement, occupation, and setup of the attack position.
 - c. All-round security and tie-in between companies are accomplished within 10 minutes of arrival.
- .4 _____ Battalion performs the attack by fire.
- a. Enemy cannot withdraw or reposition if the intent includes fixing the enemy.

ENCLOSURE (1)

- b. Where the intent is destruction of the enemy, the enemy suffers at least 75 percent casualties.
- c. Battalion has three companies after consolidation and reorganization, and can continue its mission.

KEY INDICATORS:

CRITICAL STANDARDS

- a. The enemy cannot withdraw or reposition if the intent includes fixing the enemy.
 - b. Where the intent is destruction of the enemy, the enemy suffers at least 75 percent casualties.
 - c. The enemy cannot engage friendly forces if the intent is suppression.
 - d. The battalion has three companies after consolidation and reorganization, and can continue its mission.
-

TASK: 10A.3.9 DEFEND

CONDITION(S): The battalion defends in the forward portion of the MBA. A covering force forward of the battalion gives the battalion early warning. The covering force withdraws. The enemy performs reconnaissance, breaching, and infiltration to prepare for the attack. The enemy attacks with an MRB(+).

STANDARDS: EVAL: Y; N; NE

- .1 _____ Battalion commander and staff plan the defense and issue an operation order that-
- a. Identifies engagement areas along each approach where the enemy is most vulnerable. It provides for positions, weapons, and obstacles to destroy the enemy in those areas.
 - b. Breaks up the enemy formation to expose him to flanking fires from multiple directions and to not allow him to fight a linear battle.
 - c. Uses full depth of the sector consistent with the higher headquarters commander's concept for synchronization with adjacent battalions.
 - d. Uses displacement for subsequent positions, which are planned and coordinated with obstacles and covering fire.
 - e. Blocks or slows the enemy on all likely mounted and dismounted approaches with enough defending forces and obstacles to allow maneuver forces to mass on the approaches being used.
 - f. Provides for flexibility by having depth and contingency plans for shifting fires or counterattacks to mass forces on approaches the enemy actually uses. Identifies decision points to allow initiation of maneuver. Gives the engagement criteria, firing priorities, or engagement priorities.
 - g. Has security forces on all approaches sufficient to detect any enemy. Covers the decision point when battalion takes over the battle handover line responsibilities.
 - h. Positions antiarmor weapons in depth for flanking fires, defilade positioning, and promoting maneuvers against the enemy. Areas assigned should be large enough for positioning.
 - i. Contains a specific task list for mobility, counter mobility, and survivability tasks.

- j. Positions infantry to push the enemy into engagement areas and to provide protection for antiarmor weapons and obstacles. Infantry is not positioned where it can be engaged by standoff fires or overrun by mounted assault. Infantry secures dismounted approaches and mounted infiltration routes. Designates a trigger line and disengagement criteria.
 - k. Uses obstacles with defending maneuver forces to turn, slow, and canalize the enemy into areas where he is vulnerable to antiarmor fires.
 - l. Has sufficient fire control measures to mass and distribute direct fires on the enemy formations.
 - m. Provides for the defeat of enemy reconnaissance. Security forces are deployed forward, reaction forces designated and local security coordinated.
 - n. Avoids obvious positioning in concept of the defense.
 - o. Uses supporting fires to strike the enemy where he is slowed or stopped and against his formations and forces that are vulnerable and critical. Where these fires do not obscure direct fires (normally, overwatching ATGM supporting fires are used).
 - p. Positions air defense elements to protect preparations and maneuver.
 - q. Provides the priority of fires for fire support.
 - r. Provides the priority of engineer work.
 - s. Requests CAS/CIFS from higher headquarters and plans their employment.
 - t. Provides for emergency resupply/movement of forces by helicopter/vehicles.
- .2 ____ Battalion prepares the defense.
- a. Battalion priorities of work are completed.
 - b. Fighting positions are prepared for all personnel, vehicles, and weapons systems.
 - c. Movements are reconnoitered and rehearsed.
 - d. Fire plans and sector sketches are prepared.
 - e. All required obstacles are properly emplaced.
 - f. Preparations do not disclose defensive concept to enemy.
 - g. FPFs are registered by piece, if feasible.
- .3 ____ Battalion defeats the enemy reconnaissance and infiltration, and performs surveillance.
- a. Enemy reconnaissance cannot observe the occupation and setup of the defense.
 - b. Enemy commander does not determine the friendly scheme of defense. The enemy fire plan cannot suppress the defense.
 - c. No friendly obstacles are breached before the enemy attack.
 - d. Security elements are far enough out to provide a 10-minute warning to the battalion of the arrival of the enemy attack.
 - e. Security element can detect and track the movement of the enemy second echelon.
- .4 ____ Battalion defeats the attack.
- a. The enemy MRR is defeated forward of the battalion rear boundary. There is no MRC or larger penetration of the battalion rear boundary.
 - b. Battalion performs the defense IAW the higher headquarters commander's intent for coordination with adjacent battalions. Movements do not uncover adjacent battalion.

- c. Battalion has at least 70 percent personnel and equipment after consolidation and reorganization, and it can continue its mission.

KEY INDICATORS:

CRITICAL STANDARDS

- a. The battalion is prepared to defend at the time prescribed.
 - b. The enemy MRR is defeated forward (50 percent or more destroyed, wounded, or captured) forward of the battalion rear boundary.
 - c. The battalion performs the defense IAW higher commander's intent for coordination with adjacent battalions.
 - d. There is no penetration of rear boundary by an MRC(+) or more.
 - e. Battalion sustains less than 30 percent casualties.
-

TASK: 10A.3.10 COVER PASSAGE OF LINES

CONDITION(S): The battalion defends in sector or in a BP behind forward withdrawing elements, or is in contact with enemy elements. A forward covering or withdrawing force passes through the battalion sector, the battalion is ordered to assist and provide covering fires for a forward attacking battalion. METT-TSL factors do not permit the maneuvering force the freedom to move around other friendly positions in the area.

STANDARDS: EVAL: Y; N; NE

- .1 _____ Battalion commander and staff plan the passage.
 - a. Routes and lanes provide cover and concealment. They do not disrupt defense and provide for rapid movement.
 - b. Recognition signals and markings are designated.
 - c. Direct and indirect fire plans are coordinated.
 - d. Common maneuver control measures and graphics are designated
 - e. Plans ensure maintaining contact and placing constant fire on the enemy.
 - f. Covering unit plans emergency CSS to passing unit.
 - g. Battle handover line and measures are designated.
- .2 _____ Battalion performs liaison to exchange information for a passage of lines.
 - a. Designation and types of units to pass.
 - b. Battle handover line location.
 - c. Mission of units and concept of the operation.
 - d. NBC contamination (if any).
 - e. Direct and indirect fire support plans/control measures.
 - f. Enemy situation.
 - g. Friendly locations (day and night).

- h. Contact is established at contact/coordination points.
- i. OPs and patrol routes.
- j. Lanes and passage points.
- k. Obstacles locations and types.
- l. Assembly areas/attack positions.
- m. CS and CSS locations for emergency support.
- n. Routes.
- o. Recognition signals.
- p. CEOI information.

.3 ____ Battalion prepares for passage.

- a. Stationary force clears a lane from all obstacles/mines from the attack position through passage lanes/routes.
- b. Stationary force gathers requested information for the passing element.
- c. All leaders in the battalion are aware of passage locations, times, and recognition markings.
- d. Enemy cannot detect preparation actions.
- e. Scouts or designated units establish contact points.
- f. Units collocate command groups.

.4 ____ All leaders disseminate information.

- a. Date/time group.
- b. Unit markings.
- c. Identification signals.
- d. Challenge/password.
- e. Location of passage.

.5 ____ Battalion performs passage.

- a. Contact is established at contact points.
- b. Pursuing enemy is stopped/delayed at battle handover line. The fight is transferred to the battalion in position, which assumes responsibilities for the battle handover line.
- c. Passing element is guided through stationary element positions with no halts.
- d. No friendly casualties occur due to friendly direct/indirect fires.
- e. All enemy elements that can fire on passing unit are engaged.
- f. Emergency resupply of Class III and VIII items, and care of casualties are provided to the passing unit to allow continued movement.
- g. When passing battalion has completed passage, all passage lanes are closed so that no enemy can infiltrate with the passing battalion.
- h. Battalion reports to higher headquarters that passage is complete within 10 minutes of completion.

.6 _____ Battalion supports with direct fire (stationary unit).

- a. All enemy elements in line of sight are suppressed/engaged by direct or indirect fires IAW passing battalion's fire plans.
- b. Supporting fires respond to requests from passing elements.
- c. All requested/needed guides are provided.
- d. No friendly fires engage friendly element.
- e. No passing element hits friendly mines.
- f. Communications maintained between both battalions.

KEY INDICATORS:

CRITICAL STANDARDS

- a. The battle is handed off at the battle handover line.
 - b. The battalion engages all enemy within line of sight that can place fires on the battalion during passage.
 - c. The enemy cannot detect preparation actions.
 - d. There are no friendly casualties due to direct/indirect friendly fires (no fratricide).
-

TASK: 10A.3,11 WITHDRAW NOT UNDER ENEMY PRESSURE

CONDITION(S): The battalion is in a defensive position and is not in contact with the enemy. The battalion is ordered to withdraw. Another element is positioned to cover the withdrawal of the battalion (assisted) OR the battalion is ordered to occupy new defensive positions to the rear as a new mission without a covering force (unassisted). The battalion is required to be in position or to have completed passage of lines as directed in the operation order. The enemy has been conducting offensive operations against the battalion and has now withdrawn, leaving security elements in the area.

STANDARDS: EVAL: Y; N; NE

.1 _____ Battalion commander and staff develop a plan for the withdrawal not under pressure that includes-

- a. Designation of the security element and commander.
- b. Designation of a time or event for transfer of command of the sector to the security element.
- c. Security element positioned with enough strength to cover the withdrawal of the main body.
- d. Designation and preparation of routes (marked, obstacles cleared).
- e. Designation of new frequencies for main body elements.
- f. Contingency plans down to platoon level for an enemy attack.
- g. Withdrawal of security element (route, passage of lines, time event to begin).
- h. Withdrawal of nonessential CSS elements before the operation.

.2 _____ Battalion prepares for the withdrawal.

ENCLOSURE (1)

- a. Quarters parties and nonessential elements are withdrawn before withdrawal.
 - b. Enemy does not detect battalion preparations for withdrawal.
- .3 _____ DLIC protects and hides the movement of the main body.
- a. Uses deceptive measures to replicate the activities of the battalion.
 - b. Defeats enemy company-size attacks.
 - c. Delays a battalion-size hasty attack for one hour (long enough for the main body to go into a hasty defense or complete its movement).
- .4 _____ Battalion main body moves to its designated position.
- a. Main body accomplishes its directed action at the designated time.
 - b. Main body suffers less than 5 percent casualties.
 - c. Battalion elements and leaders conduct reconnaissance.

KEY INDICATORS:

CRITICAL STANDARDS

- a. The battalion completes a passage of lines or occupies the new positions at the time prescribed in the higher headquarters order.
 - b. The enemy does not discover the battalion's position in time to prevent the battalion from moving to its new position or from completing a passage of lines.
 - c. Battalion sustains less than 5 percent casualties.
-

TASK: 10A.3.12 WITHDRAW UNDER ENEMY PRESSURE

CONDITION(S): The battalion is in contact with an enemy and is in a hasty or deliberate defense. The enemy performs an attack by MRR(+). The battalion is authorized to withdraw. Another element is positioned to cover the withdrawal (assisted) OR the battalion is ordered to occupy new defensive positions in depth as a new mission without a covering element (unassisted) OR the battalion is authorized to perform a sector defense in depth. The battalion commander's concept is to shift the defense rearward.

STANDARDS: EVAL: Y; N; NE

- .1 _____ During defensive planning, battalion commander and staff plan and prepare for the withdrawal under pressure. Plan includes-
- a. Adequate contingencies for withdrawal.
 - b. Routes to support withdrawal.
 - c. In-depth positions and on-order positions.
 - d. In-depth obstacles.
 - e. Planned use of smoke, FASCAM, and other fires to cover withdrawals.
 - f. Conduct of internal (passage of lines and covering operations between companies) and external (with reserve battalion and adjacent battalion) coordination for withdrawal.
 - g. Direct fire coordination measures.

ENCLOSURE (1)

- h. Other means to break contact and gain a mobility advantage.
 - i. Control measures to coordinate the execution of the withdrawal.
- .2 _____ Battalion commander issues a fragmentary order for the withdrawal, which modifies the initial plan and-
 - a. Outlines and coordinates a realistic concept for withdrawal.
 - b. Outlines a scheme of fire and maneuver, and fire support plan to stop the enemy attack, and to cover the movement to the rear of the battalion. The initial maneuver is to stop the enemy's advance. The plan then addresses covering the movement rearward of the battalion.
 - c. Provides a covering force strong enough to stop the enemy and block his pursuit. It also provides security (warning) on possible enemy bypass routes.
 - d. Provides for a sequence of withdrawals to preserve the battalion. If necessary, heavily engaged elements remain in position to cover the movement of other elements. The covering force withdraws after the main body has broken contact and is in new positions, has passed through a higher-level covering force, or is far enough to the rear so the covering force can begin its own withdrawal.
 - e. Provides for the coordination and control of fire and maneuver for rearward movement.
 - f. Outlines use of supporting fires to cover the withdrawal.
 - g. Provides for security and maintains visual contact with the enemy.
 - h. Hides the withdrawal from the enemy as long as possible.
 - i. Designates covering forces, routes and priority of movement, sequence of movement, and coordination measures for passage of forward battalion elements through elements covering their withdrawal.
 - j. Gives passage instructions for the higher-level covering force.
 - k. Gives instructions on establishing the next defensive positions if no higher covering force is provided.
 - l. Issues fragmentary order in time to allow subordinates to execute.
- .3 _____ Battalion performs the withdrawal.
 - a. Battalion does not allow more than one enemy MRP(+) to penetrate or bypass during the withdrawal.
 - b. Battalion loses no more than 30 percent of its beginning strength during the withdrawal.
- .4 _____ Battalion occupies its new position or conducts a passage of lines through the higher-level covering force IAW higher headquarters directives.

KEY INDICATORS:

CRITICAL STANDARDS

- a. The battalion is at the designated location NLT the time specified.
- b. The battalion does not allow any enemy penetration or bypass of the main body during the withdrawal by more than an MRP/TP.
- c. The battalion loses no more than 30 percent of its beginning strength during the withdrawal.
- d. The battalion can perform its subsequent mission.

ENCLOSURE (1)

TASK: 10A.3.13 DELAY

CONDITION(S): The battalion is given the mission to delay in sector. The commander's intent is to obtain a maximum delay of the enemy while maintaining freedom of maneuver.

STANDARDS: EVAL: Y; N; NE

- .1 _____ Battalion commander and staff plan the delay.
- a. Plan accomplishes the mission.
 - b. Sectors or BPs in depth are assigned to each company.
 - c. Each enemy's possible battalion avenue of approach is assigned to one element.
 - d. Boundaries are assigned so that terrain features, which dominate avenues of approach, are assigned to the unit having responsibility for the avenue.
 - e. Battalion commander uses clearly defined decision points or events to trigger withdrawals.
 - f. Contact and coordinating points are designated to coordinate complete coverage of the delay sector.
 - g. Long-range fires and CAS/CIFS are planned and requested.
 - h. Routes to allow withdrawal for companies between BPs are designated OR exist in each sector.
 - i. Security forces defeat the enemy's reconnaissance, provide early warning of attacks on high-speed approaches, and cover secondary approaches between BPs.
 - j. Reconnaissance and preparation of routes of withdrawal are provided.
 - k. Existing and reinforcing obstacles are planned within the limits of available materials, times, and personnel to aid withdrawal.
 - l. Graphic control measures a commander chooses must accurately portray his intent and allow control. Control measures used may include boundaries and phase lines of all higher commands, supplemental phase lines, checkpoints, delay positions (BPs), engagement areas and TRPs, trigger points or trigger lines, passage points, assembly areas, main supply routes, resupply points, coordination points, sectors, time lines, and routes.
 - m. A reserve is located in an area from which it can counterattack, move rapidly to reinforce, or cover the withdrawal of forward companies.
 - n. Battalion provides forces and fires to cover the withdrawal of forward elements.
- .2 _____ Battalion prepares for the delay.
- a. Battalion completes all specified preparations for the delay NLT the start of the operation.
 - b. Routes are selected, reconnoitered, marked, and, if possible, rehearsed.
 - c. Quarters parties prepare subsequent positions.
 - d. Obstacles are emplaced to slow the enemy and to allow disengagement.
 - e. Fires are planned to cover obstacles, disrupt the enemy, and support disengagement.
- .3 _____ Battalion conducts the delay.

- a. Enemy is forced to deploy into assault formations.
- b. Battalion maintains contact with the enemy's main body.
- c. Decisive engagement is avoided. (The battalion can withdraw and maneuver.)
- d. Battalion can withdraw all companies.
- e. Battalion is not bypassed or penetrated by more than an MRP(+)/TP(+).
- f. Withdrawal of battalion elements is coordinated with higher and adjacent units.
- g. Battalion commander requests reinforcements or downgrading of mission, if situation requires.

KEY INDICATORS:

CRITICAL STANDARDS

- a. The battalion preserves its freedom to maneuver; it does not become decisively engaged.
 - b. The battalion inflicts a delay and destruction on the enemy as specified by the higher headquarters commander.
 - c. The battalion maintains contact with the enemy main body.
 - d. The battalion is not bypassed or penetrated by more than an MRP/TP.
 - e. The battalion losses are less than 30 percent of personnel and vehicles.
-

TASK: 10A.3.14 PERFORM A RELIEF IN PLACE

CONDITION(S): The battalion is directed to perform a relief in place of another battalion. It is to occupy the same sector. The relief is to be completed at night before daybreak. A directed time of passage of command is specified. The enemy is in MRC strength in hasty defensive positions or is in MRB(+) if attacking.

STANDARDS: EVAL: Y; N; NE

- .1 _____ Battalion commander and staff plan for the relief in place that provides-
- a. Enough detail to accomplish the mission.
 - b. A specific time or event for the passage of command.
 - c. OPSEC measures to conceal the operation.
 - d. Time, sequence, and method of relief.
 - e. Transfer enemy situation.
 - f. Routes and priorities of movement.
 - g. Contingencies if the enemy attacks.
 - h. Procedures for transfer of obstacles, supplies, and selected equipment to the incoming battalion.
 - i. Frequencies and procedures for control.
 - j. Transfer of fire plans.

ENCLOSURE (1)

- k. Common control measures.
 - l. Continuous security.
 - m. Assembly areas.
 - n. Both units jointly develop the plan.
- .2 ____ Battalion is prepared for relief in place.
- a. Coordination is conducted down to company or platoon level before starting the relief.
 - b. Command groups are collocated before starting the relief.
 - c. Each company-size relieving element conducts quartering party operations.
 - d. Each relieving company-size element receives guides.
 - e. Routes are marked, and obstacles are removed.
- .3 ____ Battalion performs the relief.
- a. Relief is completed with the relieving battalion prepared to defend and the relieved battalion out of sector at the specified time.
 - b. Radio traffic does not indicate a relief is taking place.
 - c. Friendly forces do not lose over 5 percent casualties to enemy direct or indirect fires.
- .4 ____ Battalion reacts to enemy attack.

KEY INDICATORS:

CRITICAL STANDARDS

- a. The battalion is not surprised by an enemy ground force.
 - b. The relief is completed IAW higher headquarters order. The relieving force is prepared to defend with the relieved battalion out of sector at the specified time.
 - c. The battalion does not lose more than 10 percent casualties.
 - d. No friendly casualties due to friendly direct/indirect fires or mines.
-

TASK: 10A.3.15 PERFORM LINKUP

CONDITION(S): The battalion is given an offensive operation that requires conducting a linkup with another battalion. The headquarters directing the linkup establishes boundaries, RFLs, zone of attack or axis of advance, general linkup point, chain of command upon linkup, and other control/coordination measures. The enemy is in an MRC defensive position.

STANDARDS: EVAL: Y; N; NE

- .1 ____ The battalion plans the linkup.
- a. Plan accomplishes the mission.
 - b. Plan is developed between both battalions.
 - c. Linkup site is easy to recognize, has cover and concealment, and is defendable/securable.

ENCLOSURE (1)

- d. Linkup site-follows the guidance of higher headquarters.
- .2 ____ Battalion establishes communications.
- .3 ____ Battalion coordinates the linkup either physically or by radio.
 - a. Friendly and enemy situations, locations and types of obstacles, recognition signals, fire support plans, and control CP and maneuver control measures are exchanged.
 - b. Battalion coordinates schemes of maneuver by identifying the zones of attack or axis of advance, phase lines, fire support coordination line (FSCL), checkpoints, linkup point and alternate, and restrictive fire lines.
- .4 ____ Battalion performs the linkup.
 - a. Linkup accomplished at the designated point and time.
 - b. Units linking up do not engage each other.
 - c. Linkup site is secured (not observed or engaged by the enemy).
 - d. Both battalions come under control of one commander who reports the linkup is complete.

KEY INDICATORS:

CRITICAL STANDARDS

- a. The battalion performs the linkup at the place and time specified in the operation order.
- b. There are no losses to friendly fires.
- c. The chain of command is established and the directed commander is in charge of the linkup units.
- d. The battalion main body is not surprised.

TASK: 10A.3.16 PERFORM RESERVE OPERATIONS

CONDITION(S): The battalion is a higher headquarters reserve. In offensive operations, it is trailing forward battalions with a priority of commitment in two or more battalion zones. In defensive operations, it is given an assembly area or route(s) and tasks of preparing to perform three or more of the following type missions: counterattack, reinforce, counterattack by fire, or perform rear area security. Priorities are given for planning. The battalion has 48 hours to plan.

STANDARDS: EVAL: Y; N; NE

- .1 ____ Battalion coordinates with battalions in whose sector or zone the on-order mission is to be conducted.
 - a. Battalions coordinate at the beginning of the planning cycle.
 - b. Battalion commander and staff have the plans of the battalions/units in whose sector/zone will be possible commitment.
 - c. Routes, axis, boundaries, objectives, passage lanes, covering fires, fire support, identification procedures, frequencies, call signs, CSS, obstacles, and other items listed in the appropriate T/E and T/O for the on-order task are coordinated.
 - d. Subordinate leaders and staff are informed of coordinated information early enough to disseminate, plan, and conduct reconnaissance.

- e. Physical liaison is maintained with higher headquarters and battalions with the highest priority for commitment. The battalion is aware of any change in plan/status within 30 minutes.
 - f. Command group eavesdrop on the command nets of the battalion with the highest priority for commitment.
- .2 ____ Battalion plans/prepares/rehearses for reserve missions.
- a. Battalion plans, coordinates, reconnoiters, rehearses, and prepares for the priority reserve missions as time allows.
 - b. A plan is prepared for each priority mission.
 - c. Leaders conduct reconnaissance and rehearsals, if possible.
 - d. Battalion war games all implied tasks and prepares to assume missions of all other battalions within zone.
- .3 ____ Battalion moves as a reserve in an offensive operation.
- a. Battalion maintains its distance behind the lead battalion to avoid interference and decisive engagement, but it maintains contact and ability to quickly react.
 - b. When forward battalion is moving slowly or stopped, the battalion goes into a defensive posture. It resumes movement within five minutes of direction to do so.
- .4 ____ Battalion rapidly reacts to fragmentary order to execute the mission.
- a. Battalion initiates movement action within 15 minutes. (Lead company commander reports SP.)
 - b. Battalion is in position and prepared to block, counterattack, attack, react, or reinforce within 30 minutes (plus the road march time).
- .5 ____ Battalion coordinates movement with all organizations whose area it moves through to LD, LD/LC, or designated position.
- .6 ____ Battalion reinforces another battalion.
- a. Designated unit reaches the reinforced battalion specified time and location.
 - b. The battalion establishes communications with the battalion being reinforced. It coordinates the linkup location and tactical situation.
 - c. Reinforcing unit is provided with the above information.

KEY INDICATORS:

CRITICAL STANDARDS

- a. Specified and implied planning, preparation, and coordination are completed for all assigned tasks by the time specified in the order.
 - b. The battalion initiates movement (lead company reports SP) within 15 minutes of fragmentary order. (Offensive reserve mission.)
 - c. The battalion is in position and prepared to conduct its reserve mission within 30 minutes (plus road march time) after receiving the fragmentary order (defensive reserve mission).
-

TASK: 10A.3.17 PERFORM REAR OPERATIONS

CONDITION(S): The battalion is in higher headquarters rear area (defense) or trailing forward battalions. It is given an assembly area or route(s) and tasks to be prepared to provide security, to provide a reaction force for units in the area, or to secure the higher headquarters MSR. Where the battalion provides a reaction force, units can hold off the enemy attack until the arrival of the battalion, if the battalion initiates movement within 15 minutes of being alerted. The threats are: (a) Level III Threats are those that require the command decision to commit a force level combined arms tactical combat force to defeat them; (b) Level II Threats are those that are beyond CSSE/headquarters unit self-defense capabilities but can be defeated by response forces, normally MPs with supporting fires; (c) Level I Threats are those that can be defeated by CSSE/headquarters unit self-defense measures.

STANDARDS: EVAL: Y; N; NE

- .1 ____ S2 section performs IPB and reconnaissance that identify:
 - a. Likely Levels I, II, and III Threat objectives and landing areas.
 - b. Known or suspected unconventional threat.
 - c. Likely avenues of main attack or penetration.
 - d. Likely ambush sites along MSRs.
- .2 ____ Battalion commander and staff plan for directed rear area security tasks. Plan contains-
 - a. An operation plan prepared for each priority mission.
 - b. A balance between dispersing (allowing rapid reaction and protection to a large number of bases and areas against lower-level threats) and concentrating on reacting to Level III threats.
 - c. Provisions for decentralized coordination, rehearsals and reconnaissance. These actions are often performed by companies.
 - d. Requirements for rules of engagement, recognizing allied units, and enforcing civilian control policies.
- .3 ____ Battalion prepares and coordinates for security/reaction force mission.
 - a. Coordination is conducted within 24 hours and maintained with all units the battalion is ordered to support.
 - b. Commander's defensive plans of the units in the sector/zone of possible commitment are coordinated, reviewed, and modified, as needed.
 - c. Routes, boundaries, convoy schedules, identification procedures, frequencies, call signs, obstacles, rules of engagement, and other information are exchanged.
 - d. Coordination is made with fire support, rear battle tasks, and other headquarters supporting or controlling the rear battle mission.
- .4 ____ Battalion reacts rapidly to fragmentary order to execute mission.
 - a. Initiates movement within 15 minutes for offensive operations. (Lead company commander reports LD.)
 - b. Is in position and prepared to block/counter-attack, attack, react, and reinforce within 30 minutes for defensive operations (plus the road march time).
- .5 ____ Battalion moves.
 - a. Battalion coordinates movement with the organization whose area it is moving through. Minimum coordination includes information on routes and times.
 - b. Movement is rapid while providing for limited security.

ENCLOSURE (1)

.6 _____ Battalion plans and performs MSR clearing and security.

- a. Battalion finds and neutralizes all mines from the MSR within six hours of emplacement.
- b. Squad-size enemy harassment does not delay the convoy for over 60 minutes or inflict more than two vehicle casualties for each convoy.
- c. No convoys are ambushed.

.7 _____ Battalion plans and performs defense of units.

- a. Enemy cannot stop operation of any of the units being secured by direct fire (Level II and III) or at all (Level I).
- b. Attacking enemy is destroyed or fixed, and contact is maintained to allow further destruction.

.8 _____ Battalion plans and reacts to an attack of a unit in it's AO.

- a. Battalion destroys or fixes the attacking element depending on size.
- b. Battalion links up with the unit/facility.

KEY INDICATORS:

CRITICAL STANDARDS

- a. The operations of any unit being secured by the battalion is not disrupted.
- b. The battalion defeats the enemy before the unit is overrun.
- c. No friendly convoys are destroyed.
- d. Friendly convoys are not delayed more than 60 minutes.

TASK: 10A.3.18 INFILTRATE

CONDITION(S): Higher headquarters directs or the battalion commander determines a need to infiltrate part or all of the battalion around or through an enemy MRB(+) defense. It may be performed during day or night.

STANDARDS: EVAL: Y; N; NE

.1 _____ Battalion reconnoiters to gather information.

- a. Locates enemy security elements.
- b. Locates gaps in the enemy's defensive system.
- c. Locates strength of enemy defenses at the objective.
- d. Locates potential routes, lanes, assembly area, rally points, and objectives.
- e. Does not disclose the operation.
- f. Is completed early enough so that the information can be used in the mission preparation.

.2 _____ Battalion commander and staff conduct infiltration planning.

ENCLOSURE (1)

- a. Infiltration lanes that avoid the enemy provide concealment and promote navigation. The number depends on the size of the infiltration. Multiple routes increase flexibility and the time required to infiltrate, but make linkup more difficult and increase the chance of the enemy detecting the operation.
 - b. There is an order of march for each route.
 - c. Plan measures for casualty evacuation and care until evacuation is possible.
 - d. Necessary coordination measures are included (boundaries, RFL, no-fire areas, recognition signals, markings) preclude mistaken engagement.
 - e. Rally points and other contingency measure are planned for action if the enemy discovers the infiltration.
 - f. Linkup instructions are coordinated.
 - g. An assault position is chosen to facilitate linkup and continuation of the mission. It is unoccupied by the enemy.
 - h. Each infiltrating element is assigned with enough combat power for self-protection and accomplishment of its mission.
 - i. Plan determines size of infiltration groups and number of routes, based on the need for simplicity (larger groups, single routes), secrecy (single routes, smaller routes), and avoidance of artillery fire (multiple routes, small groups).
 - j. Fire support includes illumination and smoke, and considers use of fires to cover the infiltration.
- .3 ____ Battalion prepares for infiltration by-
- a. Checking camouflage, and light and noise discipline.
 - b. Securing/markings of routes and assembly areas by reconnaissance patrols.
 - c. Ensuring plans do not disclose the operation.
- .4 ____ Battalion performs infiltration which is undetected and avoids engagement.
- .5 ____ Battalion assembles.
- a. Battalion infiltration element assembles by the time prescribed.
 - b. Enemy does not detect the assembly area.
 - c. Friendly engagements do not occur during the assembly.

KEY INDICATORS:

CRITICAL STANDARDS

- a. The battalion reaches and occupies its assault position without the enemy determining the size, composition, mission, or destination of the battalion.
 - b. The battalion infiltration force reaches assault position with 75 percent of personnel/equipment NLT the time prescribed in the operation order.
 - c. The battalion suffers no more than 10 percent casualties.
-

TASK: 10A.3.19 BYPASS ENEMY FORCE

CONDITION(S): The battalion performs a tactical movement as part of an offensive, defensive, or retrograde operation. There is no forward covering force. It encounters an enemy MRC(+) in a strongpoint as part of a security force, or as a flank or rear guard. Higher headquarters concept requires rapid continuation of the movement to contact and permits bypass. Bypass routes are available in the battalion zone.

STANDARDS: EVAL: Y; N; NE

- .1 ____ Battalion commander and staff issue a fragmentary order.
- a. Issue a fragmentary order within 10 minutes of initial contact.
 - b. Ensure the fragmentary order accomplishes the mission.
 - c. Designate one or more companies to fix the enemy. If more than one is designated, an overall commander is appointed.
 - d. Assign bypass routes that provide protection from the fires of the enemy antiarmor weapons and an order of march for each route.
 - e. Plan reconnaissance and security of the bypass routes before commitment of the main body.
 - f. Specify instructions to the companies that remain to fix the enemy. Instruct the fixing team to rejoin the battalion on a signal or event, or become attached to follow-on units.
- .2 ____ Battalion fixes the enemy.
- .3 ____ Battalion (-) bypasses.
- a. Battalion (-) bypasses and suffers no more than 10 percent losses to the enemy.
 - b. Bypass is completed in less than one hour.
 - c. Battalion resumes tactical movement.
 - d. Elements fixing the enemy rejoin the battalion link up with a following element and come under their control.
 - e. The enemy force remains fixed.

KEY INDICATORS:

CRITICAL STANDARDS

- a. The battalion (-) bypasses the enemy.
 - b. The enemy is fixed. It cannot maneuver against the battalion or withdraw.
 - c. Less than two companies are used to fix the enemy.
 - d. The battalion loses no more than 10 percent casualties while conducting this operation.
-

ENCLOSURE (1)

TASK: 10A.3.20 CONSOLIDATE AND REORGANIZE

CONDITION(S): The battalion performs tactical operations and either gains an objective or repels an assault on a defense. The enemy is defeated. The battalion sustains casualties in both personnel and equipment.

STANDARDS: EVAL: Y; N; NE

- .1 ____ Battalion coordinates the reorganization.
 - a. All elements accurately report status within 10 minutes of request or change in status.
 - b. Battalion orders required reorganization actions.
 - c. Movement and linkup locations of resupply and evacuation are provided by the combat trains to all elements.
- .2 ____ Battalion performs reorganization.
 - a. Completes consolidation actions within one hour of defeating the enemy.
 - b. Evacuates all captured personnel, documents, and equipment.
 - c. Performs immediate resupply and cross-leveling of ammunition, supplies, and fuel to provide minimum basic loads on all combat vehicles.
 - d. Replaces key leaders and re-establishes chain of command.
 - e. Pre-positions command groups to control reorganization.
 - f. Treats and evacuates all casualties.
 - g. Redistributes weapon systems/personnel from elements that have lost over 50 percent of their combat power, which are to re-form into viable elements/units.
 - h. Accounts for all personnel.
 - i. Reports location and status to higher headquarters.
- .3 ____ Battalion performs consolidation.
 - a. Completes consolidation actions within one hour of defeating the enemy or, at first light, during limited visibility.
 - b. Destroys or captures all enemy combat vehicles and organized resistance, or drives from the objective/sector and key terrain around the objective or defensive sector.
 - c. Establishes effective hasty defense to include a defensive fire support plan. Defeats an MRB(+) counterattack one hour after starting consolidation.
 - d. Places security elements forward of perimeter (OPs, scouts, patrols) to provide early warning on company-size mounted approaches.
 - e. Performs reconnaissance of objective/sector with local patrols and scouts.

KEY INDICATORS:

CRITICAL STANDARDS

- a. All EPWs, WIAs, and KIAs are removed from company areas within one hour.
- b. Immediate resupply and cross loading of Class V items are conducted.
- c. A chain of command is re-established, and reorganization of elements below 50 percent strength is accomplished within one hour. All Marines and new leaders know the new chain of command.

ENCLOSURE (1)

- d. All enemy combat vehicles and organized dismounted resistance are destroyed, captured, or forced to withdraw.
- e. The battalion is prepared to defeat counterattack or continue the mission one hour after starting consolidation.

TASK: 101.3.21 BREAKOUT FROM ENCIRCLEMENT

CONDITION(S): The battalion performs an offensive, defensive, or retrograde operation. During the operation, it becomes encircled (enemy elements to its front, flanks, and rear). Enemy may be in a hasty defensive posture or is using forces to fix the battalion. The battalion is ordered to rejoin friendly elements within the time specified or unspecified. The enemy is in MRB(+) strength. Gaps between enemy elements do exist.

STANDARDS: EVAL: Y; N; NE

- .1 ____ Battalion establishes control.
 - a. Control is established over all friendly elements (become attached) in the area of encirclement regardless of its command relationship.
 - b. Control is established within 30 minutes.
- .2 ____ Battalion establishes security.
 - a. All-round security is established within 45 minutes.
 - b. Disposition of forces is rearranged for all-round defense (perimeter) within one hour.
 - c. Ensures each element coordinates tie-in with adjacent element.
- .3 ____ Battalion performs reconnaissance.
 - a. Determines likely enemy locations and strengths based upon templating and reports.
 - b. Performs reconnaissance to confirm the above.
 - c. Locates forward enemy elements.
 - d. Locates gaps in enemy dispositions.
- .4 ____ Battalion commander and staff plan the operation.
 - a. Include deception planning.
 - b. Plan quickly to allow earliest practical execution to preclude the enemy from organizing defenses.
 - c. Provide all-round security during all phases. Designate front, flank, and rear security forces.
 - d. Ensure location of attack and route back to friendly forces avoids the enemy as much as possible. The operation may be planned as an infiltration.
 - e. Plan breakout for night, if practical, and do not delay the breakout.
 - f. Include linkup and rearward passage of lines planning and coordination.
 - g. Plan fire support.
 - h. Coordinate signals.
 - i. Provide for evacuation of wounded and weapon systems.

ENCLOSURE (1)

- j. Provide for destruction of equipment and supplies (except medical) left behind.
- k. Task companies to rupture or fix the enemy.

.5 ____ Battalion prepares for the breakout.

- a. Enemy is not aware of the location or time of breakout.
- b. Preparations and reorganization are completed before the directed time for breakout.

.6 ____ Battalion breaks out.

- a. Size of the breakout (width, secure flanks) allows passage of the battalion.
- b. Routes are cleared to allow passage of wheeled vehicles.
- c. All elements of the battalion break out from encirclement.
- d. Communication with higher headquarters is maintained.
- e. Order of march is disseminated.
- f. All personnel (to include wounded) are evacuated or break out.
- g. Vehicles, weapons, equipment and supplies are brought out of the encirclement.
- h. All equipment and supplies (except medical) that cannot be evacuated are destroyed.

.7 ____ Battalion moves to friendly location.

- a. Battalion maintains all-round security; enemy attack is detected from any direction.
- b. Battalion can successfully react to protect itself from any enemy attack. Enemy attack is defeated and does not stop movement.
- c. Battalion links up with friendly elements and executes a passage of lines.

KEY INDICATORS:

CRITICAL STANDARDS

- a. The battalion breaks through or disengages from the enemy and rejoins friendly forces IAW directions from higher headquarters.
- b. The battalion returns with 75 percent of assigned, attached, and OPCON forces.
- c. All encircled friendly elements, regardless of the command relationship, are brought under battalion control.

TASK: 10A.3.22 PERFORM SCREEN

CONDITION(S): The battalion has received an operation order to screen in front or flanks of a larger friendly unit. The unit may be moving or stationary. The enemy is attempting to gain intelligence about the friendly unit and disrupt its operation.

ENCLOSURE (1)

STANDARDS: EVAL: Y; N; NE

- .1 _____ Battalion commander and staff develop a plan for the screen to include:
- a. Identification of enemy avenues of approach and possible objectives for enemy reconnaissance and infiltrating elements.
 - b. Security forces to cover enemy approaches.
 - c. Reaction forces and supporting fires to reinforce or assist screening forces.
 - d. Control measures
 - 1) Sectors, areas, or boundaries for subordinate elements.
 - 2) Use of scouts.
 - 3) Screen lines (phase lines), initial and subsequent.
 - 4) En route rally points, ORPs, linkup points, contact points, and checkpoints.
 - 5) Passage points and infiltration lanes.
 - 6) Routes (for patrols or to initial screen line), if needed.
 - e. Engagement criteria.
 - 1) Size of enemy unit.
 - 2) Type of enemy unit.
 - 3) Activity of enemy unit.
- .2 _____ Battalion occupies the initial screen line by the time specified in the order.
- a. All identified enemy approaches are covered.
 - b. Communications are established and maintained.
 - c. Battalion detects all enemy platoon-size forces entering the area and accurately reports them to higher headquarters within 10 minutes.
 - d. Battalion adjusts during limited visibility.
- .3 _____ Battalion reacts to enemy approach.
- a. Enemy reconnaissance elements of platoon-size or smaller are destroyed or forced to withdraw before gaining information.
 - b. Enemy combat units are disrupted, delayed, or destroyed within battalion capabilities with supporting, and direct fires.
 - c. All enemy information is reported within 10 minutes.
- .4 _____ Battalion move to subsequent screen lines to maintain screen.
- .5 _____ If the battalion is unable to defeat the enemy, it reports to higher headquarters and acts as directed.
- .6 _____ Commander and staff control the movement of the screen element.
- a. Elements move, on order, to successive screen element.
 - b. Commander and staff use fragmentary orders and graphic control measures to direct the moves.
 - c. Elements report when they occupy the new screen lines or OPs.

ENCLOSURE (1)

KEY INDICATORS:

CRITICAL STANDARDS

- a. The battalion detects all enemy platoon-size or larger units in its assigned area.
 - b. The battalion warns the protected force before the enemy can attack or before the force enters effective range (3 to 5 km) of enemy direct-fire weapons in defensive positions.
 - c. The battalion strips enemy reconnaissance assets or forces the withdrawal of platoon-size or smaller enemy reconnaissance elements or probes.
 - d. The battalion sustains no more than 10 percent casualties/ combat vehicle loss.
 - e. The battalion uses indirect fire to defeat enemy. Only uses direct fire in its own defense.
-

TASK: 10A.3.23 PERFORM GUARD OPERATION

CONDITION(S): The battalion is conducting a guard operation for a stationary regiment or a division. It is deployed forward of a designated phase line. A reconnaissance of the area between the main body and the guard force has been conducted. The guard force is in place. Enemy reconnaissance elements are trying to locate the main body. Both the enemy and guard force have artillery support available.

STANDARDS: EVAL: Y; N; NE

- .1 ____ The battalion and staff develop a plan for the guard.
 - a. The battalion commander and staff develop control measures in support of the battalion's guard task.
 - b. Plans BPs across most likely avenues of approach.
 - c. Organizes the defense or delay using the advantages of terrain and weapon systems capabilities.
 - d. Plans the use of, and requests priority of artillery, CAS/CIFS and naval gunfire.
- .2 ____ The battalion searches for enemy units.
 - a. Battalion elements observe in their designated sectors.
 - b. Companies report all observed enemy activity as per the unit's SOP or the order.
 - c. Night-observation devices are used during limited visibility.
 - d. Infantry conducts reconnaissance if the battalion has attached infantry.
 - e. Provides main body reaction time and determines the enemy's disposition.
- .3 ____ The battalion engages the enemy.
 - a. Causes the enemy to deploy early.
 - b. Subjects the enemy to heavy casualties.
 - c. Destroys enemy reconnaissance elements.
 - d. Attacks to destroy enemy elements.
 - e. If necessary, guides a counterattack force from the main body.
 - f. Keeps the enemy out of direct-fire range of the main body (4,000 meters).

- g. Does not withdraw to successive positions without permission of the main body commander.

.4 _____ Guard force continually updates the main body on enemy situation using spot reports.

KEY INDICATORS:

CRITICAL STANDARDS

The guard force protects the main body from surprise and direct fire from the enemy. Causes premature deployment and attrites attacking enemy forces. Does not withdraw to subsequent battle positions without permission of the main body commander. The battalion inflicts 75 percent casualties on the enemy if directed to fight.

TASK: 10A.3.24 BREACH DEFENDED OBSTACLES

CONDITION(S): The battalion is ordered to breach a defended obstacle system to initiate the higher headquarter's penetration of an enemy defensive position. The area of the breach is covered by an MRC. Supporting attacks fix, but do not suppress, adjacent MRCs. The terrain does not permit bypass or wide envelopment. The obstacle system has wire obstacles, antitank and antipersonnel mines, and an antitank ditch. The battalion has priority of fires and may have a company of combat engineers attached.

STANDARDS: EVAL: Y; N; NE

- .1 _____ Battalion performs reconnaissance of the obstacle system.
- a. Leader reconnaissance takes place down to squad/crew-level.
 - b. Battalion locates all reinforcing and existing obstacles.
 - c. Battalion locates vehicle positions, antiarmor weapons, and platoon positions covering the obstacles.
 - d. Battalion determines the width, depth, and composition of the obstacle system.
 - e. Battalion locates overwatch/support-by-fire positions to support the breach, covered and concealed routes to these positions, tentative initial breach points, and covered and concealed routes to the initial breach points.
 - f. Reconnaissance does not disclose the time, location, or plan for the breach.
 - g. Reconnaissance provide early warning of obstacle system through continuous surveillance of the obstacle system and supporting positions.
- .2 _____ Battalion commander and staff plan breach.
- a. Subordinate unit tasks are assigned to fix the enemy and to prevent shifting forces to defeat the breach effort.
 - b. Air defense elements covers the breach and passage of units through the obstacles.
 - c. Engineers, if attached, are task organized with the breach element.
 - d. Indirect fires are planned and coordinated with the S2's template to suppress enemy weapons and positions that overwatch the breach site and to obscure the enemy positions and weapons, the breach site, and the terrain between the breach and enemy positions.
 - e. Plan specifies the method of breach.
 - f. Staff coordinates for the equipment needed to breach or reduce the obstacle.
 - g. Plan includes a breach and support force with tasks for each.

ENCLOSURE (1)

- h. Plan is coordinated with adjacent and follow-on units.

.3 _____ Battalion prepares for the breach.

- a. Preparation actions are directed and coordinated; routes are marked, and support-by-fire/overwatch positions are established.
- b. Preparations do not disclose the breach plan, time, or location.
- c. Battalion reorganizes into the breach element and support element.

.4 Support force move to an overwatch position.

- a. Positions are occupied that cover likely enemy positions.
- b. Support force uses available cover and concealment during movement.
- c. Each support element can locate where the breach will be made and where the breach element is moving from.
- d. Fire control measures (targets, limits of fire, TRPs, and so on) are designated to each support element on the ground once they are in position.
- e. All-round security is maintained. The overwatch element is not surprised by the enemy.

.5 Support force provides overwatch for the breach force.

- a. Requests smoke on the far side of the obstacle and on known enemy positions.
- b. Fires on suspected and known enemy locations with direct fires, preventing the enemy from fixing or stopping the breach element. Warns the breach element before the enemy can assault.
- c. Uses smoke to obscure area around the obstacle.

.6 _____ Breach force establishes breach site security.

- a. Moves to the breach point(s) using available cover and concealment.
- b. Secures near side of the obstacle by clearing all enemy on the near side, and booby traps and mines on the approaches.
- c. Establishes and operates OPs and prevents the enemy from assaulting the main breach force without warning.

.7 _____ Battalion performs the breach/initial penetration.

- a. Enemy obstacles are breached, or bypass routes are found and marked. These routes provide for rapid protection passage of the assault element.
- b. At least one route is cleared of all mines and is clearly marked IAW unit SOP. This route is wide enough for the passage of the assault element.
- c. Breaching element loses no more than 50 percent of combat equipment and personnel.
- d. Breaching force clears all enemy infantry defending the obstacle.
- e. The obstacle is breached (demolitions, mechanical, vehicle or manual).
- f. All remaining mines in the initial breach are marked IAW unit SOP.
- g. Foot lanes are initially established if a mounted assault is not practical.

.8 _____ Breach element completes the breach.

- a. Secures the far side of the obstacle to prevent the enemy from counterattacking the battalion main body without warning.

ENCLOSURE (1)

- b. On order, support element moves through the obstacle and clears the far side of enemy, which can prevent the assault element from moving through lanes.
- .9 ____ Assault element moves through the obstacle.
- a. Tanks lead through if antiarmor defenses are not effective.
 - b. Infantry leads if antiarmor defenses are effective.
 - c. Assault element destroys or forces the withdrawal of enemy forces and weapons that can place direct fire on the breach point(s).
- .10 ____ Battalion improves the breach.
- a. All breach sites are widened to permit at least one vehicle to pass.
 - b. All mines are removed, destroyed, or marked in the widened lanes IAW unit SOP.
 - c. All physical obstacle (cribs, tank ditches, and so on) are reduced so that combat vehicles can move through the lane.
 - d. Entrance, exit, and boundaries of lanes are marked IAW unit SOP.
- .11 ____ Battalion passes following units through the obstacle system.
- a. Battalion notifies following units and higher headquarters when the breach is passable to following units.
 - b. Battalion warns passing units before the enemy can counterattack with ground elements.
 - c. Guides direct movement into cleared lanes, prevent congestion or halts in movement, and redirect traffic to alternate lanes if a lane becomes blocked or taken under effective antiarmor fire.
 - d. Battalion maintains local security and overwatch, and prevents direct fire on passing units.
 - e. Passing unit loses no vehicles or personnel to enemy mines or battalion fire.

KEY INDICATORS:

CRITICAL STANDARDS

- a. The battalion completes the initial breach within 45 minutes.
 - b. The battalion sustains no more than 30 percent casualties or combat vehicle losses.
 - c. The battalion moves the following battalions through the obstacle system without losses due to friendly fire or obstacles, NLT the time specified in the higher headquarters order.
 - d. The battalion sustains no casualties or vehicle losses due to friendly fire.
-

ENCLOSURE (1)

TASK: 10A.3.25 MAINTAIN OPERATION SECURITY

CONDITION(S): The battalion performs tactical operations. The enemy can employ EW measures, and air and ground reconnaissance units against the battalion.

STANDARDS: EVAL: Y; N; NE

- .1 _____ Battalion commander and staff develop a concept that includes OPSEC consideration.
 - a. All major friendly potential vulnerabilities to the enemy intelligence operations are identified.
 - b. Possible security and deception measures to limit these vulnerabilities are developed.
- .2 _____ Battalion commander and staff develop a plan/operation order that provides for-
 - a. Detection and destruction of enemy reconnaissance and appropriate passive measures.
 - b. Strong security elements/patrols to the front and flanks (and rear, if necessary) early and continuously.
 - c. Contingency plans to destroy enemy reconnaissance elements if the security force cannot destroy them (reaction forces).
 - d. Command and control for security forces/patrols.
 - e. Recovery of forward security elements in the defense while maintaining surveillance of the enemy.
 - f. Coordination of local security by companies, command and control, and CSS elements for OPs and to ambush patrols.
 - g. Use of covered and concealed routes.
 - h. Conduct of preparation/movement actions during limited visibility.
 - i. Control to limit movement traffic in, around, and between positions.
 - j. Remote radios and other emitters so that enemy intercept units cannot locate.
 - k. Designation of alternate frequencies and antijamming procedures.
 - l. Designation of one station to stay on the old frequency to deceive enemy.
 - m. Deception measures directed by higher headquarters.
 - n. Deception actions to make the enemy think the battalion is doing a believable action, which stops the enemy from reaction or causes him to react in a manner favorable to the battalion. Designation measures include feints, demonstrations, ruses, use of indirect fires (concentrated on decoy objectives), and use of smoke and patrols/reconnaissance in areas other than main objective area.
- .3 _____ Battalion performs countersurveillance activities.
 - a. All enemy patrols are destroyed or repelled before they can gain information on battalion disposition actions or concept/intent of operation by use of security and reaction forces.
 - b. Passive measures are employed by all battalion elements.
- .4 _____ Battalion performs electronic security operations.
 - a. Radio transmissions do not reveal unit activity and movement.
 - b. All transmissions are less than 15 seconds long.

ENCLOSURE (1)

- c. Radio communications are not used when wire, messages, or visual means are available and permitted by METT-TSL.
- d. Authentication procedures outlined in the unit CEOI or systems are used during all communications.
- e. Call signs and radio frequencies are changed as directed by CEOI.
- f. Names of persons, equipment, units, and locations are not used over nonsecure communications.
- g. Sensitive information is transmitted by secure means (mechanical or encrypted).
- h. NCS enforces brevity and use of CEOIs.
- i. Noncommunication emitters are placed away from friendly locations and are used only when other measures are unreliable.
- j. Unnecessary transmissions are avoided.
- k. Report times are planned on a random schedule and are as short as possible IAW higher headquarters.
- l. Sensitive information that must be transmitted by electronic means on a nonsecure net is encrypted, using an authorized cryptosystem.

.5 ____ Battalion performs information security.

- a. Controls waste and other material outlining plan, operations, combat status, or other information of use to the enemy. Limits dissemination of operation order/operation plans classified. Destroys them when no longer needed.
- b. Safeguards information on unit or unit operations from civilians (refugees, displaced personnel).

.6 ____ Battalion performs deception activities.

KEY INDICATORS:

CRITICAL STANDARDS

- a. During battalion defensive operation, the enemy cannot locate more than 10 percent of friendly infantry, antiarmor weapons, obstacles, command and control, or CSS positions. It cannot determine the overall scheme of the defense.
- b. During battalion moving operations, the enemy cannot determine the battalion scheme of maneuver in time to react.
- c. The battalion main body is not surprised or detected (attacked before it can deploy, shift forces, adjust, and prepare) by the enemy.

ENCLOSURE (1)

101.4 FIRE SUPPORT

TASK: 10A.4.1 EMPLOY FIRE SUPPORT

CONDITION(S): The battalion has priority of fires from a DS artillery battalion and has been given CAS/CIFS sorties for planning purposes. Immediate or additional sorties are available upon request.

STANDARDS: EVAL: Y; N; NE

- .1 ____ Battalion commander and staff plan combat operations.
 - a. Battalion operation order includes a fire support plan that clearly addresses a scheme and task/priorities for supporting fires.
 - b. Planned fires are transferred to a fire support overlay.
- .2 ____ FSC and battalion staff develop a fire support plan. The commander approves it.
- .3 ____ FSCC and battalion leaders coordinate fire support.
 - a. All battalion leaders down to the platoon level have target lists and conduct of fire frequencies. They know the targets they are to fire on and the criteria for initiating those fires.
 - b. DS artillery battalion has copies of the battalion fire support plan before the operation starts. They continually update the plan.
- .4 ____ Battalion executes fire support.
 - a. Friendly fires stop or slow enemy movement.
 - b. Friendly fires sufficiently suppress enemy.
 - c. At least 80 percent of the missions fired suppress/neutralize/destroy the enemy or accomplishes the commanders intent.
 - d. Volume of fires accomplish the desired task.
 - e. Friendly supporting fires do no result in fratricide.
 - f. Friendly forces are not silhouetted by friendly artillery smoke.
 - g. Fire support priorities and tasks are adjusted as the battle progresses.
- .5 ____ Battalion executes immediate CAS/CIFS.
 - a. Air/artillery assets are massed to destroy enemy forces and support maneuver.
 - b. FSC initiates immediate CAS/CIFS request on approved targets.
 - c. Targets not approved for CAS/CIFS are serviced by other fire support assets.
 - d. Requests are coordinated with AO.
 - e. Artillery/naval gunfire support is coordinated and used with CAS/CIFS.
 - f. Battalion conducts suppresses enemy air defenses (SEAD) on known enemy.
 - g. Appropriate platforms are allocated to destroy enemy forces.
- .6 ____ Battalion keeps the regimental FSC and DS artillery battalion updated.
 - a. Battalion element locations.
 - b. New missions are coordinated.
 - c. Mission/priority changes.

- .7 ____ Battalion conducts quick fire planning, as required.
- a. Battalion receives FRAGO.
 - b. Battalion commander issues guidance.
 - c. Battalion issues FRAGO to companies.
 - d. Lead company identifies a minimum of five targets.
 - e. FO of lead company develops quick fire plan by completing DA Form 5368-R or similar format.
 - f. FO obtains company commander's approval of the quick fire plan.
 - g. FO transmits warning Order.
 - h. FO transmits quick fire plan; target information and schedule of fire within 20 minutes of receipt of FRAGRO from battalion.

KEY INDICATORS:

CRITICAL STANDARDS

- a. All available supporting fires executed to accomplish tasks that best support the commander's intent/concept to accomplish the mission. Available fires attack critical/vulnerable areas of enemy formations or positions.
- b. At least 80 percent of the missions suppress/neutralize/destroy the enemy or accomplishes the commanders intent.
- c. Friendly supporting fires do not hit friendly forces.
- d. The regimental FSC and DS artillery battalion is updated on the location of all battalion elements.

TASK: 10A.4.2 OPERATE FIRE SUPPORT COORDINATION CENTER

CONDITION(S): The battalion conducts tactical operations requiring indirect fire support.

STANDARDS: EVAL: Y; N; NE

- .1 ____ FSCC provides status of fire support to include:
- a. Available fire support and assigned missions.
 - b. Ammunition status to include amounts of illumination, FASCAM, smoke, and other special munitions and their capabilities (length of time, area of each).
 - c. Higher headquarters allocation of priority targets/FPFs and priority of fires.
 - d. Fire support coordination measures.
 - e. Present and planned locations of artillery units and FSA's.
- .2 ____ FSCC assists S2 in developing situational and events templates by providing information on enemy fire support ability/likely actions and friendly counterbattery plans.
- .3 ____ FSC assists the commander by completing his estimate and concept of the operation.
- .4 ____ FSC and FSCC develop a fire support plan.

- a. Fire support plan follows and accomplishes the commander's intent. Priorities of fire, target priorities, and priority targets support the commander's main effort. They change to align to different phases or contingencies.
- b. Fire support plan includes: plan for the use of fire support; a target list/overlay; priorities of fire for artillery; naval surface fire support, CAS/CIFS and mortars; allocation or location of priority targets/FPF if allocated to the battalion.
- c. Fire support plan is synchronized with and supports the scheme of maneuver.
- d. Fire support plan is adequate and should consider the following:
 - 1) Targets planned on known, likely, and suspected enemy locations; mounted approaches at choke points; dismounted approaches where acquisition is likely; potential enemy overwatch/support-by-fire positions; and easily recognizable terrain features to allow rapid adjustment onto the enemy.
 - 2) Smoke planned to obscure enemy observation, screen friendly movement, support breaching operations, and assist disengagements.
 - 3) Targets planned to support combat and reconnaissance patrols.
 - 4) Illumination planned to support night attacks, engagement areas, and counter-surveillance.
 - 5) Targets planned to protect friendly obstacles from breaching and to attack the enemy stopped at obstacles.
 - 6) FASCAM/GATOR planned to canalize the enemy into preferred avenues of approach/engagement areas, and to isolate/block/slow enemy elements and their reinforcements.
 - 7) Control measures established to preclude engagement of friendly forces and to facilitate engagement of enemy forces.
 - 8) CAS/CIFS planned to engage concentrated enemy positions.
 - 9) Assigned responsibilities and instructions for execution of the fire plan (may be in synchronization or fire support execution matrix).

.5 _____ FSC and FSCC coordinate the fire support plan before the battle.

- a. All subordinate elements are provided overlays/target lists and artillery frequencies. They know the targets they are to engage and the criteria for initiating fires.
- b. DS artillery battalion has copies of the battalion fire plan before the start of the operation with enough time to perform necessary planning/coordination.
- c. Preplanned CAS/CIFS missions are deconflicted based on planned IPs, CPs, firing positions, and friendly units.
- d. Targets from company commanders/FOs and other elements are consolidated into a list of targets, duplications are eliminated, and submitted for approval.
- e. Battalion FSC representatives coordinate with company fire support representatives to ensure he understands company plans and battalion fire plans.
- f. Positioning or movement of artillery units in battalion sectors, zones, or march columns is coordinated by higher headquarters with the battalion commander/S3 when requested by the DS artillery battalion in time to implement.
- g. Changes to the fire plan or target lists are disseminated to subordinate elements and artillery battalion FDCs within 10 minutes.
- h. Fire support plan is rehearsed with the battalion staff.

ENCLOSURE (1)

- 1) S3 ensures the fire plan supports the battalion commander's concept and scheme of maneuver; coordinates availability/ planning of CAS/CIFS and positioning/ movement of artillery units in battalion sector.
- 2) S2 knows all likely enemy locations and actions, avenues of approach, coverage of R & S plan, support by R & S plan, and provision of support to scouts.
- 3) Engineers provide location of obstacles.
- 4) CommO ensures adequate communication with fire support agencies.
- 5) AO/FSC provides CAS/CIFS that allow maximum engagement of the enemy and survivability of CAS/CIFS. Uses CAS/CIFS against appropriate targets.

.6 _____ FSCC assists FSC and commander execute fire support.

- a. Relays all calls for fire from FOs that cannot maintain communication with supporting FDCs at the DS artillery battalion within two minutes.
- b. Maintains friendly unit locations.
- c. Coordinates requests for additional fire support.
- d. Ensures adherence to fire support coordination measures.
- e. Establishes and maintains communications with FOs and supporting fire support units.
- f. Recommends targets, priorities, and fire support assets for employment.
- g. Keeps battalion commander informed of changes in the fire support status.
- h. Keeps higher headquarters FSC supporting artillery informed of changes in the tactical situation.
- i. Reviews, approves/disapproves, and prioritizes all requests for fire support IAW commander's guidance, established fire support coordination measures, and the tactical situation. Ensures most effective means of fire support is used. Avoids duplication of fire support requests. Relays requests for fire support to the appropriate agency within two minutes (if communication problems preclude direct communication).

KEY INDICATORS:

CRITICAL STANDARDS

- a. The FSCC conducts planning and coordination. Plan covers the commander's guidance and intent.
- b. The FSCC provides a continual complete update to the commander and other staff elements, PSC, FACs, NGFS team, and FOs of the status of fire support availability.
- c. The FSCC keeps the higher headquarters FSC and fire support agencies updated on the situation of the battalion.
- d. Within two minutes, the FSCC relays all calls for fire for subordinate/FO elements that cannot maintain communications with supporting FDCs.
- e. FSCC coordinates the use of air and surface fire support to support the battalion's maneuver.

ENCLOSURE (1)

10A.5.1 MOBILITY/SURVIVABILITY

TASK: 10A.5.1 PERFORM MOBILITY/SURVIVABILITY SURVEY

CONDITION(S): The battalion performs tactical operations with engineer support. The enemy has engineer assets and can mechanically employ/breach obstacles.

STANDARDS: EVAL: Y; N; NE

- .1 ____ Battalion commander and staff conduct terrain analysis and map reconnaissance.
 - a. Analysis identifies and classifies all avenues of approach and likely/effective places along each for positioning/reinforcing obstacles and for reducing their effect on friendly movement.
 - b. Analysis identifies likely positions for weapons and units.
- .2 ____ Battalion performs reconnaissance of enemy and friendly approaches, routes, and terrain.
 - a. Outline a concept of operations that establishes a general priority of tasks for obstacles and blade assets, and a specific priority between survivability or mobility tasks.
 - b. Determine obstacles that support the scheme of defense by slowing/stopping/turning the enemy where he is exposed to fires.
- .3 ____ Battalion commander and staff plan mobility and survivability operations to support moving operations.
 - a. Chooses approaches that avoid obstacles or provide assets and times to breach obstacles.
 - b. Ensures the concept of the operation does not have the battalion bypassing into possible enemy fire sacks.
 - c. Ensures sufficient covering fires are planned.
- .4 ____ Battalion breaches and passes obstacles.
 - a. All obstacles are detected by reconnaissance elements before exposure of the main body.
 - b. Considering the size and coverage of the obstacle, the breach is made quickly.
 - c. Following elements are guided throughout the breach without any losses due to mines. Required CSS routes are cleared and maintained.
- .5 ____ Battalion reports obstacles/breaches.
- .6 ____ Battalion constructs and secures obstacles.
 - a. Obstacles tie into existing obstacles; unplanned close bypass routes are not available.
 - b. Obstacles are protected by forces and fires sufficient to preclude quick breaching and to use engagement areas.
 - c. Lanes and gaps are marked. They can be closed within 10 minutes of request (parties with preliminary work accomplished, supplies available, and trained/briefed with communications and instructions/trigger points).
 - d. Obstacles are constructed so that the enemy uses 10 minutes or more to breach.
- .7 ____ Battalion reports obstacle construction to include-
 - a. Nonminefield obstacles.
 - b. Description of obstacle.
 - c. Grid location with start and end points.

ENCLOSURE (1)

- d. Gaps and lanes marked and reported/disseminated to crew/squad level.
 - e. Controlling unit.
 - f. Minefield construction.
 - g. Completed minefield report sent by secured means.
 - h. Minefield marked and disseminated to squad level.
- .8 ____ Battalion employs scatterable mines. (Effectively positions scatterable mines in front of or on enemy formations to disrupt his momentum.)
- .9 ____ Battalion conducts survivability actions whenever the battalion stops.
- a. For more than one hour, all vehicles are in full defilade positions and use available concealment/camouflage and,
 - b. All dismounted Marines are protected against indirect fire and,
 - c. Elements are not positioned on obvious terrain (one that would be picked by the enemy on a map reconnaissance).
 - d. For longer than eight hours, all Marines have positions with 18 inches of overhead cover and,
 - e. All vehicles have defilade alternate and supplementary positions, and covered routes (natural or prepared) and,
 - f. All firing positions for combat vehicles are hull or turret defilade.
- .10 ____ Battalion uses engineer elements/equipment.

KEY INDICATORS:

CRITICAL STANDARDS

- a. Mobility and survivability task that support the commander's intent/concept are executed.
- b. Mobility operations allow the maneuver of friendly forces and movement of friendly elements. They support and allow evacuation to accomplish the friendly concept and mission.
- c. Survivability operations protect the battalion from enemy fires to allow accomplishment of the defensive/offensive concept and mission.
- d. Countermobility operations slow or stop the enemy to allow friendly maneuver and increase the effectiveness of friendly fires.
- e. Breaching and passage of obstacles are performed within 15 minutes.
- f. The battalion losses are less than 10 percent casualties to enemy preparatory fires during defensive operations.

ENCLOSURE (1)

TASK: 10A.5.2 REACT TO INDIRECT FIRE

CONDITION(S): Indirect fire impacts on the CP.

STANDARDS: EVAL: Y; N; NE

- .1 ____ CP reacts to indirect fire while moving.
- a. Any Marine gives the alert, "Snowstorm."
 - b. Alert, "Snowstorm" is passed to all vehicles over the radio.
 - c. OIC gives a clock direction and a distance for the vehicles/Marines to move on.
 - d. All personnel are mounted, and all hatches are closed within two seconds.
 - e. Vehicles begin moving out of the impact area within one to two seconds in the direction given by the OIC. Movement must be at least 300 meters away.
 - f. SITREP is submitted within two minutes.
- .2 ____ CP reacts to indirect fire while in a static position.
- a. Any Marine gives the alarm, "Snowstorm."
 - b. Marines are under cover within 10 seconds.
 - c. All vehicles move to a rally point at a clock and distance given by OIC.
 - d. SITREP is submitted within five minutes.
 - e. Casualties are less than 10 percent.

KEY INDICATORS:

CRITICAL STANDARDS

- a. If the CP is moving to a new location, all vehicles/Marines are moved out of the impact area (300 meters) within 60 seconds of impact of the first round.
 - b. If the CP is stationary, all Marines take cover within 10 seconds of alert, "Snowstorm." Cover consists of fighting positions, ditches, armored vehicles, or prone positions. CP vehicles move out of the impact area within three minutes. No more than 10 percent casualties to CP occur.
-

10A.6 AIR DEFENSE

TASK: 10A.6.1 PERFORM AIR DEFENSE OPERATIONS

CONDITION(S): The battalion performs tactical operations. The enemy employs rotary-wing and fixed-wing assets against the battalion.

STANDARDS: EVAL: Y; N; NE

- .1 ____ Battalion/company commanders, leaders, and staff develop plans to include active and passive air defense measures commensurate with the threat.
- a. All air avenues of approach are identified and disseminated.
 - b. Passive measures are planned.

ENCLOSURE (1)

- c. Battalion commander plans air defense weapon employment (centralized/decentralized) and positioning. AO recommends how to provide coverage for priority battalion assets (combination of critical/vulnerable).
- .2 ____ Battalion staff and leaders disseminate enemy air approaches, air defense status, and weapons control status.
- .3 ____ Battalion employs passive measures commensurate with mission and threat to include-
 - a. Use of covered routes and camouflage when moving; concealment and track erasure when stopped.
 - b. Dispersion.
 - c. Use of air guards.
- .4 ____ Air defense weapons cover the battalion elements.
- .5 ____ Battalion reacts to RED air defense warning.
- .6 ____ Battalion reacts to enemy air attacks.
 - a. Warning is disseminated within one minute of enemy aircraft beginning engagement or observed entry into battalion sector.
 - b. Weapons control status is not violated.
 - c. Attacking enemy aircraft are engaged by 75 percent of battalion weapons and all air defense weapons within range.
 - d. Weapons engagements do not exceed abilities such as engagement beyond range.
 - e. Battalion takes evasive action as soon as aircraft begin attacking (freezes if not under attack).
 - f. Ratio of friendly vehicles to enemy aircraft losses do not exceed 3:1.
- .7 ____ Battalion controls air defense engagements.

KEY INDICATORS:

CRITICAL STANDARDS

- a. The battalion can accomplish all missions under enemy air threat and attack.
- b. The ratio of friendly vehicle to enemy aircraft losses (fixed-wing aircraft and attack helicopter) does not exceed 3:1.

TASK: 101.6.2 DEFEND AGAINST AN AIR ATTACK

CONDITION(S): Warning of aircraft in the area has been received. Unknown/hostile aircraft have been detected by unit personnel. Unit is tactically deployed.

STANDARDS: EVAL: Y; N; NE

- .1 ____ CP takes active air defense measures against hostile aircraft.
 - a. CP searches assigned sectors for aircraft. Unit air guards detect the aircraft within their sectors and immediately alert the unit.
 - b. CP gives air attack alarm.

ENCLOSURE (1)

- c. CP occupies defensive positions.
 - d. CP identifies and reports presence of aircraft in the area to higher headquarters.
 - e. CP elements engage nonattacking aircraft only as directed.
 - f. Unit engages attacking aircraft with all available weapons without order.
 - g. CP reports attack to higher headquarters/DASC.
 - h. CP evaluates situation and moves unit position as directed by headquarters.
- .2 _____ CP takes active air defense measures against hostile aircraft (not attacking a moving unit).
- a. CP gives air attack alarm as specified in SOP.
 - b. CP disperses Marine/vehicles to covered, concealed positions; increases dispersion; all personnel prepare to engage aircraft as directed.
 - c. CP engages nonattacking aircraft only as directed.
 - d. CP visually identifies threat aircraft.
 - e. CP reports any aircraft action to higher headquarters.
 - f. CP commander orders the unit to engage.
 - g. Unit engages the aircraft with all available small arms (rifles and machine guns).
 - h. Unit reloads weapons following engagement of aircraft.
 - i. CP reports any aircraft action to higher headquarters.
- .3 _____ CP takes active air defense measures against hostile aircraft attacking stationary unit.
- a. CP visually identifies attacking aircraft.
 - b. CP gives air attack alarm.
 - c. All available personnel immediately engage attacking aircraft (IAW engagement procedures).
 - d. CP reloads weapons following engagement of aircraft.
 - e. Personnel assigned OPs continue to scan their assigned sectors for additional aircraft.
 - f. CP reports any aircraft action to higher headquarters.
 - g. CP evaluates situation and moves unit position as directed by higher headquarters.
- .4 _____ CP takes active air defense measures during convoy movement.
- a. CP alerts vehicle commanders of impending attack.
 - b. CP disperses vehicles alternately to shoulders of the road (off road, if possible); turn to covered and concealed positions.
 - c. CP maintains vehicle intervals/dispersion and uses evasive driving techniques.
 - d. Personnel dismount and take up firing positions.
 - e. Personnel prepare to fire on orders of senior individual present or automatically return fire (IAW engagement procedures) if aircraft is attacking.
 - f. CP engages the aircraft with all available small arms.
 - g. CP reloads weapons following the attack.

- h. CP reports the attack, and submits PIR to higher headquarters within five minutes of attack.

KEY INDICATORS:

CRITICAL STANDARDS

- a. CP maintains active defense until aircraft are destroyed or fly out of effective range.
- b. CP has less than 5 percent casualties to air attack.

10A.7 COMBAT SERVICE SUPPORT

TASK: 10A.7.1 PERFORM COMBAT SERVICE SUPPORT OPERATIONS

CONDITION(S): The battalion has a CSSE for coordination. The CSSE provides pickup/evacuation points, and resupply, medical, and maintenance support. Repair parts and other supplies are available.

STANDARDS: EVAL: Y; N; NE

- .1 ____ Leaders and staff provide the battalion commander with a CSS estimate and update him on the combat status.
 - a. Provide accurate combat status to the commander and staff, which includes system status, critical systems, and personnel.
 - b. Provide all CSS limitations (internal and external) that impact on mission execution to the commander within 30 minutes of receipt of higher headquarters OPORD/warning order and upon change.
 - c. Continually update/inform battalion commander of critical CSS status shortfalls/problems that affect the ability of the battalion to conduct combat operations.
- .2 ____ Battalion commander and staff plan and coordinate CSS.
- .3 ____ Battalion performs supply operations from the field trains (LOGPACs) and combat trains.
 - a. When possible, basic loads are maintained at levels of 90 percent.
 - b. Basic loads of water, Class III items (bulk and package POL), Class V items (individual and crew-served), and Class VIII items are replenished to at least 50 percent.
 - c. Requisitions for Class IX items for 95 percent of shortages are submitted daily.
 - d. High-priority requisitions for Class IX items are submitted within eight hours to expedite repair parts flow and correct any PLL zero-balances lines.
 - e. Mission (command) supplies are delivered IAW commander's directions (distribution of barrier material to unit directed to emplace obstacle).
- .4 ____ Battalion maintenance performs periodic services.
 - a. All operators perform all PMCS IAW appropriate TMs.
 - b. All nonready/limited ability systems are identified and reported.
 - c. Maintenance platoon schedules and performs periodic services IAW TMs.
- .5 ____ Battalion maintenance performs unit maintenance collecting point (UMCP) activities.

ENCLOSURE (1)

- a. UMCPs are planned and adjacent to medical collection points.
- b. UMCP is located forward and coordinates location and movement with the combat trains.
- c. UMCP site is accessible, and directions to the different areas within site are marked.
- d. UMCP site has "dirty" maintenance area for contaminated vehicles.
- e. Maintenance assets are task organized and positioned to provide coverage for all subordinate elements.
- f. Time guidelines for recovery from company trains areas and UMCP are established to provide for forward repair and to prevent enemy interference with repair and recovery elements.
- g. Contact/recovery teams are dispatched to repair and recover forward damaged vehicles beyond company maintenance capabilities within 30 minutes of notification.
- h. Repairs are conducted IAW TMs and commander's maintenance priorities.
- i. All vehicles that cannot be repaired at units within established guidelines (time, type of damage, and so on) are evacuated to the UMCP.
- j. All vehicles that cannot be repaired at UMCP within established guidelines are evacuated to the maintenance collection point or field trains/BSA.
- k. UMCP maintains communications with the combat trains.

.6 _____ Battalion recovers, repairs, and returns nonmission-capable equipment.

- a. Nonmission-capable equipment is diagnosed and appropriate action initiated within one hour.
- b. Recover/repair operations of nonmission-capable equipment are conducted as quickly as possible.
- c. Repaired vehicles/equipment are moved forward on the next LOGPAC if repaired in BSA.
- d. Repaired vehicles/systems are picked up by companies/platoons within one hour if repaired in UMCP. Crews stay with vehicles.
- e. Repaired/replacement vehicles come forward prepared to fight (combat loaded trained crews).

.7 _____ Battalion performs preventive medical activities.

- a. All measures are taken to prevent disease/illness such as slit trenches and insect control.
- b. Potable water is available and used.
- c. Socks are changed daily, and foot powder is used.
- d. Preventive medicine tablets are taken (malaria tablets).
- e. Personal hygiene is conducted daily.
- f. Food sources are inspected for sanitation to include personal hygiene of preparers.
- g. Food is properly distributed and maintained to prevent spoilage/contamination.
- h. Heat and cold-weather injury preventive measures are enforced.
- i. Field sanitation (litter/garbage, human waste) is disposed of properly.

.8 _____ Battalion cares for, evacuates, and reports all casualties.

ENCLOSURE (1)

- a. All wounded personnel are properly treated by combat life savers/corpsman/Marines within five minutes.
 - b. Slightly wounded personnel are returned to duty after receiving treatment.
 - c. All walking wounded Marines are moved to designated casualty pickup point and arrive at battalion aid station within two hours.
 - d. All litter casualties are moved to designated (protected) casualty pickup point and arrive at battalion aid station within one hour.
 - e. Chemically/radiologically contaminated wounded are evacuated IAW medical evacuation procedures. "Dirty" treatment area is planned.
- .9 _____ Battalion aid station coordinates medical activities.
- a. Mass casualty situations are war gamed and planned.
 - b. Battalion surgeon provides status and planning considerations to the battalion commander and staff.
 - c. Lateral medical coordination is conducted.
 - d. Casualty collection points are planned.
 - e. Medical evacuation assets are task organized to ensure coverage of all attached and supporting elements.
- .10 _____ Battalion performs LOGPAC operations.
- a. Company or platoon representative picks up LOGPAC within 10 minutes of arrival at the logistics pickup point.
 - b. Routine CSS coordination is performed between the companies or platoon representative and S1/S4 representative.
 - c. LOGPAC has available resupply for all battalion attached, OPCON, and DS elements.
- .11 _____ Battalion protects supplies from NBC contamination.
- a. Covers are used to protect supplies stored outdoors.
 - b. Ammunition is covered or kept in its containers as long as possible.
 - c. Proper storage procedures, dispersal of supplies, and maximum use of natural and man-made shelters are used.
- .12 _____ Battalion evacuates EPWs and captured documents/equipment.
- a. EPWs are processed.
 - b. EPWs are evacuated out of companies/separate platoon area within one hour after the end of the battle/engagement.
 - c. EPWs are tagged with date/time of capture, location of capture, circumstances of capture, and identification of capturing unit.
 - d. Wounded EPWs are treated, secured, and evacuated, IAW medical evacuation procedures.
 - e. EPWs arrive at higher headquarters EPW collection point within three hours of capture.
 - f. Chemically contaminated EPWs are treated and evacuated IAW medical evacuation procedures.
 - g. Captured documents and equipment are tagged and evacuated with the EPW they were captured with.
- .13 _____ Battalion performs graves registration services.

ENCLOSURE (1)

- a. Deceased is tagged with a remain's number and unit making the recovery. A tag is placed on the deceased and another tag is attached to the human remains bag.
 - b. Proper search, recovery, identification, evacuation, and burial procedures are conducted.
 - c. Bodybags are available and are used.
 - d. Personal effects accompany KIAs.
 - e. All KIAs are evacuated from company areas within four hours of battle/engagement.
 - f. KIAs are accurately identified.
 - g. Chemically contaminated KIAs are properly managed.
 - h. All KIAs reach higher headquarters collection point within 24 hours.
- .14 _____ Leaders implement stress reduction measures.
- a. Disseminate command information to include availability of religious services.
 - b. Establish rest and sleep plans.
 - c. Allocate tasks.
 - d. Assign Marines crucial tasks that are performed under stressful conditions.
 - e. Refer suspected stressed personnel for medical assistance.
- .15 _____ Command Group provides and coordinates moral, welfare and recreation support.
- a. Arranges for showers and clothing exchange.
 - b. Monitors food service and the provision of periodic hot rations.
 - c. Arranges exchange support.
 - d. Schedules religious support.
 - e. Provides daily mail pick-up and delivery.
 - f. Arranges for legal support.
 - g. Arranges for sundry packages.
- .16 _____ Leaders maintain Marines' fitness.
- a. Monitor Marines' fitness.
 - b. Conduct physical training (as the time and combat situation allow).
 - c. Implement personal hygiene and field sanitation procedures.
 - d. Brief the battalion commander on Marine fitness status.

KEY INDICATORS:

CRITICAL STANDARDS

- a. No vehicles or element runs out of Class III or Class V supplies.
- b. Within one hour after the end of a battle or engagement, replenish and cross-level all basic loads to bring to 50 percent.
- c. A level of 90 percent or rate of nonbattle damaged equipment is maintained.

ENCLOSURE (1)

- d. All nonoperational capable combat weapons systems are repaired or evacuated within one hour (nonbattle) or two hours (battle) of damage.
- e. All wounded personnel receive immediate aid within five minutes and are evacuated to treatment facilities within one hour (LITTER URGENT) or two hours (WALKING WOUNDED).
- f. All EPWs are evacuated from forward companies within one hour.
- g. The battalion commander is informed of combat status of subordinates to plan and conduct combat operations.
- h. All assigned, attached, and DS elements receive CSS.

TASK: 10A.7.2 OPERATE COMBAT TRAINS CP

CONDITION(S): The battalion performs tactical operations. Situations occur that require resupply, maintenance, replacement, evacuation, and weapons systems replacement activities.

STANDARDS: EVAL: Y; N; NE

- .1 ____ Combat trains plans CSS operations.
 - a. S4/S1 develops (paragraph 4 of the OPORD) and continually updates a plan that supports the battalion plan by providing CSS to accomplish the operation.
 - b. Composition of the combat trains is tailored for the tactical situation.
 - c. Probable CSS needs are based on supply and evacuation requirements.
- .2 ____ S4 positions the combat trains-
 - a. Where there is room for dispersement, cover, and concealment from air and ground observation.
 - b. On ground that supports vehicle traffic.
 - c. Near a helicopter landing site.
 - d. Near routes that lead to LRPs or company positions.
 - e. Where movement is not restricted.
 - f. Where the combat trains can communicate with subordinate elements, units CP, and field trains.
 - g. To ensure continuous support forward.
 - h. On terrain that is defensible.
 - i. Near medical and maintenance collection points.
- .3 ____ Battalion staff locates MSR-
 - a. On a cleared route that supports heavy vehicle traffic.
 - b. Within battalion boundaries, protected by the locality of friendly units.
 - c. Where checkpoints are designated.
 - d. Clear of obstacles and mines.
- .4 ____ Combat trains controls train elements.

ENCLOSURE (1)

- a. Positioned for and set up security with sectors of fire, weapons positioned, local security, and fire plans.
 - b. Positioned and moved to allow rapid and immediate resupply, maintenance support, evacuation, and recovery.
 - c. All elements are kept abreast of the tactical situation.
 - d. All combat trains elements coordinate their resupply requirements with the combat trains.
 - e. Movement of combat trains ensure continuous support.
- .5 _____ Combat trains staff collects combat status from forward companies, separate platoons, and field trains; collates and provides information to the commander and staff; and updates.
- a. Information is accurate and complete.
 - b. Status is received within 30 minutes of receipt of higher headquarters warning order.
 - c. Information pertains to organic, attached, and supporting units.
 - d. Battalion commander is updated on critical CSS status problems (those affecting the ability of the battalion to conduct combat operations).
 - e. Battalion CSS operators have knowledge of CSS status to conduct operations.
 - f. The following information is maintained by the company and is current to within one hour.
 - 1) Unit strength.
 - 2) Combat status of combat critical systems. Number on hand/number nonmission capable/number repairable within six hours/location of nonmission capable systems.
 - g. Staff maintains status and knows location of internal CSS assets. The quantity and reason for nonmission-capable equipment are provided to within 95 percent on the following:
 - 1) Supply trucks/trailers.
 - 2) Fuel trucks/trailers.
 - 3) Medical evacuation vehicle.
 - 4) Maintenance recovery vehicle.
 - 5) Corpsmen.
 - 6) Mechanics.
 - 7) Drivers.
 - 8) Cooks.
 - 9) Communications repair.
 - 10) Armor.
 - 11) Water trailers.
- .6 _____ Combat trains maintains communications by-
- a. Performing NCS actions for the battalion administrative/logistics net.
 - b. Keeping abreast of the tactical situation by monitoring the battalion command and control net.

ENCLOSURE (1)

- c. Operating as a station on the higher headquarters administrative/logistics net.
 - d. Maintaining communication with the field trains.
- .7 ____ S1 section in combat trains execute personnel functions.
- a. Prepare the personnel daily summary with 100 percent accuracy and on time.
 - b. Prepare the personnel requirements report with 100 percent accuracy and on time.
 - c. Inform companies of incoming replacements.
 - d. Provide limited training consistent with the tactical situation and duty assignment.
 - e. Coordinate transportation for the replacements to the receiving unit.
 - f. S1 ensures each company, separate platoons, and DS element receives chaplain services.
 - g. Chaplain support is provided at the battalion aid station during heavy casualty periods.
- .8 ____ Staff and aid station coordinate medical evacuation.
- a. Keep battalion aid station informed of battalion elements' movements and actions.
 - b. Alert battalion aid station of possible heavy casualties.
 - c. Coordinate additional transportation assets for mass casualty situations with higher headquarters S4 within 15 minutes.
 - d. Coordinate air medical evacuation.
- .9 ____ Staff coordinates maintenance requests.
- .10 ____ Staff coordinates pickup of repaired/replacement vehicles with UMCP and unit.
- a. Informs maintenance.
 - b. Sets priorities during overloaded periods.
 - c. Informs units of vehicles to be returned to them and coordinate pickup.
- .11 ____ Combat trains can become battalion main CP.
- a. Stays abreast of tactical situation and maintains a current tactical situation map that has current location of friendly units in battalion sector, current locations of reported enemy in battalion sector, and fire support/obstacle graphics.
 - b. Communicates with the higher headquarters CP, and the DS artillery battalion (verified by communication checks).
- .12 ____ Combat trains controls movement/positioning.
- a. Battalion combat trains informs all elements of combat trains of Future moves.
 - b. Routes and positions are reconnoitered to provide good cover, concealment, and trafficability.
 - c. All elements of combat trains maintain communication during movement.
 - d. All elements are configured in a march order prepared by S4/S1.
 - e. All elements move in time to provide continuous, responsive support of the tactical situation.
 - f. Security is maintained during movement and positioning.
- .13 ____ Staff coordinates resupply, both routine and emergency.

ENCLOSURE (1)

- a. Basic loads-are maintained at a level of 90 percent.
- b. Critical resupply items are on hand/uploaded within combat trains.
- c. LOGPACs doing forward to resupply units monitor administrative/logistics net and report checkpoints to combat trains.
- d. All battalion units know locations of release points, pickup points, and combat trains, and they are current within 15 minutes of change.
- e. Correct quantities and types of items are delivered.
- f. Resupply for attached, OPCON, and DS units are coordinated/provided.
- g. Attached CSS is controlled by combat trains to ensure coordinated CSS to attached units is accomplished.
- h. Staff requests additional transportation from higher headquarters S4 in an emergency.
- i. Combat trains coordinates directly to higher headquarters S4 for emergency supply needs.
- j. LOGPAC delivery times are synchronized to support maneuver plans.
- k. Priorities for resupply, evacuation, and maintenance are established.

.14 _____ Combat trains submits requests for resupply/support.

- a. CP personnel monitor battalion command net. They listen for supply requirements and initiate action. They call unit personnel and clarify needs during emergencies.
- b. Initial immediate action on all supply/support requests are sent to field trains.

.15 _____ CP staff coordinates CSS with field trains.

- a. CP collects supply, personnel, and maintenance information from forward units. It compiles the information and sends it to the field trains.
- b. Supply, personnel, and maintenance coordination are conducted at an LRP. Representatives from the S4, PAC, and maintenance sections link up with the unit first sergeant/supply sergeant and coordinate.
- c. All supply/support requests are sent to the field trains upon receipt. They are on the next scheduled LOGPAC.
- d. Delivery schedules and locations support the tactical plans.

KEY INDICATORS:

CRITICAL STANDARDS

- a. Combat trains supervise and coordinate CSS for the battalion.
- b. Combat trains are not destroyed.
- c. Combat trains control movement, positioning, and security of combat trains elements to ensure continuous CSS.
- d. Combat trains ensures all requested supplies are received by units IAW commander's guidance.

ENCLOSURE (1)

TASK: 10A.7.3 OPERATE FIELD TRAINS

CONDITION(S): The battalion performs tactical operations. It conducts CSS operations using echeloned trains.

STANDARDS: EVAL: Y; N; NE

- .1 ____ S4 plans field trains operations that address the following:
 - a. H&S company commander assists the S4 in developing a plan that supports the battalion plan in accomplishing the operation.
 - b. Composition of the field trains is tailored for the tactical situation.
- .2 ____ H&S company commander positions the field trains -
 - a. Out of artillery range.
 - b. With or forward of the higher headquarters trains.
 - c. In a covered and concealed position.
 - d. Near suitable road nets and landing zones to facilitate communications and movement.
 - e. To provide security of the field trains.
- .3 ____ Field trains coordinates with higher headquarters.
 - a. Ensures higher headquarters G4/S4 is aware of special CSS needs of the battalion due to tactical mission requirements.
 - b. Coordinates location of field trains in BSA area.
 - c. Coordinates for security of field trains.
 - d. Ensures EPW pickup.
- .4 ____ Field trains coordinates with forward support battalion.
 - a. Schedules supply pickup and delivery.
 - b. Coordinates maintenance requirements and reports status of vehicle.
 - c. Coordinates mail pickup and delivery.
 - d. Coordinates any special/critical supply items needed for special/critical missions.
- .5 ____ Field trains coordinates with attached/supported units.
 - a. Determines unique supply/support requirements of each unit.
 - b. Gains control of any supply/maintenance assets brought with units to aid in resupply of attached/supporting units.
 - c. Ensures mail delivery to units.
 - d. Assists in any UCMJ action being passed to parent field trains/PAC.
 - e. Ensures the combat trains is kept informed of all actions above.
- .6 ____ H&S company commander coordinates and assembles LOGPACs.
 - a. LOGPACs contain all required resupply items (Class I through X) and replacements, and repaired equipment needed to replenish basic loads or to sustain combat operations. If enough transportation is unavailable, priorities are set with required resupply.

ENCLOSURE (1)

- b. Representatives from PAC, supply, and maintenance go forward to coordinate with the company's tank leader/company gunnery sergeant.
 - c. Convoy commander/LOGPAC commander knows route and reporting requirements.
 - d. LOGPACs in a convoy depart the field trains on time to meet LRP time.
- .7 ____ H&S company commander supervises and coordinates action of unit supply sergeant, PAC, and elements of the maintenance platoon, support platoon, S4 section, and other battalion personnel operating in the field trains.
- .8 ____ Field trains controls traffic forward to combat trains.
- a. All LOGPACs move on schedule and in convoys to provide security.
 - b. Individual vehicles are not allowed to travel forward alone.
 - c. Communications with convoys are maintained with checkpoints being reported (administrative/logistics net).
- .9 ____ Field trains maintains communication.
- a. Operates as a station on battalion administrative/logistics net.
 - b. Communicates with combat trains.
 - c. Communicates with BSA CP by wire or messenger.
- .10 ____ Field trains processes incoming personnel.
- a. Briefs incoming personnel and ensures they have field gear, weapons, and NBC equipment.
 - b. Links up combat-ready vehicles (calibrated tanks, and so on) with replacement crews, when possible, and sends them forward with LOG/PAC.

KEY INDICATORS:

CRITICAL STANDARDS

- a. Field trains coordinates CSS requirements with higher headquarters and FSB.
- b. LOGPACs are assembled with all required resupply items and other support, and dispatched forward as directed by the S4.
- c. Field trains is not destroyed, and it defends against enemy attacks. CP has less than 5 percent from enemy attacks.

TASK: 10A.7.4 OPERATE PERSONNEL ADMINISTRATION CENTER

CONDITION(S): The battalion conducts tactical operations requiring personnel administration support. Casualties are occurring and replacements and requests for personnel actions are arriving.

STANDARDS: EVAL: Y; N; NE

- .1 ____ S1 section collects personnel and strength information from subordinate units.
- a. Logs SITREP and other personnel information to 95 percent accuracy.
 - b. Collects other personnel information from the CP and battalion aid station.
 - c. Verifies strength data.

ENCLOSURE (1)

- d. Corrects all erroneous and incomplete data.
- .2 ____ PAC prepares personnel status reports.
- a. Casualty reporting is 100 percent accurate within two hours of end of operation.
 - b. Replacement operations are conducted to 100 percent of commander guidance.
 - c. Consolidates and forwards personnel reports to higher headquarters.
- .3 ____ S1 section processes personnel information.
- a. Prioritizes all personnel actions.
 - b. Prepares appropriate personnel forms, and reports.
 - c. Reviews all actions for accuracy.
 - d. Corrects all incomplete data.
 - e. Prepares other reports and correspondence.
 - f. Suspends actions when dispatched.
 - g. Maintains publications and blank forms.
- .4 ____ S1 section process replacements.
- a. Conducts unit welcome/orientation briefing.
 - b. Reviews a copy of Marines orders.
 - c. Collects and forwards all medical and dental records to the battalion aid station.
 - d. Inspects critical clothing and equipment for shortages.
 - e. Coordinates the issue of needed items.
 - f. Adds all names to battle roster.
 - g. Arranges for transportation to subordinate units.
- .5 ____ S1/PAC supervisor forwards casualty data.
- a. Reconciles casualty log with strength accounting data.
 - b. Corrects any deficiencies.
- .6 ____ S1/PAC supervisor disseminates personnel and strength information.
- a. Provides data to higher headquarters.
 - b. Briefs chain of command.

TASK: 10A.7.5 TREAT AND EVACUATE CASUALTIES

CONDITION(S): The CP has been engaged with direct or indirect fire, and less than 10 percent of the CP becomes casualties.

STANDARDS: EVAL: Y; N; NE

- .1 ____ CP personnel provide first aid to stabilize casualties.
- a. All first-aid providers treat injuries in order of severity.
 - b. Life-threatening injuries are treated first.

ENCLOSURE (1)

- c. All casualties are given first aid within five minutes.
- .2 ____ Corpsman are summoned to provide additional treatment.
- .3 ____ CP arranges casualty evacuation to the aid station or clearing station.
 - a. All casualties are evacuated to a collection point/aid station within one hour (litter urgent) or two hours (walking wounded) by CP vehicles/personnel if medical evacuation is not available.
 - b. CP provides an LZ and LZ markers if evacuation is by helicopter.

KEY INDICATORS:

CRITICAL STANDARDS

- a. The CP locates its casualties. Marines in the CP stabilize with buddy aid within five minutes.
 - b. The CP provides or coordinates transportation for all casualties to the nearest medical facility.
-

10A.8 NBC

TASK: 10A.8.1 REACT TO CHEMICAL ATTACK

CONDITION(S): The battalion is subjected to a chemical attack without warning.

STANDARDS: EVAL: Y; N; NE

- .1 ____ The battalion reacts to a chemical attack.
 - a. The battalion performs appropriate first aid on chemical casualties:
 - 1) Nerve: Give nerve antidote injection. Artificial respiration may be necessary.
 - 2) Blister: None.
 - 3) Blood: Inhale amyl nitrite. Artificial respiration may be necessary.
 - b. Leaders supervise the unit's response to the chemical attack and determine the status of the casualties.
 - c. The battalion forwards NBC 1 report to higher headquarters IAW unit SOP.
- .2 ____ The unit detects chemical agent.
 - a. Marines attach chemical-agent paper to overgarments and to supplies.
 - b. The chemical-agent detector kit is used when the battalion is under chemical attack, when a chemical attack is likely, or when the presence of a chemical agent is suspected.
 - c. Designated personnel perform periodic monitoring using the chemical-agent detector kits.
 - d. The unit performs continuous monitoring using chemical alarms and sends the results to higher headquarters.
 - e. Leaders ensure at least two Marines (one primary and one alternate) are assigned to and can use each chemical agent detector kit and chemical alarm.
 - f. Positive tests using chemical-agent paper are verified using the chemical detector kit.

- .3 ____ The unit minimizes additional contamination.
- a. Leaders order crossing of a known contaminated area only when the area cannot be bypassed. When possible, lanes are cleared through contaminated areas.
 - b. When possible, Marines avoid handling contaminated materiel.
 - c. Vital sustaining items, such as water, spare clothing, protective mask filters, and food, are carried inside vehicles.
 - d. The battalion monitors communications to stay informed on the contamination threat in the unit's area.
- .4 ____ The unit un.masks.
- a. Before unmasking, the area is checked using the chemical-agent detector kit, when possible.
 - b. Unmasking is performed only when the chemical agent is identified as nonpersistent and decontamination is no longer needed.
 - c. Only the commander or senior leader present announces, "All clear."
 - d. The leader announces, "All clear," only after all unmasking procedures have been completed.
 - e. No Marine un.masks until he hears "All clear" from his commander or the senior leader present.
- .5 ____ Marines perform basic skills decontamination.
- a. Marines use towelettes to wipe down hood, mask, weapons, gloves, and helmets.
 - b. Marines use sticks or other objects to remove globs of liquid chemical contamination on overgarments.
 - c. The battalion completes basic skill decontamination within 15 minutes.
- .6 ____ The battalion performs partial decontamination. Partial decontamination allows the unit to perform the assigned mission without additional chemical casualties.
- a. Contaminated clothing and equipment are partly decontaminated as soon as possible.
 - b. Essential items are decontaminated first--driver's area, gunner's sight, individual weapons.
- .7 ____ The battalion decontaminates individual equipment.
- a. Any gross contamination is removed using sticks, rags, or other objects, then those sticks, rags, and objects are buried.
 - b. Boots are decontaminated with the personal decontamination kit, washed with soapy water, and rinsed.
 - c. Metal equipment is decontaminated using DS2, soapy water, or the personal decontamination kit.
 - d. Individual weapons are decontaminated with the personal decontamination kit, disassembled, washed in soapy water, rinsed, dried, oiled, reassembled, and test fired.
 - e. Load-bearing equipment is decontaminated.
 - 1) Light contamination: Decontaminated using personal decontamination kit.
 - 2) Heavy contamination: Decontaminated at a personnel decontamination station or buried there and replaced with new 782 gear.
- .8 ____ The unit decontaminates unit equipment.

- a. As soon as possible, the unit decontaminates unit equipment to continue the mission and avoid further casualties.
- b. Vehicles and crew-served weapons are decontaminated.
 - 1) Areas essential to the vehicle or weapon operation are decontaminated using the M11 portable decontaminating apparatus and, when necessary, field-expedient measures such as mud or rags.
 - 2) Light contamination is removed by airing.
 - 3) Heavier decontamination is removed using DS2, soapy water, solvents, or slurry.
 - 4) Contaminated wood surfaces and tires are decontaminated with STB slurry.
 - 5) No DS2 is used on gunner sights.
- c. Ammunition is decontaminated.
 - 1) Ammunition is decontaminated with soapy water, wiped with organic solvent, thoroughly dried, and aerated.
 - 2) Ammunition corroded from contact with chemical agents is disposed of, mainly if the brass cannot be cleaned.
 - 3) STB is not used on ammunition contaminated with mustard-type blister agents.
- d. Optical instruments are decontaminated using the M258-series kit or by blotting with rags and then wiping with an organic solvent. Optical instruments are air-dried (lens cleaning solvent is used only on lenses) OR if available, hot air is used.
- e. Communications equipment is decontaminated using hot air, when available, or by airing or weathering.
- f. Food and water is decontaminated.
 - 1) Packaged rations are decontaminated with soap and water or DS2.
 - 2) Food is decontaminated only by Marines who know decontamination procedures.
 - 3) Decontaminated food is inspected and approved by medical personnel before being eaten.
 - 4) Water in closed containers is consumed after outside of containers is decontaminated using STB slurry or DS2.
 - 5) Contaminated water is not consumed and Marines do not try to purify it.
- g. Designated personnel verify decontamination is complete using chemical detector kits. Any remaining contamination is decontaminated again.

.9 ____ The battalion continues the mission and maintains security.

- a. The unit maintains security during decontamination.
- b. M60 machine guns are manned during decontamination based on the tactical situation.
- c. Leaders rotate personnel between decontaminating, continuing the mission, and maintaining security, as needed.
- d. The battalion commander adjusts the MOPP level to the NBC threat or IAW the order of higher headquarters.
- e. The battalion coordinates for the resupply of chemical defensive equipment.
- f. The battalion resumes the mission.

KEY INDICATORS:

CRITICAL STANDARDS

The unit quickly reestablishes security; casualties are treated; chemical detection monitoring commences; unmasking procedures are conducted; partial decontamination is conducted; and, the battalion resumes its mission.

TASK: 10A.8.2 REACT TO A NUCLEAR ATTACK

CONDITION(S): The battalion is subjected to a nuclear attack without warning.

STANDARDS: EVAL: Y; N; NE

- .1 ____ The battalion reacts to an unwarned nuclear attack.
 - a. Leaders supervise battalion's response to nuclear attack and determine status of casualties.
 - b. The battalion sends and NBC 1 report to higher headquarters IAW unit SOP.
- .2 ____ The battalion takes action following nuclear detonation.
 - a. Marines check for injuries and give first aid.
 - b. Buddy teams monitor each other for initial symptoms of radiation poisoning.
 - c. Leaders report unit personnel and equipment status to immediate superiors.
 - d. Unit places radios back into operation and monitors nets.
 - e. Vehicles and other equipment are returned to full combat-ready status.
 - f. Designated Marines begin continuous monitoring with radiacmeters.
 - g. Leaders reestablish security.
 - h. Leaders check dosimetry device readings.
 - i. When there is no longer a radiation hazard, only the senior leader present announces, "All clear."
- .3 ____ The unit detects radiation.
 - a. Marines shout, "Fallout!" upon detecting radiation or hearing the command FALLOUT.
 - b. All Marines are aware of the radiation hazard.
 - c. Leaders collect readings on radiacmeters and dosimeters from Marines and report readings to higher headquarters.
 - d. All Marines with dosimeters and leaders know acceptable radiation levels.
 - e. Leaders ensure at least two Marines (one primary and one alternate) are assigned to and can use each radiacmeter and radiac set.
 - f. The battalion performs periodic or continuous monitoring IAW unit SOP.
 - g. The battalion begins continuous monitoring with radiacmeters when a nuclear burst is reported or radiation of 1 cGy per hour is detected by periodic monitoring.

ENCLOSURE (1)

- h. Stationary units stop continuous monitoring with radiacmeters when the dose rate falls below 1 cGy per hour.
- i. Moving units perform continuous monitoring until movement is completed.
- j. Radiation levels are checked whenever the unit moves into a new area and before Marines dismount.

.4 ____ The battalion takes actions to reduce exposure to further radiation.

- a. Floors of vehicles are covered with a layer of sandbags.
- b. At least 24 hours of uncontaminated food and water for each Marine is kept on hand.
- c. The battalion will bypass the area unless the mission requires the contaminated area to be traversed.
- d. When crossing contaminated areas, leaders--
 - 1) Pick the route that allows the fastest travel consistent with the mission.
 - 2) Ensure doors, windows, and hatches on vehicles are closed, consistent with security requirements.
 - 3) Go as fast as possible through the area while maintaining safety and security.
 - 4) Employ column formation when possible (to avoid throwing dust onto trailing vehicles) and increase the interval between vehicles.
- e. Marines drink and eat only from approved sources.
- f. Marines wear a handkerchief or scarf over their noses and mouths to avoid inhaling contaminated dust.
- g. Leaders monitor radiation levels for each squad and try to reduce exposure to higher radiation dose levels.
- h. Marines wear rubber overshoes (not chemical overboots) outside of vehicles in contaminated areas. Overshoes are stored outside vehicles before Marines enter vehicles.
- i. Marines should avoid handling contaminated materiel.
- j. The battalion monitors communications nets to stay informed on the contamination threat in the unit's area.

.5 ____ The unit decontaminates.

- a. Unit performs partial decontamination by washing and brushing off fallout.
- b. Essential items are decontaminated first-- driver's area, gunner's sight, individual weapon.
- c. Leaders supervise partial decontamination, ensuring unit can perform its assigned mission without exposure to excessive radiation.

.6 ____ The unit continues the mission.

ENCLOSURE (1)

KEY INDICATORS:

CRITICAL STANDARDS

Within 2 seconds, dismounted personnel drop to prone positions and close their eyes. Within 2 seconds, mounted personnel drop down inside the vehicle and brace themselves for the blast wave. Within 30 seconds after the blast and shock waves, security is established. Within 5 minutes, radiological monitoring is started.

TASK: 10A.8.3 PREPARE FOR A CHEMICAL ATTACK

CONDITION(S): The battalion has received a warning to prepare for a chemical attack.

STANDARDS: EVAL: Y; N; NE

- .1 ____ Battalion issues warning order.
 - a. Orders subordinate units to put on chemical protective overgarments, overboots, mask with hood, and gloves (MOPP 4).
 - b. Battalion members use the buddy-team method to don and check proper wear of protective suit.
 - c. Individual Marines cover their equipment and weapons using ponchos, foliage, plastic, or any material that is expendable or readily decontaminated.
 - d. Platoon members attach M9 paper to overgarments and to supplies.
- .2 ____ Vehicle crews prepare their vehicles.
 - a. Store, in the vehicle, water, rations, and equipment not being used.
 - b. The gunner places a poncho or tarpaulin over the gunner's sight (dependent on the tactical situation).
- .3 ____ The battalion NBC officer ensures that designated personnel conduct monitoring.
 - a. Periodically with a chemical-agent detector kit.
 - b. Continuously monitoring with a chemical alarm.
 - c. Results are sent to the battalion commander.
- .4 ____ Company commanders inspect to ensure that their platoons are prepared for a chemical attack and report the results to the battalion commander.
 - a. Decontamination equipment is available and serviceable.
 - b. Battalion personnel and equipment are prepared for a chemical attack.
 - c. The battalion is capable of operating in MOPP 4 for six hours.

KEY INDICATORS:

CRITICAL STANDARDS

Within eight minutes, MOPP gear is donned using the buddy-team method. The battalion ensures that the platoon's chemical-agent detector kits and chemical alarms are put into operation. Weapons and equipment are prepared, as required.

TASK: 10A.8.4 PREPARE FOR A NUCLEAR ATTACK

CONDITION(S): The battalion receives a STRIKWARN message or warning and prepares for a nuclear attack.

STANDARDS: EVAL: Y; N; NE

- .1 ____ The battalion prepares for a nuclear attack.
 - a. The battalion commander instructs all personnel to prepare for a nuclear blast.
 - b. Vehicles are positioned so that the front of the vehicles are toward the expected direction of the blast.
- .2 ____ Drivers and gunners prepare vehicles.
 - a. Remove and stow daysight and nightsights in vehicle.
 - b. Make sure the vehicles are dug in or in trenches or in cuts in roadways.
- .3 ____ Battalion Marines prepare vehicles and equipment.
 - a. Place one or more layers of sandbags on top of each wheeled vehicle and around AT(Tow) launchers (offers additional protection from gamma radiation).
 - b. Wet down the sandbags (enhances neutron radiation shielding and protects sandbags from thermal damage).
 - c. Disconnect and stow all radios and antennas. (In the offense, one radio is left on.)
 - d. Stow all water and rations inside the vehicles.
 - e. Tie down all loose equipment inside the vehicles. (This prevents equipment from being thrown about by the blast.)
- .4 ____ Battalion Marines prepare themselves.
 - a. Position themselves as low as possible within the fighting positions.
 - b. Wear their helmets with chin strap secured.
 - c. Brace themselves for the blast.
- .5 ____ Company commanders inspect to ensure that their companies are prepared for nuclear attack and report results to the battalion commander.
 - a. Vehicles are ready.
 - b. Equipment is secured.
 - c. Personnel are prepared.

KEY INDICATORS:

CRITICAL STANDARDS

Within the time specified in the STRIKWARN message, battalion vehicles and equipment are prepared and personnel assume covered positions.

ENCLOSURE (1)

10A.9 AMPHIBIOUS OPERATIONS

TASK: 10A.9.1 CONDUCT AMPHIBIOUS STAFF PLANNING

CONDITION(S): The battalion is part of the Ground Combat Element (GCE) of a Marine Air Ground Task Force (MAGTF) that has been alerted to a political situation that requires an amphibious operation. The Amphibious Task Force (ATF) is currently in transit. The initiating directive has been received. A Carrier Battle Group (CVBG) is also en route. Threat forces have direct and indirect fire weapons, rotary and fixed-wing aircraft, and Electronic Warfare (EW) capabilities. It is anticipated that operations ashore will be of limited duration. The initial planning conference has been completed; and the Commander Landing Force (CLF) has issued the MAGTF planning directive. The battalion staff and subordinate leaders have begun their initial planning.

STANDARDS: EVAL: Y; N; NE

- .1 ____ Battalion commander/staff analyzes the mission in the warning order to identify specified and implied tasks.
- .2 ____ Battalion staff develops preliminary estimates based on the warning order and general planning guidance provided by the MAGTF and GCE commanders.
- .3 ____ Formulates basic requirements, essential elements of information (EEI's) and other intelligence requirements (OIR's). Identifies intelligence gaps to request response/collection from higher, lower and adjacent headquarters.
- .4 ____ Battalion commander issues planning guidance to his staff and subordinate element leaders.
- .5 ____ Battalion conducts concurrent planning with the GCE staff to select recommended landing area, Landing Force (LF) objectives, and beachhead for CLF/Commander Amphibious Task Force (CATF) approval.
- .6 ____ Develops, in coordination with the planning guidance and approved ATF/LF objectives, additional battalion objectives, if desired.
- .7 ____ Briefs estimate of supportability to the GCE commander.
- .8 ____ Battalion commander announces his overall concept of operations in the form of an outline plan that includes the tentative task organization and provides guidance for the concurrent development of the scheme of maneuver and fire support plan. This plan is also issued to subordinate and supporting unit commanders to guide them in planning preparation.
- .9 ____ Battalion staff conducts a thorough and continuous analysis of the terrain, weather, hydrographic conditions, and enemy situation throughout the planning process.
- .10 ____ Battalion staff conducts concurrent and parallel planning with all elements of the MAGTF during the development of the detailed scheme of maneuver, fire support plan, and landing plan.
- .11 ____ Battalion staff maintains close and continuous liaison throughout planning with all elements of the MAGTF.
- .12 ____ Battalion develops, publishes, and disseminates the operation plan, embarkation plan, landing plan, and/or alternate plans if those are not incorporated into SOP or the MAGTF plans.
- .13 ____ Battalion coordinates with the GCE, ACE and MAGTF Air Officer for the development and dissemination of the Helicopter Availability Tables, Helicopter Employment and Assault Landing Table, Helicopter Wave and Serial Assignment Table, and the Helicopter Landing Diagram as appropriate/necessary.
- .14 ____ Battalion establishes procedures which provide for the continual review of reinforcement requirements and updating of the troop list.
- .15 ____ Battalion arranges for staff reconnaissance of the Amphibious Objective Area(AOA) if the situation permits.
- .16 ____ Battalion uses planning aids such as maps, aerial photos, charts, and relief maps during detailed planning.

ENCLOSURE (1)

- .17 _____ Battalion receives NBC policy guidance from the GCE or MAGTF, and plans procedures for subordinate elements to include warning conditions, detection teams, decontamination teams, required MOPP conditions, and passive and active defensive measures.
- .18 _____ Battalion coordinates and consolidates en route training plans for subordinate units and forwards them to the GCE.

KEY INDICATORS:

CRITICAL STANDARDS

The battalion analyzes the mission and coordinates with appropriate GCE and MAGTF agencies to ensure coordinated initial planning and is prepared to develop the Landing Plan.

TASK: 10A.9.2 DEVELOP THE LANDING PLAN

CONDITION(S): The battalion has received the GCE/MAGTF concept of operations and has developed a plan of attack which has been approved. Sufficient landing craft are available. The landing can occur during the day, at night, or during periods of limited visibility.

STANDARDS: EVAL: Y; N; NE

- .1 _____ The battalion determines the requirements for ship-to-shore movement in coordination with a review of the Amphibious Vehicle Availability Table, Helicopter Availability Table, and the Landing Craft Availability Table.
- .2 _____ The battalion considers enemy capabilities to counter surface assaults.
- .3 _____ The battalion plans for flexibility in the landing of on-call and nonscheduled waves.
- .4 _____ Battalion assigns subordinate elements to one of five categories in order to indicate their relative priority for landing and to facilitate control of the ship-to-shore movement.
- .5 _____ Battalion ensures that the development of the landing plan is totally integrated with the initial scheme of maneuver and fire support plan; and provides for the rapid buildup of combat power during the initial phase of the assault.
- .6 _____ Battalion allocates assets for use by subordinate elements, and ensures that the proposed Landing Diagram, Assault Schedule, and Landing Sequence Table are developed concurrently and are mutually compatible; forwards these documents to GCE/MAGTF for approval/consolidation.
- .7 _____ Battalion ensures that the development of the proposed Serial Assignment Table is based on the task organization for the landing; and is forwarded to the GCE/MAGTF commander for approval.
- .8 _____ Battalion ensures that the development of the Landing Craft and Amphibious Vehicle Assignment Table is coordinated with effected units, is compatible with the previously approved landing plan documents, provides for the rapid buildup of combat power, and that the tactical integrity of the attack is maintained.
- .9 _____ Battalion coordinates with the GCE or ACE to ensure that the development of the Helicopter Employment and Assault Landing Table, and the Heliteam Wave and Serial Assignment Table is compatible with the previously approved landing plan documents.
- .10 _____ Battalion provides input for the development of the Approach Schedule.
- .11 _____ Battalion develops Debarkation Schedule (prepared jointly with the ship's commanding officer), when applicable, and ensures distribution to all personnel responsible for the control of debarkation.
- .12 _____ Battalion completes the landing plan in a timely manner to allow for responsive and accurate embarkation planning if cross-decking will be required.

ENCLOSURE (1)

- .13 _____ Battalion develops alternate plans to cover foul weather and/or changes in enemy capabilities.
- .14 _____ Battalion assigns personnel as needed to the Tactical-Logistics Group (TACLOG) to advise MAGTF and Navy control personnel on the location of troops, equipment, supplies; landing requirements, and of adjustments to the landing sequence.
- .15 _____ Battalion coordinates planning with the CGE/MAGTF command element for pre D-Day transfers of landing force units and equipment.
- .16 _____ Battalions plan allows for flexibility based on communications capabilities/limitations and the potential loss of communications equipment.

KEY INDICATORS:

CRITICAL STANDARDS

Landing Plan. The landing plan must provide for the delivery of the assaulting elements, in the desired formations, with the necessary equipment, over the selected beaches, at the time set by the commander. Flexibility is preserved through the selective scheduling and subsequent cross decking (if required), of on-call waves so that the reserve and other critical combat support elements may be brought ashore, as required, by either surface or air lift.

Assault Schedule/Assignment Tables. The assault schedule and supporting landing craft and amphibious vehicle assignment tables/helicopter wave and serial assignment tables should provide for the rapid buildup of combat power ashore. Additionally; forward air controller's, and naval surface fire support (NSFS) spot teams must be included with the assault elements to direct fires against appropriate targets.

TASK: 10A.9.3 CONDUCT ASSAULT LANDING

CONDITION(S): CATF has issued the order to land the landing force. Assault amphibious vehicles, landing craft, and helicopter operational readiness rates are equal to the numbers anticipated in the final version of the MAGTF landing plan developed after the final rehearsal. Close, continuous, and detailed coordination among the CATF, MAGTF, ACE, GCE, and CSSE staff members, as well as unit commanders has occurred throughout the entire planning process.

STANDARDS: EVAL: Y; N; NE

- .1 _____ Battalion receives and disseminates to subordinate units, final intelligence update which emphasizes critical aspects of the landing such as beach obstacles, known and suspected location of defensive positions in the vicinity of landing beaches, and antiaircraft weapons positions.
- .2 _____ Battalion requests final confirmation of H-hour.
- .3 _____ Battalion ensures that all boat teams are assembled, staged, and prepared for debarkation.
- .4 _____ Battalion ensures that debarkation of initial assault elements is accomplished on schedule.
- .5 _____ Boat team commanders demonstrate control over the loading of all troops and equipment.
- .6 _____ Battalion monitors TACLOG and Primary Control Officer concerning landing force requirements and naval control agencies to ensure that the movement ashore is being conducted according to the schedule contained in the landing plan and keeps the GCE commander informed on the status of unloading and the progress of the ship-to-shore movement.
- .7 _____ Battalion adheres to electromagnetic emission control (EMCON) condition set by the MAGTF, removing restrictions on radio transmissions only on order.
- .8 _____ Battalion monitors the delivery of prearranged air and NSFS.
- .9 _____ Boat team commanders orient subordinates to visible terrain features on or near the beach (when practicable) and alert all team members when the wave is within 100 meters of the beach.

ENCLOSURE (1)

- .10 ____ Unit commanders quickly regain control of their units, and maintain momentum of the attack by avoiding unnecessary delays.
- .11 ____ Battalion demonstrates effective employment of air and NSFS to suppress and/or neutralize targets of opportunity.
- .12 ____ Battalion provides accurate counterbattery fire data to the Supporting Arms Coordination Center (SACC).
- .13 ____ Battalion demonstrates the ability to effectively reduce fortifications.
- .14 ____ Battalion uses terrain effectively for cover and concealment.
- .15 ____ Battalion demonstrates the ability to quickly gain control of forward elements as they land.
- .16 ____ Battalion demonstrates effective indirect fire control/coordination via the SACC, using FO's; and adjusts the delivery times of preplanned fires to coincide with actual progress on the ground.
- .17 ____ Battalion effectively utilizes Close-In Fire Support (CIFS) to support the assault.
- .18 ____ Battalion controls the progress of the landing and expansion of the force beachhead by submitting timely requests, via the TACLOG, for the landing of on-call and nonscheduled waves as required by the developing situation, and through allocation of support in response to requests from subordinate units.
- .19 ____ Battalion provides situation reports to the GCE commander as the assault progresses.
- .20 ____ Battalion maintains momentum of the attack through issuance of fragmentary orders (FRAGO's), the integration of coordinated fire and maneuver, and aggressive small unit leadership.
- .21 ____ Battalion Fire Support Coordination Center (FSCC) adjusts communications guard as direct support artillery is emplaced.
- .22 ____ Battalion coordinates the linkup of forces, demonstrating positive communications, and fire support coordination.
- .23 ____ Battalion maintains reliable HF, UHF, and VHF communications.
- .24 ____ Battalion establishes covered communications on those covered nets identified in the CEOI.
- .25 ____ Battalion coordinates logistics support through the TACLOG.
- .26 ____ Battalion maintains dispersion of personnel, equipment, and supplies on the beach.
- .27 ____ Battalion demonstrates knowledgeable treatment and timely MEDEVAC of casualties.

KEY INDICATORS:

CRITICAL STANDARDS

TACLOG. Everything landing ashore after the scheduled waves must be at the direction of the commander. The unit representatives in the TACLOG must ensure that serials are not sent ashore unless needed, and those serials requested are sent when called. Priorities established in the assault schedule and landing sequence table are based on the scheme of maneuver. The sequence of delivery ashore must be per the commander's desire to get his Marines, supporting arms, and his combat material ashore in the order in which he intends to use them. If equipment is boated out of priority sequence, it will deny boat space to needed items and may arrive on the beach and cause unnecessary confusion and clutter.

Command and Control. The initial stages of the assault will generally result in some degree of decentralized control. Actions by subordinate leaders must be aggressive and bold. Tactical control measures are used to allow unit commanders to regain control as quickly as possible. Reliance on mission-type orders will further facilitate control and seizure of initial objectives.

ENCLOSURE (1)

Indirect Fire. While many of the fires contained in the plan for supporting fires may be scheduled based on planned rates of movement, adjustments must be made to reflect the actual rate of movement on the ground. The battalion commander and his FSC must identify alterations needed to planned fires and make them known to the SACC.

Logistics Support. As material is delivered ashore, means must be established to make emergency resupply immediately available to front line units. This capability must be sustained throughout the buildup of combat power.

TASK: 10A.9.4 CONDUCT PLANNING FOR AMPHIBIOUS WITHDRAWAL

CONDITION(S): The CATF has issued an initiating directive to conduct an amphibious withdrawal. The withdrawal is expected to be conducted under strong enemy pressure. The operation is planned to be a tactical retrograde from positions now occupied.

STANDARDS: EVAL: Y; N; NE

- .1 ____ Battalion emphasizes the security of forces as well as the accountability of personnel and equipment.
- .2 ____ The battalion develops preliminary estimates based on the initiating directive and general planning guidance provided by the GCE.
- .3 ____ Battalion commander issues planning guidance to his staff and subordinate unit commanders.
- .4 ____ Battalion commander determines EEI's and staff members submit OIR's, that will satisfy intelligence gaps; emphasis is placed on enemy information which will facilitate target acquisition.
- .5 ____ Battalion develops, in coordination with the GCE/MAGTF staffs, the organization for combat with special emphasis on the strength and composition of the covering force.
- .6 ____ Battalion develops, in coordination with the GCE/MAGTF staffs, a movement plan that avoids traffic congestion and unnecessary delay in the embarkation area. The plan provides for expeditious transportation to points of reembarkation.
- .7 ____ Battalion develops, in coordination with the GCE/MAGTF staffs, time phasing requirements for the rearward movement and reembarkation of the landing force in conjunction with the time phasing requirements for delay operations conducted by the security force.
- .8 ____ Battalion develops, in coordination with the GCE/MAGTF staffs, a logistics/resupply plan that provides for as great a degree of self-sufficiency as possible by the security force, consistent with the mission to be executed.
- .9 ____ Battalion develops detailed plans for the establishment of demolitions along enemy avenues of approach and those routes that lead to beaches designated for withdrawal of the landing force. Particular attention is given to the destruction of bridges and tunnels.
- .10 ____ Battalion's plan assigns priorities of routes and zones of withdrawal, and troop, cargo, and vehicle assembly areas.
- .11 ____ Battalion plans for the evacuation of casualties at aid and collection points before the withdrawal begins.
- .12 ____ Battalion coordinates with the GCE/MAGTF staffs, the plan for the evacuation of enemy prisoners of war, and civilian detainees.
- .13 ____ Battalion plans for the use of communications wire systems to compensate for possible enemy electronic counter-measures. As a minimum, planned wire systems include trunk lines along routes of movement and on all delaying and covering positions.
- .14 ____ Battalion conducts fire support planning which places emphasis on maximum use of external fire support agencies; e. g., air and NSFS.

ENCLOSURE (1)

- .15 ____ Battalion establishes plans to minimize all daylight activities which might disclose the intention to withdraw. Necessary daylight motor movements to the rear are made by infiltration.
- .16 ____ Battalion determines enemy vulnerability to deception, and analyzes available intelligence/combat information to determine if the enemy threat warrants the use of deception.
- .17 ____ Battalion develops alternate plans to meet anticipated changes that might effect the principle plan.
- .18 ____ Battalion promulgates guidance on personnel and equipment accountability and instructions for escape and evasion by any personnel inadvertently left behind during the withdrawal.
- .19 ____ Battalion issues withdrawal order in time to allow subordinate units to plan, prepare, and issue orders.
- .20 ____ The operations plan is made known to the lowest subordinate leaders, consistent with security.
- .21 ____ Battalion conducts liaison with adjacent elements to ensure mutual support, flank security, and unity of effort is achieved.

KEY INDICATORS:

CRITICAL STANDARDS

Security Force Planning. Although the planning processes are normally abridged during an amphibious withdrawal, the requirements for security force operations will necessitate a greater degree of specificity in the order to address that portion of the operation. This applies also to the requirements for the establishment of control measures and a detailed movement schedule.

Demolition Plans. Should include fixed responsibility for the destruction of bridges and tunnels and provisions for placing and firing necessary demolitions. Adequate guards should be planned to prevent premature firing of the charges or seizure by enemy infiltrators. Obstacles created by demolition should be covered by observation at a minimum.

Evacuation of EPW's. The 1949 Geneva Prisoner of War Convention requires that EPW's be evacuated out of the combat zone. Release is expressly authorized only in connection with parole or repatriation.

Withdrawal Operation Order. Must provide the date and time of withdrawal, defense of the embarkation area, fire support plan for covering the withdrawal, and designation of embarkation beaches. Instructions for embarkation, organization for combat, phasing of the withdrawal, assignment and priorities of routes and zones of withdrawal also must be included. Also, designation of the security force, deception plan, reserve employment, evacuation of casualties, supplies, and equipment, traffic control, ship-to-shore movement, obstacle barrier plan and escape and evasion plan.

TASK: 10A.9.5 CONDUCT AMPHIBIOUS WITHDRAWAL

CONDITION(S): The battalion has been ordered to conduct an amphibious withdrawal. The withdrawal is anticipated to be conducted under strong enemy pressure. The operation orders have been issued. The enemy has direct and indirect fire, rotary and fixed-wing air, and EW capabilities. The withdrawal can occur at night, during daylight, or during periods of limited visibility.

STANDARDS: EVAL: Y; N; NE

- .1 ____ The battalion establishes defense of embarkation area surrounding key terrain features.
- .2 ____ The battalion uses smoke to deceive the enemy as to the disposition of forces and to conceal movement during the withdrawal.
- .3 ____ Prior to reembarkation the battalion positions it's reserve to prevent envelopment of the withdrawing forces.

ENCLOSURE (1)

- .4 _____ Tanks and antitank weapons are used to engage enemy armor at long ranges, to counterattack enemy elements attempting to penetrate or bypass the security force, and to provide fires to assist supported units during disengagement.
- .5 _____ Artillery elements are used to cover loading areas by long-range harassing and interdiction fire, support the security force, and provide fires to support the security force during disengagement.
- .6 _____ The commander of the security force issues specific guidance regarding the destruction of supplies and equipment that cannot be evacuated and fixes responsibility for their destruction.
- .7 _____ The security force takes the enemy under fire as soon as he is within effective range of available weapons.
- .8 _____ The battalion defends each delay position until enemy action threatens decisive engagement.
- .9 _____ Withdrawal to the next delay position is initiated per prearranged plan or on order of the CGE commander.
- .10 _____ The security force executes an orderly withdrawal along designated routes to the next delay position; and continues to provide maximum delay between positions using maneuver, available terrain, long-range fires, tactical air, mines, and demolitions.
- .11 _____ Opportunities to inflict heavy casualties/damage to the enemy by offensive action are exploited consistent with the overall mission of the security force and the movement schedule.
- .12 _____ The battalion considers limited objective attacks to gain additional time or to extricate units that have become decisively engaged.
- .13 _____ The number of vehicles brought forward is held to a minimum consistent with the requirement; and all vehicles not needed in forward areas are moved to the rear on prescribed routes per the movement plan.
- .14 _____ Withdrawing units execute orderly movement along prescribed routes at the times designated in the movement schedule, and occupy assembly areas for the briefest amount of time possible.
- .15 _____ Battalion destroys commercial communication facilities before they are abandoned.
- .16 _____ Battalion movement to embarkation beaches is controlled through the use of predesignated assembly areas, routes of withdrawal, initial points, and checkpoints.
- .17 _____ Close coordination is maintained between the security force and the forces being withdrawn in order to permit the smooth flow of units into the reembarkation area with minimum interference to the security force and its supporting arms.
- .18 _____ Battalion conducts the withdrawal during periods of reduced visibility whenever possible to facilitate deception.
- .19 _____ Casualties are evacuated by the most expeditious means possible, direct to ships at sea.
- .20 _____ Priority foe withdrawal within the security force is given to heavy units such as tanks and artillery.
- .21 _____ Withdrawal of the security force is conducted during periods of darkness, whenever possible, and is executed in the most expeditious manner available.
- .22 _____ Personnel left behind employ evasion, escape, and survival techniques to avoid capture, and proceed to a predesignated rally point for subsequent recovery.

ENCLOSURE (1)

KEY INDICATORS:

CRITICAL STANDARDS

Organization and Command Relationships. Upon establishment of the initial defense of the embarkation area, control functions which were transferred ashore are phased back to control facilities afloat under the CATF. CLF retains command of the landing force during the amphibious withdrawal. The commander of the security force is not assigned embarkation responsibilities. An important function of the embarkation organization is to ensure that adequate support is provided to the security force during embarkation. This may involve destroying excess equipment which cannot be embarked while at the same time unloading critical supplies from ships to support forces on the beach.

Security Force. The composition of the security force is determined based largely on the terrain in the area of operations and the nature of the threat. It should normally be strong in tanks, artillery, mortars, and engineer support. Additionally, the security force is provided a tactical air control party (TACP) and an NSFS spot team.

Delay Positions. Ideal delay positions incorporate key terrain with good observation and fields of fire, are located along existing obstacles and terrain features cross the lines of hostile advance; have a good road network and/or provide good cross-country trafficability; are far enough apart to cause the enemy to regroup his forces prior to continuing the attack, and are far enough inland to prevent enemy fire into the embarkation area.

ENCLOSURE (1)

X-A-90

SECTION 10B
TANK COMPANY

ENCLOSURE (1)

<u>TABLE OF CONTENTS</u>		<u>PAGE</u>
<u>MPS 10B.1 - COMMAND AND CONTROL</u>		
TASK 10B.1.1	. . . . . PREPARE FOR COMBAT	X-B-1
<u>MPS 10B.2 - INTELLIGENCE</u>		
TASK 10B.2.1	. . . . . MAINTAIN OPERATION SECURITY (OPSEC)	X-B-3
<u>MPS 10B.3 - MANEUVER</u>		
TASK 10B.3.1	. . . . . OCCUPY ASSEMBLY AREA	X-B-5
TASK 10B.3.2	. . . . . PERFORM TACTICAL MOVEMENT	X-B-7
TASK 10B.3.3	. . . . . PERFORM TACTICAL ROAD MARCH	X-B-9
TASK 10B.3.4	. . . . . PERFORM RECONNAISSANCE	X-B-11
TASK 10B.3.5	. . . . . PERFORM PASSAGE OF LINES	X-B-13
TASK 10B.3.6	. . . . . ASSIST PASSAGE OF LINES	X-B-16
TASK 10B.3.7	. . . . . PERFORM ASSAULT POSITION ACTIVITIES	X-B-17
TASK 10B.3.8	. . . . . PERFORM ACTIONS ON CONTACT	X-B-18
TASK 10B.3.9	. . . . . SUPPORT BY FIRE	X-B-20
TASK 10B.3.10	. . . . . PERFORM ATTACK POSITION ACTIVITIES	X-B-21
TASK 10B.3.11	. . . . . ASSAULT AN ENEMY POSITION (DISMOUNTED)	X-B-22
TASK 10B.3.12	. . . . . ASSAULT AN ENEMY POSITION (MOUNTED)	X-B-24
TASK 10B.3.13	. . . . . PERFORM AN ATTACK BY FIRE	X-B-26
TASK 10B.3.14	. . . . . PERFORM AMBUSH	X-B-27
TASK 10B.3.15	. . . . . PERFORM HASTY RIVER/GAP CROSSING	X-B-30
TASK 10B.3.16	. . . . . PERFORM SCREEN OPERATIONS	X-B-32
TASK 10B.3.17	. . . . . PERFORM GUARD OPERATION	X-B-34
TASK 10B.3.18	. . . . . DEFEND	X-B-35
TASK 10B.3.19	. . . . . LINKUP	X-B-38
TASK 10B.3.20	. . . . . BREAKOUT FROM ENCIRCLEMENT	X-B-41
TASK 10B.3.21	. . . . . INFILTRATE/EXFILTRATE	X-B-42
TASK 10B.3.22	. . . . . DELAY	X-B-44
TASK 10B.3.23	. . . . . WITHDRAW NOT UNDER ENEMY PRESSURE	X-B-45
TASK 10B.3.24	. . . . . WITHDRAW UNDER ENEMY PRESSURE	X-B-46
TASK 10B.3.25	. . . . . PERFORM RELIEF IN PLACE	X-B-48
TASK 10B.3.26	. . . . . PERFORM RESERVE OPERATIONS	X-B-49

MPS 10B.A - FIRE SUPPORT

TASK 10B.4.1	. . . . .	X-B-50
	EMPLOY INDIRECT FIRE IN THE OFFENSE	
TASK 10B.4.2	. . . . .	X-B-52
	EMPLOY INDIRECT FIRE IN THE DEFENSE	

MPS 10B.5 - MOBILITY AND COUNTERMOBILITY

TASK 10B.5.1	. . . . .	X-B-53
	BREACH AN OBSTACLE	
TASK 10B.5.2	. . . . .	X-B-55
	EMPLACE AN OBSTACLE	

MPS 10B.6 - AIR DEFENSE

TASK 10B.6.1	. . . . .	X-B-56
	DEFEND AGAINST AIR ATTACK (ACTIVE)	
TASK 10B.6.2	. . . . .	X-B-58
	DEFEND AGAINST AIR ATTACK (PASSIVE)	

MPS 10B. 7 - COMBAT SERVICE SUPPORT

TASK 10B.7.1	. . . . .	X-B-59
	PERFORM LOGISTICAL PLANNING	
TASK 10B.7.2	. . . . .	X-B-60
	PERFORM TACTICAL RESUPPLY	
TASK 10B.7.3	. . . . .	X-B-61
	PERFORM SERVICE-STATION RESUPPLY	
TASK 10B.7.A	. . . . .	X-B-63
	CONSOLIDATE ON THE OBJECTIVE	
TASK 10B.7.5	. . . . .	X-B-6A
	REORGANIZE ON THE OBJECTIVE	
TASK 10B.7.6	. . . . .	X-B-66
	INTEGRATE REPLACEMENTS	
TASK 10B.7.7	. . . . .	X-B-66
	PROVIDE MEDICAL EVACUATION AND TREATMENT OF CASUALTIES	
TASK 10B.7.8	. . . . .	X-B-68
	PROVIDE MAINTENANCE SUPPORT	
TASK 10B.7.9	. . . . .	X-B-69
	PROCESS ENEMY PRISONERS OF WAR (EPWs)	

MPS 10B.8 - NBC

TASK 10B.8.1	. . . . .	X-B-70
	REACT TO CHEMICAL ATTACK	
TASK 10B.8.2	. . . . .	X-B-73
	REACT TO A NUCLEAR ATTACK	
TASK 10B.8.3	. . . . .	X-B-75
	PREPARE FOR A CHEMICAL ATTACK	
TASK 10B.8.A	. . . . .	X-B-75
	PREPARE FOR A NUCLEAR ATTACK	

MPS 10B.9 - AMPHIBIOUS OPERATIONS

TASK 10B.9.1	. . . . .	X-B-76
	CONDUCT AMPHIBIOUS PLANNING	
TASK 10B.9.2	. . . . .	X-B-78
	ASSIST DEVELOPMENT OF THE LANDING PLAN	
TASK 10B.9.3	. . . . .	X-B-78
	CONDUCT ASSAULT LANDING	

ENCLOSURE (1)

10B.1 COMMAND AND CONTROL

TASK: 10B.1.1 PREPARE FOR COMBAT

CONDITION(S): The company is occupying the assembly area. The company commander has received the warning order. The company is ordered to conduct combat operations. The company has all weapons and equipment. Enemy air and ground threats are likely. Resupply and maintenance support are available.

STANDARDS: EVAL: Y; I; NE

- .1 ____ The company commander reviews the operation order.
 - a. Clarifies any questions.
 - b. Coordinates with staff personnel/commander, as needed.
- .2 ____ The commander performs a mission analysis.
 - a. Identifies specified, implied, and mission-essential tasks, any constraints or limitations, and the purpose of the mission.
 - b. Produces a restated mission statement that contains the unit's mission-essential tasks and the purpose for which they were assigned.
 - c. Develops a tentative time schedule utilizing the backward-planning process.
- .3 ____ The company commander issues a warning order.
 - a. The situation is explained.
 - b. The mission statement is clear and concise.
 - c. Provides the time of the execution of the operation.
 - d. Provides specific special instructions to the unit.
 - e. Provides time and place for the operation order.
 - f. Synchronize watches, "time hack".
- .4 ____ The company commander makes a tentative plan.
- .5 ____ The company initiates movement as required for quartering party, selected units, or entire team.
- .6 ____ The company conducts reconnaissance.
 - a. Determines the location, strength, disposition, activity of the enemy, and accurate information on the terrain (KOCOA).
 - b. The company commander may use leader's reconnaissance, patrols, or elements in contact to obtain the required information.
- .7 ____ The company commander completes the plan based on METT-TSL considerations, intelligence from the reconnaissance, and other available sources.
 - a. Develops clear expression of the battalion commander's intent, as well as his own intent, that addresses the unit's mission-essential tasks and the purpose of those tasks.
 - b. Develops a scheme of maneuver that exploits enemy weakness and friendly strengths.
 - c. Organizes the unit to accomplish assigned tasks (task organization), including all attachments and supporting elements.
 - d. Requests additional support, as necessary.
 - e. Identifies specific tasks for all subunits.

ENCLOSURE (1)

- f. Develops control measures.
 - g. Plans fire support, organic and supporting.
 - h. Considers deception actions in the planning of the operation.
 - i. Plans the use of maneuver, obstacles, and obscurants to achieve flank shots.
- .8 _____ The company commander issues his order to his subordinate leaders.
- a. Provides ample subordinate leader planning and preparation time by using only one-third of the available time.
 - b. Provides information on who, what, when, where, and why.
 - c. Clarifies any questions.
- .9 _____ The company prepares for the mission.
- a. The company commander requests supporting assets that will facilitate his mission.
 - b. The company commander or his authorized representatives coordinate necessary plans and actions with higher, adjacent, and supporting units.
 - c. A key company leader receives attachments.
 - d. The attachments are checked for mission readiness, linked up with an individual who will be their point of contact within the company, and briefed on the upcoming mission.
 - e. Company actions are rehearsed as the situation permits.
 - f. Company leaders supervise, inspect, rehearse, and finalize coordination.
 - g. Platoons prepare for combat.
- .10 _____ The company leaders plan sustainment of combat operations.
- a. The commander, executive officer (XO), and tank leader analyze the mission with input from platoon commanders and section chiefs and determine anticipated ammunition, supply, and service requirements.
 - b. The XO or tank leader coordinate with the company supply NCO and battalion S4 to select logistic release point (LRP) locations and logistics package (LOGPAC) composition to support the tactical plan.
 - c. The XO or tank leader request, receive, and distribute special equipment and supplies that the commander and other leaders have determined are needed and update the company supply status.
 - d. The commander establishes and executes a rest plan for all company members (particularly key personnel and leaders) based on unit standard operation procedures (SOP), mission analysis, and current orders.

KEY INDICATORS:

CRITICAL STANDARDS

The company is prepared to move into combat by the time specified in the operation order. Each individual can state his responsibilities within the scheme of maneuver.

10B.2 INTELLIGENCE

TASK: 10B.2.1 MAINTAIN OPERATION SECURITY (OPSEC)

CONDITION(S): The company is ordered to execute a mission as part of the battalion. The enemy has the ability to detect the company visually and electronically.

STANDARDS: EVAL: Y; N; NE

- .1 ____ Leaders continually check or perform security measures.
 - a. Control information on a need-to-know basis.
 - b. Prohibit fraternization with civilians (as applicable).
 - c. Conduct alert, deployment preparation, and loading to minimize detection.
 - d. Make sure maps do not contain friendly order of battle.
 - e. Make inspections and give briefings to make sure personnel do not carry details of military activities in personal materials such as letters, diaries, notes, drawings, sketches, or photographs.
 - f. Sanitizes all planning areas and positions before departure.
- .2 ____ The company practices camouflage discipline.
 - a. Uses natural concealment and camouflage materials to prevent ground and air observation.
 - b. The company moves on covered and concealed routes to the maximum extent possible.
 - c. Covers all reflective surfaces with nonreflective material such as cloth, mud, or camouflage stick.
 - d. Camouflages positions in accordance with (IAW) the SOP.
- .3 ____ The company employs communications security, and the company net control station (NCS) enforces communications security.
 - a. Communication electronic operation instructions (CEOI) procedures (challenge, authentication and decode, call signs, and frequencies). Monitored traffic does not reveal information to the enemy.
 - b. Approved radio procedures.
 - c. Short transmissions, lowest power settings possible, directional antennas, avoid transmission patterns, maintain radio silence, as directed.
 - d. Procedures for operations during jamming.
 - e. Messenger and wire (to maximum extent).
 - f. Visual signals IAW unit SOP.
- .4 ____ The company employs local security measures.
 - a. Establishes observation posts.
 - b. Conducts counterreconnaissance patrols as required.
 - c. Conducts security patrols.
 - d. Performs stand-to procedures.
 - e. Emplaces mines and obstacles.
 - f. Ties maximize use of messenger and wire.

ENCLOSURE (1)

- g. Utilizes challenge and password.
 - h. Limits access into the unit area.
 - i. Safeguards weapons, ammunition, sensitive items, classified documents, and picks up litter.
 - j. Utilizes night-observation devices.
 - k. Constructs a hotloop.
 - l. Conducts preparations under limited visibility to extent possible.
 - m. Places ambushes on likely enemy reconnaissance/infiltration routes.
- .5 _____ OPSEC is maintained during movement.
- a. The company provides all-around security.
 - b. Employs 360-degree and overhead observation.
 - c. Establishes and maintains fields of fire.
 - d. Company is not surprised by enemy ground forces.
 - e. Company maintains dispersion laterally and in depth.
 - f. Utilizes available cover and concealment.
- .6 _____ OPSEC/local security is maintained during temporary halts.
- a. Dismounted personnel spread out and use available cover and concealment.
 - b. Mounted elements execute a coil or herringbone, as needed.
 - c. OPs and primary weapon systems orient on likely avenues of approach.
 - d. Company main body is not surprised by enemy ground forces.
- .7 _____ The commander and all leaders enforce noise and light discipline.
- a. Individual and vehicle load plans are followed reducing the possibility of excess noise.
 - b. Lights used for night work will be kept to a minimum.
 - c. Movement at night will be kept to a minimum when at a halt, in the assembly area, attack position, or a defensive position.

KEY INDICATORS:

CRITICAL STANDARDS

The company prevents the enemy from learning its strength, dispositions, and intentions or specified EEFI pertaining to any friendly unit. The main body is not surprised by the enemy ground forces.

ENCLOSURE (1)

10B.3 MANEUVER

TASK: 10B.3.1 OCCUPY ASSEMBLY AREA

CONDITION(S): The company has been given the order to move and occupy an assembly area in preparation for combat operations. The enemy has the capability to attack with indirect fire, CAS, and small platoon-size elements.

STANDARDS: EVAL: Y; N; NE

- .1 ____ The company constitutes a quartering party.
 - a. A quartering party from each platoon links up with the company quartering party NCOIC.
 - b. The quartering party may require a combat vehicle and crew from each platoon.
- .2 ____ Personnel draw essential equipment (tools, NBC equipment, marking devices, etc.)
- .3 ____ The quartering party prepares for movement. Performs the following preparatory actions:
 - a. NCOIC issues warning order.
 - b. The quartering party performs PBS.
 - c. Loads vehicles by load plan.
 - d. Briefs all personnel in their duties to prepare for displacement.
 - e. Takes all required OPSEC actions.
- .4 ____ The NCOIC briefs the quartering party on the following:
 - a. The location of the company assembly area and the platoon sector within the assembly area.
 - b. Specific instructions for the assembly area.
 - c. Time of main body's start point (SP) and release point (RP).
 - d. Order of march for the company.
 - e. NBC conditions and MOPP level.
- .5 ____ The company quartering party moves along the route of march.
 - a. Maintain security.
 - b. Reconnoiters the route of march from SP to RP.
 - c. Marks obstacles and bypass routes.
 - d. Reports critical information to the company quartering party NCOIC.
 - e. Quartering party NCOIC selects and posts guides at the RP in time to meet the main body.
- .6 ____ The quartering party moves into the company assembly area and prepares the area for the company's arrival.
 - a. Selects and marks routes from the RP to the new location.
 - b. Marks entrances, exits, and internal routes.
 - c. Marks vehicle positions where maximum cover, concealment, and dispersion provides 360-degree security.
 - d. Marks or removes mines and obstacles.

ENCLOSURE (1)

- e. Organizes local security.
- .7 ____ Company occupies assembly area.
- a. Moves in without halting.
 - b. Within 15 minutes: PMCS has begun, security is in place, all vehicles are covered and concealed, and camouflage nets are up (if to be in position over 12 hours).
 - c. Maintains security.
 - d. There are no observable track marks entering the assembly area.
- .8 ____ Company performs assembly area actions.
- a. Makes maximum use of available time to prepare for upcoming operations. (Basic loads brought up to 100 percent, equipment repaired or recovered, training conducted, plans prepared, sleep plans enforced, etc.)
 - b. Maintains security and concealment.
- .9 ____ Unit arrives at assembly area.
- a. Platoons occupy assembly area.
 - b. Briefs the company commander/XO/tank leader on the organization of the assembly area.
 - c. Company commander/XO/tank leader work priorities in preparation for tactical operations.
 - d. Hotloop is established to company command post (CP).
- .10 ____ Commander coordinates with adjacent units.
- a. Establishes responsibility for overlapping fields of fire on enemy avenues of approach between companies.
 - b. Verifies information on observation post (OP).
 - c. Coordinates security and defense.
- .11 ____ The company performs perimeter defense.
- a. Vehicles prepare primary and alternate fighting positions.
 - b. Supporting fires are planned for site defense.
 - c. As ordered, obstacles are placed on likely avenues of approach.
 - d. Local and NBC security and air guards are constantly maintained.
 - e. Identifies avenues of approach.
 - f. Identifies mission.
 - g. Develops a concept based on KOCOA.
 - h. Collects platoon fire plans.
 - i. Uses indirect fire.
 - j. Uses mines and obstacles.
 - k. Uses security measures.
 - l. Requests combat service support.
 - m. Forwards company fire plan sketch to battalion CP.

ENCLOSURE (1)

- .12 ____ On leaving the assembly area, the company:
- a. Recovers all emplaced mines and previously emplaced obstacles to protect the assembly area.
 - b. Does not leave anything of intelligence or material value.
 - c. Eliminates signs of the unit's presence in the assembly area.

KEY INDICATORS:

CRITICAL STANDARDS

The quartering party completes assembly area preparations and guides the company team main body into their respective positions NLT the time specified in the operation order. The company main body is not surprised by the enemy. The company completes preparation as specified by the commander not later than the time specified.

TASK: 10B.3.2 PERFORM TACTICAL MOVEMENT

CONDITION(S): The company is operating as part of a battalion. The unit is not in contact and the enemy situation is vague. The unit has been ordered to move in preparation for continued operations.

STANDARDS: EVAL: Y; N; NE

- .1 ____ Commander plans the move.
- a. Bases plan on battalion order.
 - b. Completes estimate of the situation.
 - c. Designates control measures.
 - d. Identifies direction of movement and distance.
 - e. Finalizes company plan.
 - f. Briefs subordinate leaders using mission-type orders that express the purpose for company movement.
- .2 ____ Company uses formations that maintain security during movement.
- a. Maintains interlocking fields of fire.
 - b. Maintains dispersion laterally and in depth.
 - c. Utilizes air guards.
 - d. Establishes all-around movement security.
 - e. Utilizes available cover and concealment.
 - f. Changes formation based on terrain.
 - g. Maintain contact with units on the company's flanks.
 - h. Main body is not surprised by enemy ground forces.
- .3 ____ Commander controls company movement.
- a. Uses planned control measures and hand-and-arm signals until contact is made.

- b. Uses radio, visual, and audio signals such as flares, whistles, and voice commands when enemy contact is made.
 - c. Positions leaders to control the unit.
 - d. Changes formations, movement techniques, and positioning of key weapon systems based on terrain and expected enemy threat.
 - e. Knows his location as a six-digit grid coordinate.
 - f. Reports the company location using the correct graphic control measures.
 - g. Reports location and status to battalion per SOP or operation order.
 - h. Monitors status and location of lead, flank, and following force elements.
- .4 _____ Company employs movement formations appropriate to the changing situation.
- a. The column formation is used when early contact is not expected.
 - b. The wedge formation is used when contact is possible, but the location and disposition of the enemy is vague.
 - c. The Vee formation is used if the enemy is known to be located to the front.
 - d. The echelon formation is used when the battalion is providing flank security for a larger force.
 - e. The line formation is used during continuous movement with maximum firepower to the front.
- .5 _____ The lead and trail company, moving as part of the battalion, uses different movement techniques in response to the changing situation.
- a. Traveling is used when speed is necessary and contact with the enemy is not likely.
 - b. Traveling overwatch is used when speed is important but contact with the enemy is possible.
 - c. Bounding overwatch is used when contact with the enemy is expected.
- .6 _____ Company takes action at halts.
- a. Sets up security.
 - b. Uses herringbone/coil formation.
 - c. Uses dispersion and cover.
 - d. Performs PMCS.
 - e. Conducts resupply/refueling, when appropriate.
- .7 _____ Company reacts to danger areas.
- a. Commander directs reconnaissance of the danger area.
 - b. Commander plans actions at the danger area.
 - c. Commander designates maneuver and overwatch elements.
 - d. Overwatch element moves into position utilizing available cover and concealment to achieve flank shots on suspected enemy positions.
 - e. Overwatch element orients weapons on suspected enemy locations.
 - f. Infantry reconnoiters and clears routes selected by the commander.

ENCLOSURE (1)

- g. Maneuver element moves through or bypasses the danger area.
- h. Maneuver element sets up to provide overwatch during movement of the remainder of the company.
- i. Remainder of company crosses or bypasses the danger area while maintaining 360-degree security.
- j. Commander reports danger area location, routes, time factors, and available threat information to battalion CP.

.8 _____ Company moves through built-up area.

- a. When reaching built-up areas, company moves into a column or staggered column formation.
- b. Tanks battlecarry HEAT in built-up area.
- c. Infantry dismounts and provides close-in security for the front, flanks, and rear of column.
- d. Infantry reconnoiters and clears rooftops, buildings, and obstacles along the route IAW commander's intent.
- e. Infantry alerts friendly armor elements of presence of enemy armor or antitank systems.
- f. Tanks provide overwatch and support for dismounted three-dimensional battlefield of urban terrain.
- g. Trailing platoons maintain visual contact with lead element and dismounted infantry.
- h. Company commander reports clearing of built-up area routes to battalion.

.9 _____ Company completes tactical movement.

- a. Company arrives at assembly area or release point.
- b. Commander reports completion of movement to battalion.

KEY INDICATORS:

CRITICAL STANDARDS

The company moves on the specified route IAW the battalion order and enemy contact does not disrupt the movement or detract from the unit's combat effectiveness. The main body is not surprised by enemy ground forces. Makes initial contact with no more than a platoon. Reports all directed and needed information (terrain, obstacles, PIR/OIR, and so forth) to the battalion. Crosses LD on time. Follows prescribed routes and guidance on movement rates and maintaining mutual support.

TASK: 10B.3.3 PERFORM TACTICAL ROAD MARCH

CONDITION(S): The company receives an operation order/warning order/fragmentary order, complete with graphics, to conduct a tactical road march as part of a battalion operation.

STANDARDS: EVAL: Y; N; NE

.1 _____ The company commander develops the march order.

- a. Identifies the route, critical points, distances between critical points, start points, release points, and control measures.

ENCLOSURE (1)

- b. Provides the organization for movement, order of march, march rate, catch-up speed, and distances to be maintained between units.
- c. Lists all vehicles by serial and bumper number.
- d. Designates a marshaling area to organize the column and conducts final briefings.
- e. Provides a statement of the enemy situation, weather, and visibility conditions.
- f. Provides security tasks to subordinate units, to include all-around security and air guard coverage for the entire company.
- g. Addresses contingencies for actions on enemy contact (ambush, indirect fire, air attack, NBC attack, or meeting engagement).
- h. Designates platoon RPs, if appropriate, and describes the destination and actions to be taken at the RP.
- i. Describes recover/trail party and resupply actions.
- j. Covers actions at halts.
- k. Describes method for marking routes/picking up guides.

.2 ____ The company prepares for the road march.

- a. Conducts PMCS.
- b. Conducts necessary resupply (water, rations, ammunition).
- c. Makes provisions for movement of casualties, supplies, and equipment that will not accompany the unit on the road march.
- d. The quartering party, consisting of security, communications, and guides from all platoons, depart to the destination.
- e. Personnel are inspected for proper equipment, load tailoring, and readiness to road march.
- f. Completes a communications check with company headquarters and reports readiness condition.
- g. Designated personnel reconnoiter the route to the start point.
- h. On order, the company moves.

.3 ____ The appropriate road march technique is employed.

- a. Uses open column for daylight marches with a distance of 50m to 100m between vehicles.
- b. Uses closed column for marches in darkness or limited visibility. The distance between vehicles is approximately 25m.

.4 ____ The company conducts the road march.

- a. Crosses the start point at the designated time.
- b. Reports crossing of start point, checkpoints, release point, IAW unit SOP.
- c. Maintains the rate of march, prescribed positions, and intervals in the unit column.
- d. All personnel maintain the interval as specified in the march order or SOP.
- e. The company maintains security throughout the movement.
- f. Reports all vehicles that cannot be repaired or recovered to battalion.

.5 ____ The company takes appropriate action at halts.

ENCLOSURE (1)

- a. Assumes herringbone formation.
- b. Assumes coil formation.
- c. The platoon. orient weapons to ensure security.
- d. Company headquarters reports all halts to the battalion CP.
- e. Unit conducts halts at regular intervals per unit SOP to conduct during-operations PMCS.
- f. Leaders check condition of all troops, coordinate with adjacent elements, and report status to the company headquarters.
- g. Breaks in the convoy and disabled vehicles are reported to convoy commander.
- h. The maintenance team, in the rear of the column, repairs or recovers disabled vehicles.

.6 ____ The commander controls the company.

- a. Uses visual, messenger, or radio signals throughout the road march.
- b. Platoon commanders report control measures as directed by the SOP or order.
- c. Control measures are modified from the march order, as needed.
- d. Reports all battalion control measures, halts, starts, and deviations from the battalion plan.

.7 ____ The company arrives at checkpoints or release points at the time specified.

- a. Meets the quartering party guide.
- b. Passes through the release point without halting.

KEY INDICATORS:

CRITICAL STANDARDS

The company conducts the road march, following a prescribed route, without deviation within the time requirements specified in the operation order/warning order/fragmentary order. Main body is not surprised by any ground force. All vehicles that become NOR are repaired, recovered, or reported to the battalion. Losses at the conclusion of the road march do not exceed 10 percent.

TASK: 10B.3.4 PERFORM RECONNAISSANCE

CONDITION(S): The company has been tasked to obtain information about the enemy and terrain in order for higher headquarters to plan or execute operations. The company is task organized with a platoon of infantry. The company is provided PIR and OIR requirements by the battalion headquarters. The information requirements are available in the sector.

STANDARDS: EVAL: Y; N; NE

.1 ____ The company commander selects the appropriate method of reconnaissance based on map reconnaissance and analysis of the mission.

- a. Area reconnaissance.
- b. Zone reconnaissance.
- c. Route reconnaissance.

ENCLOSURE (1)

- .2 ____ The commander plans the reconnaissance.
 - a. Develops area reconnaissance and security tasks.
 - b. Uses separate sectors, converging routes, or fan techniques for zone reconnaissance.
 - c. Identifies PIR and OIR requirements.
 - d. Plans use of attached intelligence assets.
- .3 ____ Leaders coordinate with the battalion staff, adjacent units, and forward units.
 - a. The reconnaissance does not conflict with the battalion operation.
 - b. The reconnaissance does not duplicate any current effort.
 - c. The reconnaissance does not hinder or conflict with adjacent or forward unit operations.
 - d. All units in the area are informed of the times and location for the departure, composition, conduct, and time of return of the reconnaissance.
- .4 ____ The company moves to the organizational rally point (ORP) (initial ORP for zone reconnaissance).
 - a. Moves through friendly units and then to the ORP.
 - b. Conducts actions at an ORP.
- .5 ____ The company reconnoiters.
- .6 ____ The company conducts surveillance.
 - a. Finds all enemy and terrain information required by the commander.
 - b. Maintain observation on named area of interest/target area of interest (NAI/TAI) as directed.
 - c. Adjusts fire on enemy if part of mission.
- .7 ____ At the completion of the reconnaissance, all information is consolidated, disseminated within the company, and reported to higher headquarters per orders or unit SOP.
 - a. All priority intelligence information is sent by secure transmission.
 - b. The company returns to friendly units.
 - c. Company is debriefed regarding intelligence information with S2.

KEY INDICATORS:

CRITICAL STANDARDS

The company obtains all PIR and OIR for the enemy and area as specified in the order. The company reconnoiters without enemy determining strength, location, and intentions of the main body. The company completes reconnaissance and reports all information by the time specified in the order. Reports within 5 minutes or as directed by the battalion commander. Observes any TAI or NAI as required. The company sustains no more than 10 percent casualties.

TASK: 10B.3.5 PERFORM PASSAGE OF LINES

CONDITION(S): The company is required to conduct a passage of lines. The battalion operation order has specified a time when the passage is to be completed.

STANDARDS: EVAL: Y; N; NE

- .1 _____ The commanders receive the battalion operation order and immediately begin planning and coordinating for the operation.
 - a. Passing force commander and stationary force commander or their authorized representatives meet and arrange for a time and location for coordinating the passage of respective companies.
 - b. The commander, or his authorized representative, coordinates a reconnaissance with the forward unit company commander or his authorized representative.
- .2 _____ The company representatives exchange pertinent information.
 - a. Identification (unit).
 - b. Size of unit.
 - c. Time(s) of departure.
 - d. Area of the unit's operation.
 - e. Information on terrain.
 - f. Known or suspected enemy positions.
 - g. Likely enemy fire sacs.
 - h. Latest enemy activity.
 - i. Detailed information on friendly positions.
 - j. Obstacle locations.
 - k. Fire plan.
 - l. Support the unit can provide (such as fire support, guides, communications, and reaction force).
 - m. CEOI information.
 - n. Locations of company assembly ares, contact and passage points, and attack positions.
- .3 _____ The two companies coordinate the passage of lines.
 - a. Exchange current enemy intelligence.
 - b. Conduct a reconnaissance as far forward as the tactical situation permits in order to view the area forward of the FLOT.
 - c. Discuss the passing unit's mission and scheme of maneuver.
 - d. Exchange communication information, signal plan, challenge and password, and procedures to be utilized by the company and guides during the passage.
 - e. Confirm recognition signals for the passage.
 - f. Identify guides and traffic control measures for the passage.
 - g. Discuss security measures for the passage.
 - h. Establish fire support responsibilities and fire plans.

- i. Confirm the process and signals for the transfer of responsibility/action of enemy contact during passage.
 - j. Exchange information regarding combat service support (items left on position).
 - k. Exchange information on passage lanes and route.
 - l. Exchange information on battle handover line.
 - m. Exchange information on attack positions/assembly areas.
 - n. Exchange information on common maneuver/graphic control measures.
 - o. Exchange information on supporting direct and indirect fires.
- .4 _____ Both commanders ensure their reconnaissance and other activities do not reveal the operation to the enemy.
- a. Stationary unit activities continued as normal throughout the passage.
 - b. Movement is rapid and continues through the passage lane.
- .5 _____ The company prepares for the passage of lines.
- a. Begins movement, which should be continuous from the assembly area.
 - b. Attack positions are designated for contingency halts.
 - c. Obstacles removed from passage lanes/routes.
 - d. Lanes/routes are marked.
 - e. The commander issues a contingency plan before moving out to make final coordination.
- .6 _____ Both company commanders brief elements on what is happening, and what is going to happen.
- a. Confirms chain of command.
 - b. Provides guidance on actions to be taken on contact.
 - c. Establishes succession of command and conducts briefbacks to ensure leaders understand the operation order.
 - d. Provides time schedule, suspenses, and any limits on actions.
- .7 _____ The passing company conducts the passage of lines.
- a. The passing company commander, or his representative, completes the final coordination with the stationary company commander or his representative at the stationary company's CP.
 - b. Company begins movement on time and utilizes the attack position only if necessary.
 - c. Both commanders are co-located at a point to observe critical areas, make timely decisions during the passage, and facilitate passage of responsibility for battle handover.
 - d. The elements link up with guides and are led from the contact points through the passage point and passage lane to the release points.
 - e. The company moves forward through the release points.
 - f. Guides identify and account for all elements passing through the passage points, contact points, and release points.
 - g. Company/platoon is counted through the release points by the XO/tank leader/platoon sergeant.

- h. The XO/tank leader/platoon sergeant tells the guide the number of elements in the company/platoon, how long to wait at the release points, and confirms the challenge and password.
 - i. Movement is continuous throughout the passage.
 - j. A security halt is executed after the company has moved beyond the friendly unit's FPF (dismounted only).
 - k. The XO/tank leader/platoon sergeant does not move forward from the release point until the commander indicates that he will not have to withdraw through the passage point.
 - l. When platoons have used separate passage points, the company reforms by linkup.
 - m. The company continues the mission.
- .8 ____ The company prepares for a rearward passage of lines.
- a. The commander of the stationary unit designates the contact point for coordination.
 - b. The stationary unit eavesdrops on the forward unit's net to stay abreast of the tactical situation.
 - c. At the prescribed time, liaison parties, from the two units meet and exchange information.
- .9 ____ Liaison teams coordinate and verify information for the passage.
- a. Exchange enemy information.
 - b. Exchange recognition signals, signs/countersigns, and other CEOI information.
 - c. Make provisions for and place guides.
 - d. Estimate time of main body arrival, number, and type of vehicles to pass.
 - e. Coordinate time or event of battle handover.
 - f. Exchange information on minefields and other obstacles.
 - g. Coordinate primary passage points, lanes, and alternates.
 - h. Identify passed forces, security force positions to support the handover.
 - i. Exchange information supporting direct and indirect fires.
- .10 ____ The company conducts a rearward passage of lines.
- a. After verification that the passage points are occupied, liaison parties make contact at each passage point.
 - b. The passing unit passes in order of company trains element, support elements, company CP, and platoons.
 - c. Additional combat power may be given to the stationary company in the form of the LAI platoon, TOW section, or tank or infantry elements.
 - d. The passing company redeploys into column formation.
 - e. The passing company displays the proper visual signal.
 - f. The passing company orients weapons toward the enemy.
 - g. The passing company moves through the passage point to the assembly area without stopping.

ENCLOSURE (1)

- h. The stationary company is notified that friendly forces are at the battle handover line and are enroute to the passage point. (The battle handover line should be far enough forward to allow the passing unit to move into column, yet close enough to permit overwatch by units along the FEBA.)
- i. The stationary unit fires only when positive enemy identification is made.
- j. Disabled vehicles are self-recovered, destroyed in place or assisted by other elements.
- k. Stationary company moves rapidly, minimizing exposure time.
- l. The company commander reports to the command post of the stationary unit and relays any tactical information concerning the commander's area of responsibility.
- m. The company commander links up with the company in the assembly area.

KEY INDICATORS:

CRITICAL STANDARDS

The company moves all personnel and equipment through the stationary unit NLT the time specified in the order. Neither the passing unit nor the stationary unit are surprised by the enemy, nor do they sustain casualties from friendly fires or obstacles. Losses do not exceed 20 percent on a forward passage or 10 percent on a rearward passage.

TASK: 10B.3.6 ASSIST PASSAGE OF LINES

CONDITION(S): The company is defending and is required to support a passage of lines. The enemy can attack with direct fire, aircraft, or company-size mounted or dismounted forces.

STANDARDS: EVAL: Y; I; NE

- .1 ____ The company commander and the passing force commander, or their authorized representatives, meet and arrange for a specific time and location for the coordination meeting. Platoon leaders and FOs of both companies should attend.
- .2 ____ The commander provides the passing force commander, or his authorized representative, with the following information.
 - a. Information on terrain.
 - b. Enemy situation.
 - c. Recognition signals or markings for the passage of lines.
 - d. Guides and traffic control measures.
 - e. Security measures for the passage.
 - f. Direct and indirect fire plan and control measures.
 - g. Battle handover line location.
 - h. Combat service support (item left on position).
 - i. Reconnaissance of area (provide guides).
- .3 ____ The stationary force clears all obstacles and mines from the attack position through the passage lanes and routes.
- .4 ____ The commanders exchange call sings, frequencies, code words, signals, and challenge and password.

ENCLOSURE (1)

- .5 ____ The commander or FO of both units co-locate at a point where they can observe critical areas, make timely decisions, and issue necessary orders.
- .6 ____ The guides link up with the passing unit at the contact point(s) and exchange recognition signals.
- .7 ____ The guide(s) notifies the company commander when all elements have cleared their lanes.
- .8 ____ Unit activities continue as normal through the passage and continue after transfer of responsibility for the zone or sector.
- .9 ____ The unit assists the friendly unit's re-entry. (Leaders inform personnel of time(s) and place of the friendly unit's re-entry.)

KEY INDICATORS:

CRITICAL STANDARDS

The company supports the passing unit in completing the passage of lines within the time specified in the operation order. The company provides security to ensure neither unit is surprised by the enemy. The unit sustains no casualties from friendly fire.

TASK: 10B.3.7 PERFORM ASSAULT POSITION ACTIVITIES

CONDITION(S): The company is operating as part of a larger force. The company will assault with dismounted infantry supported by organic tank platoons. The company is conducting an attack on an enemy position. The overwatch element is providing suppressive fire. The assault element is occupying the assault position prior to assaulting the enemy position.

STANDARDS: EVAL: Y; N; NE

- .1 ____ The company coordinates with the overwatch/base of fire commander.
 - a. Routes to the assault position.
 - b. Indirect fire targets.
 - c. Enemy location, activities, avenues of approach, and weak points.
 - d. CEOI information.
 - e. Location and type of obstacles.
- .2 ____ Company moves to the assault position.
 - a. Uses route selected by the commander.
 - b. Platoons come on line in covered and concealed positions upon reaching the assault position.
 - c. Scans the enemy position to determine enemy size, type, weakpoints, weapon systems.
 - d. Company CP sends spot report to battalion CP.
 - e. Infantry dismounts and takes up assault formation in covered and concealed positions.
- .3 ____ Overwatch element provides support.
 - a. Observes assigned area.
 - b. Covers armor avenues of approach on the assault position.

- c. Maintains security.
 - d. Aids the dismounted assault.
- .4 _____ Dismounted infantry deploys from the assault position.
- a. Dismounted infantry deploys on line or in a combat wedge formation.
 - b. M203 grenadier, M60/SAW gunner dismount and provide suppressive fire but remain near the carrier for rapid remount.
 - c. Vehicles provide supporting fires with organic weapons.
- .5 _____ On order, the dismounted infantry assault.

KEY INDICATORS:

CRITICAL STANDARDS

The company moves into the assault position on time and deploys into assault formation. Maintains maximum cover and concealment. Infantry dismounts and assaults the enemy position.

TASK: 10B.3.8 PERFORM ACTIONS ON CONTACT

CONDITION(S): The company is part of a battalion movement to contact. The company is operating as the security force (sometimes called the advance guard). The enemy can engage the company with indirect fire, air support, or company-size or smaller ground forces. (NOTE: Other company movements or a surprise engagement with the enemy can be handled much the same way.)

STANDARDS: EVAL: Y; N; NE

- .1 _____ Lead platoon locates enemy units in the company's area of operation.
- a. Lead platoon makes initial enemy contact with minimum forces in order to prevent the enemy from accurately identifying the unit.
 - b. Prevents enemy reconnaissance elements from determining the location, strength, and actions of the company main body.
 - c. Reports the location, size, composition, and activity of the enemy to the company commander.
- .2 _____ Lead platoon prevents compromising the unit position and tactical situation.
- a. Prevents enemy reconnaissance elements from determining the location, size, composition, and activity of the company's main body.
 - b. Security element is not targeted and decisively engaged by the enemy.
- .3 _____ The company conducts actions on contact.
- a. Elements engaged by the enemy return fire, use maneuver and obscurants to achieve flank shots, and report the situation to the company commander.
 - b. All platoon and company headquarters monitor report of contact.
 - c. A report of contact is sent to the battalion commander.
- .4 _____ Elements not in contact make estimates of the situation by determining essential enemy information.

ENCLOSURE (1)

- a. Location of the enemy's flanks.
 - b. Covered and concealed routes around the enemy position into his flanks and rear.
 - c. Possible locations of obstacles.
 - d. Possible locations supporting enemy elements.
 - e. Supporting enemy elements.
 - f. All information of the enemy and terrain is reported to the company commander and relayed to the battalion CP.
 - g. Company is not decisively engaged by initial contact.
- .5 _____ Company commander estimates the situation.
- a. Makes a METT-TSL assessment.
 - b. Follows the battalion commander's intent.
- .6 _____ Company commander selects a company course of action.
- a. Unit attacks when the enemy is a defending platoon or smaller, a moving enemy company or smaller, or a surprised/unprepared enemy.
 - b. The unit fixes an enemy unit while the battalion bypasses.
 - c. The unit bypasses the enemy when mission dictates.
 - d. The company defends when the enemy in contact is significantly superior.
- .7 _____ The commander reports the situation to the battalion command post.
- a. Reports enemy contact per SOP or order.
 - b. Reports company course of action.
 - c. Requests required assistance.
 - d. Recommends battalion course of action if enemy contact exceeds company capabilities.
- .8 _____ The company executes the course of action selected by the company commander or directed by the battalion commander.
- a. Bypasses or engages enemy elements as the mission dictates.
 - b. Employs organic and supporting fire support to assist the maneuver.
 - c. Uses all available cover and concealment.
 - d. Maintains freedom of maneuver.
- .9 _____ The company maintains enemy contact and continues the mission per battalion orders or the battalion commander's intent.
- a. The enemy in contact is rendered combat ineffective.
 - b. Friendly units remain free to maneuver.
 - c. The situation is clearly reported to battalion headquarters allowing them the freedom to take subsequent action based on the initial enemy contact.

ENCLOSURE (1)

KEY INDICATORS:

CRITICAL STANDARDS

Identify the enemy unit or position before the enemy fires on the company main body. Kill, capture, or force the withdrawal of 100 percent of platoon-size or smaller elements and fix enemy forces larger than platoon-size. Sustain no more than 20 percent casualties. Initial contact is made by a platoon or less. The enemy and friendly situation is accurately and quickly reported.

TASK: 10B.3.9 SUPPORT BY FIRE

CONDITION(S): The company is operating as part of a battalion and is tasked to support by fire. The assault element is either in, or expected to make contact and can request suppressive fire on the enemy.

STANDARDS: EVAL: Y; N; NE

- .1 ____ The company commander conducts a leader's reconnaissance to reconnoiter tentative overwatch/support position and routes to it.
 - a. Position provides observation of overwatch area and fields of fire.
 - b. Position provides adequate cover and concealment as appropriate.
 - c. Uses natural or man-made obstacles on the position.
 - d. Identifies avenues of approach for enemy armor/infantry elements.
 - e. Can place effective fires within constraints of the terrain on the enemy flanks and provides overwatch within primary weapon range to cover the assault elements.
- .2 ____ Company commander coordinates with supported/overwatched unit commander.
 - a. Develops common fire control measures.
 - b. Knows each other's plan.
 - c. Conducts joint briefbacks/rehearsals when possible.
- .3 ____ Commander designates fire procedures and control measures.
 - a. Target reference points are identified.
 - b. Establishes sectors of observation and fire for each vehicle and position.
 - c. Disseminates rules and methods of engagement.
 - d. Informs all personnel of safety guidance for firing near friendly units.
 - e. Establishes engagement priorities.
 - f. All personnel know signals for open fire, cease fire, lift fires, and shift fires and tasks for specific weapons or teams.
- .4 ____ The company moves to firing positions.
 - a. Utilizes covered and concealed routes.
 - b. Establishes security.
 - c. Verifies fire procedures and control measures.
- .5 ____ Primary weapon systems are emplaced.

ENCLOSURE (1)

- a. Emplaces weapon systems covering sectors of fire and observation and any additional designated targets which maximize flank shots on the enemy.
 - b. Leaders position primary weapon system, special weapons, crew-served weapons and any other special teams.
- .6 ____ The company maintains observation.
- a. The overwatch team continually observes the supported unit's axis, sector, or direction of attack.
 - b. The overwatch team continually watches the supported unit's route.
 - c. Identifies and targets known or suspected enemy positions that could engage the supported unit.
- .7 ____ On order, the company, under the commander's control, engages the enemy.
- a. Acquires targets and places an accurate volume of fire on the enemy.
 - b. The volume of fire from the overwatch element is reduced when enemy fires become ineffective.
- .8 ____ On signal from the maneuver unit, the company lifts and shifts fires.
- a. Lifts fires but continues to observe assigned sectors and is prepared to engage any threat to the assault element.
 - b. Shifts fires to another target by walking its fires in front of the maneuver unit.
 - c. The company ceases fire on order.
 - d. The company maneuvers as necessary to continue to support/overwatch.
- .9 ____ The company continues the mission as directed by the battalion commander.
- a. Moves to the objective on order.
 - b. Consolidates and reorganizes if necessary.
 - c. Passes initial objective and conducts an attack on a second objective while another team supports by fire.

KEY INDICATORS:

CRITICAL STANDARDS

The company suppresses the enemy so that it is unable to maneuver and the supported element is able to conduct their assigned mission. The company causes no casualties in the supported element. The company receives no more than 10 percent casualties.

TASK: 10B.3.10 PERFORM ATTACK POSITION ACTIVITIES

CONDITION(S): The company is operating as part of a battalion, has received an operation order to conduct either a deliberate attack or movement to contact and is currently located in an assembly area. The company has been ordered to occupy an attack position en route to the LD. Both enemy and friendly forces have indirect fire and CAS available.

ENCLOSURE (1)

STANDARDS: EVAL: Y; N; NE

- .1 ____ Company coordinates movement into the attack position.
 - a. Notifies the unit to be passed through of the company's occupying of the attack position.
 - b. The company commander informs the company to halt at the attack position.
- .2 ____ Company moves from the assembly area to the attack position.
 - a. Moves in the appropriate tactical formation.
 - b. Lead elements pause in the attack position while trail elements assume the appropriate tactical formation.
 - c. Arrives in sufficient time to complete last minute preparation and cross the LD on time.
- .3 ____ Company occupies the attack position.
 - a. Company commander orders the unit to occupy the attack position.
 - b. Lead elements guide company vehicles to their designated positions.
 - c. Company occupies covered and concealed positions.
 - d. Maintains security.
 - e. Company deploys into initial attack formation.
 - f. Company maintains readiness condition established for the halt at the attack position.
 - g. Company checks equipment and performs during-operations maintenance.
- .4 ____ Company moves from the attack position and crosses LD.
 - a. Vehicles depart on order or at the specified time.
 - b. Company assumes appropriate tactical formation.
 - c. Company reaches the LD at the time specified.

KEY INDICATORS:

CRITICAL STANDARDS

The company moves to the designated attack position, deploys into an attack formation, maintains security, completes last minute checks, and moves to and crosses the LD at the time specified in the operation order.

TASK: 10B.3.11 ASSAULT AN ENEMY POSITION (DISMOUNTED)

CONDITION(S): A company will assault an enemy platoon position. Another company is supporting by fire, providing suppressive fires on the objective. The assaulting company is task organized with a platoon of infantry. The enemy platoon is dug in and occupying a battle position. The company is presently located in the assault position.

ENCLOSURE (1)

STANDARDS: EVAL: Y; N; NE

- .1 ____ Company commander plans and coordinates the assault.
- a. Plan covers a scheme of fire and maneuver with sufficient direct and indirect fires to suppress the enemy.
 - b. Platoons are given appropriate missions. Platoons may be assigned overwatch/attack by fire missions when there is a need for more fires than can be provided by the battalion overwatch.
 - c. Maneuver routes avoid open areas and obstacles.
 - d. Actions on objective, subordinate objectives, or other measures to coordinate synchronization are outlined.
 - e. Method of assault is appropriate (dismounted assault supported by fire when there are obstacles and fields of fire but dismounted approach is available, mounted assault when there is an ability to close quickly and enemy fires can be suppressed, dismounted assault with tanks leading when limited fields of fire for enemy and no obstacles to movement and primary enemy threat is small-arms and hand-held HEAT weapons).
 - f. The assault is planned to hit an enemy weakness (direction not covered by-fires or direction enemy is not oriented to defend, such as a flank).
 - g. Fire control measures to coordinate internal and external overwatching and supporting fires with maneuver, allow target handoff and preclude friendly casualties.
 - h. Coordination is made with supporting elements.
- .2 ____ Company prepares for final assault.
- a. Company uses terrain to mask movement.
 - b. Conducts last minute checks of weapon systems, vehicles, and equipment.
 - c. Scans the enemy position to determine enemy size and type, enemy weakpoint, weapon systems, locations of minefields, ditches, wire, and routes of assault to the objective.
 - d. The company commander reports to the battalion when ready to assault.
 - e. Company remains in hide positions until ready to assault. Maintains stealth.
 - f. The company collects and reports tactical information about the enemy situation on the objective.
- .3 ____ Company assaults the enemy position.
- a. The company receives order to assault the enemy position.
 - b. Platoons maneuver IAW the company commander's orders obtaining flank and rear shots whenever possible.
 - c. The FO controls artillery in support of the assault.
 - d. The FAC controls CAS/CIFS in support of the assault.
 - e. The NGLO controls naval gunfire in support of the assault.
 - f. The company assaults in the appropriate formation affording maximum firepower forward.
 - g. Maintains forward momentum along the axis of attack.
- .4 ____ The company prepares for a dismounted assault.
- a. Tank platoons provide support by fire.

ENCLOSURE (1)

- b. Mounted infantry assault element moves to dismount points just short of enemy small-arms range or the last covered and concealed position short of the objective.
 - c. AAVs or LAVa take up support-by-fire positions.
- .5 _____ Dismounted infantry prepare for the final assault.
 - a. Infantry dismounts move using cover and concealment to assault positions just short of the objective.
 - b. Tanks, AAVs, or LAVs provide suppressive fire on the objective.
 - c. On order, supporting fires are lifted and shifted.
 - d. Dismounted infantry assaults the objective.
- .6 _____ The company assaults the objective.
 - a. Dismounted infantry fight through the objective.
 - b. On order, AAVs or LAVs move up to assist the dismounted effort.
 - c. Tanks continue to provide long-range suppressive fires on enemy armor vehicles.
 - d. AAVs or LAVs and dismounted infantry secure the objective.
- .7 _____ The company consolidates and reorganizes.

KEY INDICATORS:

CRITICAL STANDARDS

The company assaults the position, resulting in the destruction, capture, or withdrawal of 100 percent of the enemy on the objective. The company sustains no friendly casualties to friendly fire. The company sustains no more than 50 percent casualties. The main body is not surprised.

TASK: 10B.3.12 ASSAULT AN ENEMY POSITION (MOUNTED)

CONDITION(S): A company will assault an enemy platoon position. Another company is supporting by fire, providing suppressive fires on the objective. The assaulting company is task organized with a platoon of infantry. The enemy platoon is occupying a battle position. The company is presently located in the attack position. Antitank fires are light and enemy forces are weak and can be suppressed.

STANDARDS: EVAL: Y; N; NE

- .1 _____ Company commander plans and coordinates the assault.
 - a. Plan covers a scheme of fire and maneuver with sufficient direct and indirect fires to suppress the enemy.
 - b. Platoons are given appropriate missions. Platoons may be assigned overwatch/attack by fire missions when there is a need for more fires than can be provided by the battalion overwatch.
 - c. Maneuver routes avoid open areas and obstacles.
 - d. Actions on objective, subordinate objectives, or other measures to coordinate synchronization are outlined.

ENCLOSURE (1)

- e. Method of assault is appropriate (dismounted assault supported by fire when there are obstacles and fields of fire but dismounted approach is available, mounted assault when there is an ability to close quickly and enemy fires can be suppressed, dismounted assault with tanks leading when limited fields of fire for enemy and no obstacles to movement and primary enemy threat is small-arms and hand-held HEAT weapons).
- f. The assault is planned to hit an enemy weakness (direction not covered by fires or direction enemy is not oriented to defend, such as a flank).
- g. Fire control measures to coordinate internal and external overwatching and supporting fires with maneuver, allow target handoff and preclude friendly casualties.
- h. Coordination is made with supporting elements.

.2 _____ Company prepares for final assault.

- a. The company collects and reports tactical information about the enemy situation on the objective.
- b. Conducts last minute checks of weapon systems, vehicles, and equipment.
- c. Scans the enemy position to determine enemy size and type, enemy weak point, weapon systems, locations of minefields, ditches, wire, and routes of assault to the objective.
- d. The company commander reports to the battalion when ready to assault.
- e. Company remains in hide positions until ready to assault. Maintains stealth.

.3 _____ Company assaults the enemy position.

- a. The company receives order to assault the enemy position.
- b. Platoons maneuver IAW the company commander's orders obtaining flank and rear shots whenever possible.
- c. The FO controls artillery in support of the assault.
- d. The FAC controls CAS/CIFS in support of the assault.
- e. The NGLO controls naval gunfire in support of the assault.
- f. The company assaults in the appropriate formation affording maximum firepower forward.
- g. Maintains forward momentum along assault route(s) in conjunction with other company elements.
- h. Employs all weapon systems to defeat the enemy in detail and destroys all resistance on the objective.
- i. The companies tanks move followed by AAVs or LAVs along the assault routes engaging enemy vehicles in the enemy platoon.
- j. Tanks, AAVs, and LAVs fight through the objective.
- k. Tanks move up, over, and around obstacles destroying remaining enemy armored vehicles, bunkers, and other forces (to protect dismounted infantry).
- l. Company destroys all fleeing vehicles.
- m. Infantry dismounts.
- n. Infantry platoons flush out all dismounted resistance on the objective in the trenches or in hiding.
- o. Company maintains communication with supporting elements.

.4 _____ The company consolidates and reorganizes.

ENCLOSURE (1)

KEY INDICATORS:

CRITICAL STANDARDS

The company assaults the position, resulting in the destruction, capture or withdrawal of 100 percent of the enemy on the objective. The company sustains no friendly casualties due to friendly fire. The company sustains no more than 50 percent due to enemy fire. The main body is not surprised.

TASK: 10B.3.13 PERFORM AN ATTACK BY FIRE

CONDITION(S): The company is operating as a part of a battalion operation and is given a general position and ordered to attack an enemy position or moving enemy element. It is given a sector of fire or other fire control measures. The company commander orders the company to attack the position by fire. Enemy is in hasty defensive positions or is a moving tactical force.

STANDARDS: EVAL: Y; N; NE

- .1 ____ Company commander plans and company prepares for attack/counterattack by fire.
 - a. Assigns fire control measures and engagement criteria to ensure complete coverage of enemy and ability to mass/shift fires.
 - b. Positions subordinate elements. Provides mutual support fields of fire, cover, and room for disposition.
 - c. Chooses route with cover/concealment that provides for rapid occupation/displacement.
 - d. Plans instructions, preparations, reconnaissance, and occupation.
 - e. Prepares instructions for maneuver to allow repositioning and shifting of elements.
 - f. Preparations are made as time allows (marking of routes, firing positions, preparation of range cards/sector sketches).
- .2 ____ Company occupies position.
 - a. Company is in position at directed time.
 - b. Enemy is not able to disrupt occupation.
 - c. Company loses no vehicles during occupation.
- .3 ____ The company attacks by fire keeping a continuous and consistent rate of fire on the enemy position.
 - a. Scans for enemy elements.
 - b. Platoons alternate firing positions as necessary.
 - c. The company adjusts overwatch positions if necessary.
 - d. The company commander directs the FO to call for and adjust indirect fires on enemy elements.
 - e. The company commander directs the NGLO to call for and adjust naval gunfire on enemy elements.
 - f. The company commander directs the FAC to call CAS/CIFS on enemy elements.
- .4 ____ The company prepares for an attack by fire.
 - a. Position tank main gun fire to suppress and destroy visible armor targets.

ENCLOSURE (1)

- b. Position machine guns so that their fire suppresses dismounted enemy troops and engages enemy light-skinned vehicles.
 - c. Position AAVs or LAVs weapon systems so that their fire engages light-armored vehicles.
- .5 _____ The company sustains the attack by fire until all enemy elements are destroyed or suppressed.
- a. The company commander orders the platoons to focus fires on an enemy element, shift, start, or stop fires.
 - b. The company adjusts the rate of fire based on the tactical situation.
 - c. The company redirects, adjusts, or concentrates fires on enemy elements displacing, moving to alternate positions, or moving in as reinforcements, concentrating on enemy flank shots.
 - d. The company ceases fire once the enemy element is destroyed or indicates surrender.
- .6 ____ The company reports.
- a. Platoon commanders report status to company commander.
 - b. The battalion commander acknowledges company report.
 - c. The company continues with the unit's mission per the battalion commander's instructions.

KEY INDICATORS:

CRITICAL STANDARDS

The company detects and destroys 75 percent of the enemy elements in the company sector. Friendly casualties do not exceed 20 percent.

TASK: 10B.3.14 PERFORM AMBUSH

CONDITION(S): The company is directed to conduct an ambush along a suspected enemy route. The enemy is suspected to be company size. The enemy is operating along lines of communications or avenues of approach, in squad-size to company-size units, and can be reinforced with similar units, air support, and indirect fire.

STANDARDS: EVAL: Y; N; NE

- .1 _____ The commander develops an ambush plan.
- a. Select a tentative ambush formation; or, for area ambushes, element locations or sectors and a scheme of maneuver which will maximize engagement of the enemy's flank or rear.
 - b. Establish criteria for initiation of ambush(es).
 - c. Develop signals for initiating ambush, cease fire, assault, withdrawal from the kill zone, and withdrawal from the ambush site.
 - d. Distribute information on target engagement techniques, if not SOP.
 - e. Develop a plan for assault element actions in the kill zone.
 - f. Establish a withdrawal plan.
- .2 _____ The company performs passage of lines and moves to the ambush site.

- .3 _____ Company establishes an ambush site.
- a. Conducts the reconnaissance undetected.
 - b. The commander and security element leader(s) select the security positions that provide early warning of enemy approach toward any company element.
 - c. The commander selects a kill zone that restricts enemy maneuver of the ambush site.
 - d. The commander and support element leader select support position(s) that permit observation and effective fires into the kill zone.
 - e. The commander and assault element leader select the assault position that provides observation cover and concealment and is close enough for rapid assault into the kill zone.
 - f. Select positions large enough for all personnel and fighting positions.
 - g. The commander and element leaders select primary and alternate covered and concealed routes to and from all positions and the ambush site.
 - h. The commander leaves a surveillance team in positions observing the kill zone.
 - i. The reconnaissance element returns undetected.
- .4 _____ Based on the reconnaissance, the commander confirms or modifies his ambush plan.
- a. Modifications to the ambush plan are immediately disseminated to subordinate leaders.
 - b. Subordinate leaders verify receipt of the modified order and disseminate changes to all personnel.
- .5 _____ The security elements move and occupy covered and concealed positions.
- a. Elements move into position utilizing the appropriate movement technique.
 - b. Leaders designate sectors of observation and fire for individuals and primary weapon systems.
 - c. Designated personnel emplace antipersonnel mines, antitank mines, obstacles, and early warning devices, as the threat dictates.
 - d. Leaders check positions from the enemy side to verify concealment, if possible.
 - e. Leaders position themselves to control their elements.
 - f. Subordinate leaders check all target acquisition and night-observation devices.
 - g. Leaders maintain communications with the commander.
 - h. The occupation and establishment of the position(s) is undetected by the enemy.
 - i. Subordinate leaders report to the commander when the position(s) is established.
- .6 _____ Support and assault elements move and occupy covered and concealed positions.
- a. Moves after security teams are in position.
 - b. Teams move on order.
 - c. The commander, FO, XO, and subordinate leaders position themselves for best control.
 - d. Subordinate leaders maintain communication with the commander.
- .7 _____ The unit prepares the ambush site.
- a. Leader's confirm sectors of observation and fire for individuals and primary weapon systems.

ENCLOSURE (1)

- b. Designated personnel emplace antipersonnel mines, antitank mines, obstacles, and early warning devices, as the threat dictates.
- c. Leaders check positions from the enemy aide to verify concealment, if possible. The leaders do not enter the kill zone.
- d. Subordinate leaders check all target acquisition and night-observation devices for most effective positioning.
- e. The occupation and establishment of the position(s) is undetected by the enemy.
- f. Leaders report to the commander when the position(s) is established.

.8 ____ The company employs OPSEC.

- a. Camouflage, noise, and light discipline are enforced.
- b. Security forces are alert and using all available observation devices.
- c. Radio-listening silence is enforced.

.9 ____ When the security team detects the enemy, it alerts the commander.

- a. As a minimum, the team reports the size of the target, the direction of movement, and any special weapons or equipment carried.
- b. The commander alerts the company upon receipt of the report.
- c. If the enemy is moving to attack the ambush, the security team engages the enemy force. The commander maneuvers elements or employs the reserve to defeat the enemy and protect other elements of the ambush.
- d. If the enemy force is too large, does not enter the kill zone, or has too many maneuver elements remaining outside the kill zone, the commander will not initiate the ambush. If the enemy does not detect the company, the company allows them to pass, reports the force to the battalion command post, and continues the mission.
- e. If any element is detected, it engages the enemy and alerts the company.
- f. If the enemy element enters the kill zone and falls within the engagement criteria, the ambush is initiated.

.10 ____ The company executes the ambush.

- a. The commander initiates the ambush, or authorizes a subordinate leader to initiate the ambush.
- b. The commander or leader initiate the ambush with the largest casualty-producing weapon available. If ambushing mounted or armored elements, the leader initiates the ambush with multiple, simultaneous antiarmor shots.
- c. Assault and support elements deliver fire with the heaviest, most accurate volume possible.
- d. All weapons engage targets suitable to their characteristics.
- e. The security teams block any enemy attempts to maneuver and engage the ambush forces, block escape from the kill zone.
- f. Platoons execute ambush.

.11 ____ The company uses indirect fire support systems.

- a. Suppress and kill the enemy force.
- b. Isolate the enemy force by blocking enemy reinforcements and counterattacking the original force.

ENCLOSURE (1)

- c. When resistance in the kill zone ends, the commander orders lifting and shifting of all fires, and prepares for the assault on the target.
 - d. On the commander's signal, the support element lifts or shifts all supporting fires IAW the order.
- .12 ____ If applicable, the assault force assaults the kill zone.
- a. Per the order, SOP, or on the commander's signal, the assault element assaults the target before it can react effectively.
 - b. All special teams accomplish their tasks immediately after their assault element establishes local security before the kill zone.
- .13 ____ The company withdraws from the ambush.
- a. On order or on completion of actions in the kill zone, the assault element withdraws to a designated rally point.
 - b. The support element covers the withdrawal of the assault element from the kill zone.
 - c. The assault element accounts for all personnel and reports to the commander.
 - d. The other elements withdraw to the point designated in the order.
 - e. The commander uses planned indirect fire to assist and cover the withdrawal, or complete destruction of the enemy in the kill zone.
- .14 ____ The company reorganizes and consolidates at the designated rally point.
- a. The company moves from the rally point as soon as all elements report personnel and equipment accountability to the commander.
 - b. The commander reports the results of the ambush and company status to the battalion CP by unit SOP or the battalion order, and continues the mission as directed by the battalion commander.

KEY INDICATORS:

CRITICAL STANDARDS

The ambush(es) is emplaced NLT the time specified in the order. The specified purpose of the ambush is accomplished IAW commander's intent. Company kills or captures 100 percent of the enemy personnel in the kill zone. Company obtains all PIR, withdraws from the ambush, and suffers no casualties from friendly fire. Sustains no more than 5 percent casualties.

TASK: 10B.3.15 PERFORM HASTY RIVER/GAP CROSSING

CONDITION(S): The company receives a battalion operation order directing a water crossing. The crossing site is designated by battalion headquarters. The company is not in contact. Initial reconnaissance reports indicate that the crossing site area is occasionally patrolled by enemy squad-size elements and can be breached with available assets. An AVL B is available.

STANDARDS: EVAL: Y; N; NE

- .1 ____ The commander, platoon leaders, 10, and AVL B representatives plan the crossing.
- a. Assault, support, and crossing site commanders are designated.
 - b. Task organization provides for rapid crossing, security of crossing site, and rapid seizure of foothold on the far side.

7 Oct 94

- c. Indirect fire support and smoke are planned to the front and flank of the crossing site.
 - d. Plans assault element activities.
 - e. Plans support by fire for the crossing site.
 - f. Plans the emplacement of the AVLB and rapid crossing by the crossing platoon.
 - g. Plans recovery of the bridge.
- .2 ____ The security element leader selects positions to provide support by fire for dismounted reconnaissance elements.
- a. Uses available cover and concealment.
 - b. Covers likely enemy positions and avenues of approach.
- .3 ____ The company commander employs smoke to obscure the reconnaissance activity.
- .4 ____ Security element establishes local security.
- a. Establishes and operates OPs.
 - b. Employs OPSEC measures.
 - c. Reconnoiters area around the crossing site and its approaches.
 - d. Probes for mines and boobytraps.
- .5 ____ Ground reconnaissance team conducts a physical reconnaissance and evaluation of the crossing site.
- a. Identifies key terrain.
 - b. Identifies covered and concealed positions.
 - c. Identifies possible and actual enemy locations.
 - d. Locates entry and exit roads and cross-country approaches.
 - e. Determines river width, velocity, and depth.
 - f. Locates any obstacles and determines the slope of the banks.
 - g. Identifies anchorages, staging, and holding areas.
 - h. Reports all information to the company commander.
- .6 ____ The company commander develops the movement plan.
- a. Establishes routes.
 - b. Designates traffic control points (TCP's).
 - c. Designates release points or lines.
 - d. Designates holding areas and crossing area.
 - e. Designates the schedule and sequence of crossing units.
- .7 ____ The company moves through the crossing site.
- a. The company commander positions himself to overwatch the crossing operation and surrounding dominant terrain.
 - b. The commander/FO employ fire/smoke as necessary.
 - c. Infantry crosses (mounted when antitank threat is light, dismounted when antitank threat is heavy) to secure the far side of the crossing.

ENCLOSURE (1)

- d. The security element provides support by fire while the AVLB moves to the crossing site and sets the bridge.
- e. The rest of the company (less security element) moves rapidly through the crossing site to supporting positions.
- f. The security element crosses the crossing site and rejoins the company.
- g. The bridge is recovered.

.8 ____ The company commander reports to the battalion headquarters.

- a. Reports completion of crossing.
- b. Reports current position and status.

KEY INDICATORS:

CRITICAL STANDARDS

Preplanning is conducted so that fire support and crossing means are available upon arrival. All company elements cross within the time specified in the battalion operation order. Unit security is maintained by organic support elements. The company losses during the operation do not exceed 20 percent. Momentum of the attack is maintained. The AVLB is recovered and secured before the enemy can destroy it.

TASK: 10B.3.16 PERFORM SCREEN OPERATIONS

CONDITION(S): A screen line has been established in front of a defending force and the company is part of a forward screen. The company has permission from the battalion commander to place OPs forward of the screen line. Enemy forward security elements are moving and attempting to gain intelligence about the friendly unit and impede its operation. Both the company and the enemy have indirect fires available.

STANDARDS: EVAL: Y; N; NE

.1 ____ The commander develops a plan for the screen task.

- a. The commander develops control measures in support of the company's screen task.
- b. The unit is briefed on engagement criteria.
- c. The commander identifies routes and determines distances and recognition signals for his patrols.
- d. The commander establishes engagement criteria based on size, type, and activity of the enemy unit.
- e. The company commander plans the use of artillery, CAS/CIFS, and naval gunfire to delay, confuse, and attrite the enemy.
- f. The company commander plans the use of the infantry in OPs.
- g. The company commander develops a tank-heavy counter-reconnaissance force.

.2 ____ The company occupies the initial screen line.

- a. Screen line is occupied in the time specified in the battalion order.
- b. The company is alerted and prepares to move to the screen line.
- c. Conducts mounted movement to initial positions using available cover and concealment.

- d. The unit occupies its initial screen positions mounted without enemy observation.
 - e. The company CP reports occupation of screen line to battalion headquarters.
- .3 ____ Leaders perform reconnaissance of areas selected for OPs.
- a. Ensures OP locations provide good observation of desired areas.
 - b. Looks for covered and concealed routes leading to and from the OPs.
 - c. Identifies areas that cannot be observed from the OPs.
- .4 ____ The company commander develops a counter-reconnaissance plan.
- a. Ensures the counter-reconnaissance force is in covered and concealed positions.
 - b. Ensures warning and attack signals are understood by the OPs and the counter-reconnaissance force.
 - c. Develops attack plans that support and protect OPs without causing the counter-reconnaissance force to become decisively engaged.
- .5 ____ The company elements occupy the OPs on the initial screen line.
- a. The elements establish local security.
 - b. The elements prepare fighting positions, as the situation allows.
 - c. Security, maintenance, and rest plans are initiated.
 - d. Primary weapon systems are positioned to cover likely enemy avenues of approach.
- .6 ____ The company searches for enemy units.
- a. Company elements observe in their designated sectors.
 - b. OPs report all observed enemy activity as per the unit's SOP or the order.
 - c. Night-observation devices are used during limited visibility.
 - d. Infantry platoons conduct reconnaissance.
- .7 ____ The company engages enemy units.
- a. OPs avoid contact with enemy reconnaissance elements and submit reports.
 - b. Maintains surveillance of the enemy.
 - c. Calls for indirect fire on enemy elements.
 - d. Company counter-reconnaissance force maneuvers on and destroys enemy reconnaissance elements meeting the engagement criteria.
 - e. Impedes and harasses the enemy with direct and indirect fire.
 - f. Destroys enemy reconnaissance elements within unit capabilities.
 - g. The commander integrates direct fires, indirect fires, and CAS/CIFS with the maneuver to defeat the enemy force.
 - h. Platoons perform an attack by fire.
- .8 ____ The company commander controls the movement of the screen element.
- a. OPs are called in.
 - b. Crews mount vehicles for conduct of mounted screening operations.

ENCLOSURE (1)

- c. The elements move, in order, to successive screen lines.
- d. Elements move using appropriate movement techniques.
- e. The commander uses fragmentary orders and graphic control measures to direct the moves.
- f. The elements report when they occupy the new screen lines or OPs.
- g. Elements continue 360-degree security but emphasize efforts toward the appropriate direction when on a screen mission.

KEY INDICATORS:

CRITICAL STANDARDS

The company maintains continuous surveillance of all high-speed avenues of approach in to the sector. Destroys or repels all enemy reconnaissance elements or patrols of platoon-size or smaller. Locates and maintains contact with the enemy forward security element. The company sustains no more than 10 percent casualties.

TASK: 10B.3.17 PERFORM GUARD OPERATION

CONDITION(S): The company is conducting a guard operation for a stationary battalion. It is deployed forward of a designated phase line. A reconnaissance of the area between the main body and the guard force has been conducted. The guard force is in place. Enemy reconnaissance elements are trying to locate the main body. Both the enemy and guard force have artillery support available.

STANDARDS: EVAL: Y; N; NE

- .1 ____ The company commander develops a plan for the guard.
 - a. The company commander develops control measures in support of the company's guard task.
 - b. Plans BPs across most likely avenues of approach.
 - c. Organizes the defense or delay using the advantages of terrain and weapon systems capabilities.
 - d. Plans the use of, and requests priority of artillery, CAS/CIFS and naval gunfire.
- .2 ____ The company searches for enemy units.
 - a. Company elements observe in their designated sectors.
 - b. OPs report all observed enemy activity as per the unit's SOP or the order.
 - c. Night-observation devices are used during limited visibility.
 - d. Infantry platoons conduct reconnaissance.
 - e. Provides main body reaction time and determines the enemy's disposition.
- .3 ____ The company engages the enemy.
 - a. Causes the enemy to deploy early.
 - b. Subjects the enemy to heavy casualties.
 - c. Destroys enemy reconnaissance elements.
 - d. Attacks to destroy enemy elements.

ENCLOSURE (1)

- e. If necessary, guides a counterattack force from the main body.
 - f. Keeps the enemy out of direct-fire range of the main body (4,000 meters).
 - g. Does not withdraw to successive positions without permission of the main body commander.
- .4 ____ Guard force continually updates the main body on enemy situation using spot reports.

KEY INDICATORS:

CRITICAL STANDARDS

The guard force protects the main body from surprise and direct fire from the enemy. Causes premature deployment and attrites attacking enemy forces. Does not withdraw to subsequent battle positions without permission of the main body commander. The company inflicts 75 percent casualties on the enemy if directed to fight.

TASK: 10B.3.18 DEFEND

CONDITION(S): The company completes all preparations directed by the commander not later than the time specified in the order. The company main body is not surprised by the enemy. The company decisively engages the enemy. The company destroys, blocks, delays for the specified time, and canalizes the enemy into the designated area. The company denies and prevents penetration of specified boundary or terrain.

STANDARDS: EVAL: Y; N; NE

- .1 ____ The commander develops a defense plan.
- a. The commander identifies enemy avenues of approach and areas of weakness along each (exposure, canalization, slow movement).
 - b. Platoons and obstacles are positioned to defeat enemy along all approaches at locations of weakness.
 - c. Contingencies are made to shift fires and forces to any route being used by enemy (supplementary positions and secondary sectors of fire).
 - d. Fire control measures are developed to allow fires to be shifted and massed (engagement areas, sectors of fire, TRPs).
 - e. Tank positions are selected to provide flanking fires on enemy approaches, provide cover, and allows covered entry/exit.
 - f. Infantry positions are selected to block enemy mounted/dismounted approaches where infantry is not exposed to standoff fires and protected by obstacles from mounted assault.
 - g. Obvious positions are avoided.
 - h. Coordinates the synchronization of the fire support plan, obstacle plan, initiation of direct fire and counterattack plan.
 - i. Establishes control measures identifying sectors, boundaries, battle positions, engagement areas, and withdrawal routes.
 - j. The commander FO, and NGLO develop a fire support plan including TRPs and preplanned targets forward, within and behind the battle position.
 - k. The commander and FAC develop a plan to use CAS/CIFS.
 - l. Plan for the occupation of the defense positions.

ENCLOSURE (1)

- m. Plan work priorities, if not SOP.
 - n. Develop a security and counterreconnaissance plan.
 - o. Request engineer support and barrier material.
- .2 ____ Company occupies an assembly area short of the FEBA.
- .3 ____ The leader's reconnoiter the defensive position.
- a. The commander conducts a leader's reconnaissance with key company leaders.
 - b. Reconnaissance personnel provide sketches of the BP, tentative weapon sites, and TRPs.
 - c. The commander confirms or modifies his plan based on the reconnaissance.
- .4 ____ The company occupies the defense.
- a. Vehicles travel along preselected covered and concealed positions.
 - b. Vehicles do not stop until reaching the battle position guides.
 - c. Platoons occupy BPs.
 - d. The company elements establish their defensive positions.
 - e. Establish unit security.
 - f. Emplace OPs and air guards.
 - g. Patrol areas that cannot be observed.
 - h. Emplace early warning devices (PEWs).
 - i. Conduct stand-to per SOP or order.
 - j. Position primary weapon systems and establish fields of fire.
 - k. Camouflage positions using natural cover when available.
 - l. Reconnoiter alternate and subsequent battle positions.
 - m. When possible, occupation is checked from enemy diversion.
 - n. All infantry is in fighting position with overhead cover within two hours.
 - o. All vehicles have covered positions.
 - p. The enemy cannot spot any position from expected engagement areas.
 - q. Rehearsals are conducted and checked by leaders from enemy's direction.
- .5 ____ Leaders check positions.
- a. Key leaders and their subordinates go to the front of their positions, and walk the terrain to determine if the positions accomplish their assigned tasks.
 - b. Leaders walk positions and adjust for more effective fields of fire.
 - c. Positions and fields of fire are checked for dead space.
- .6 ____ Units improve the defense.
- a. Improve alternate and supplementary positions.
 - b. Establish responsibility for overlapping fires on enemy avenues of approach.
 - c. Designate and rehearse counterattack plans.

- d. Dig communications trenches between positions.
- .7 _____ Commander positions the company combat trains.
- a. Position the company combat trains one terrain feature behind the company if applicable.
 - b. Ensure they are close enough to provide rapid support.
 - c. Ensure they are close enough to coordinate Class III and V prestocks.
- .8 _____ Company commander finalizes fire plan.
- a. Constructs the company fire plan from consolidated platoon data.
 - b. Achieves mutual support and concentration of fires.
 - c. Ensures company is tied in with other companies.
 - d. Provides copy to the battalion CP.
- .9 _____ Unit leaders coordinate with adjacent, supporting, co-located, and higher units.
- a. Exchange information on routes into and out of the battle positions and routes back to the subsequent battle position.
 - b. Identify and coordinate indirect-fire targets and control measures.
 - c. Coordinate location of primary, alternate, and supplementary battle and firing positions and location of flanks.
 - d. Exchange the location of OPs and patrol routes, along with dead space between units and how it is to be covered.
 - e. Exchange necessary CEOI information.
 - f. Identify overlapping direct fire.
- .10 _____ The company emplaces minefields and obstacles.
- a. Units cover obstacles by observation and direct and indirect fires.
 - b. The commander requests and receives clearance to lay protective minefields.
 - c. When available, plans the use of scatterable mines to close gaps.
 - d. In built up areas, emplaces obstacles to deny enemy underground approaches through and between buildings and over rooftops.
- .11 _____ The unit stockpiles ammunition and supplies.
- a. Stockpiles overhead cover for supplies.
 - b. Provides sufficient overhead cover for supplies as well as individual defensive positions.
 - c. Reports locations to all elements.
 - d. Plans for the evacuation or destruction of supplies.
- .12 _____ The company conducts defensive operations.
- a. Conducts counterreconnaissance to force the withdrawal or destruction of enemy reconnaissance and security elements.
 - b. The unit conducts rest plan and sustainment activities for continuous operations.
 - c. The unit maintains continuous communications with the battalion CP and reports status as per order or unit SOP.

ENCLOSURE (1)

- d. The company forwards defensive sector sketch and minefield reports to the battalion CP and updates them, as needed.
- e. The company reports enemy activity to the battalion CP per order or SOP.

.13 _____ The company defends against a mounted assault.

- a. Uses direct and indirect fire to separate the tanks from infantry fighting vehicles providing security for the vehicles.
- b. Executes the company barrier plan to impede and canalize the vehicles.
- c. Employs smoke to obscure enemy vision.
- d. Engages the vehicles with primary weapon systems command-detonated mines, demolitions, and antiarmor weapons.
- e. The commander moves elements between primary, alternate, and supplementary positions to complete the destruction or expulsion of the enemy force.
- f. Tanks engage targets by priority based on SOP or commander's guidance.
- g. Engage tanks with flank or rear shots when possible.
- h. Armored vehicle crews fight buttoned up.

.14 _____ The company defends against a dismounted enemy assault.

- a. The commander orders direct and indirect FPFs to suppress, block, and destroy dismounted enemy troop formations.
- b. The company executes the company barrier plan to impede and canalize the troops into planned fires.
- c. Armored vehicles exploit enemy vulnerability when the enemy is dismounted.

.15 _____ Company counterattacks by fire and maneuver to finish destruction of enemy or recapture key terrain.

- a. The counterattack is launched before the enemy can consolidate. Strikes the enemy on flank.
- b. Is synchronized with all combat power of company.

.16 _____ The company consolidates and reorganizes.

.17 _____ The company continues to defend.

- a. The defense continues until the enemy withdraws completely from the area.
- b. On order, the company continues the mission in accordance with the commander's intent.
- c. The company is ordered to attack or withdraw.

KEY INDICATORS:

CRITICAL STANDARDS

The company completes all preparations directed by the commander NLT the time specified in the order. The company main body is not surprised by the enemy. The company decisively engages the enemy. The company destroys, blocks, delays for the specified time, and prevents penetration of specified boundary or terrain. The company sustains no more than 30 percent friendly casualties and inflicts no less than 50 percent casualties on the enemy.

ENCLOSURE (1)

TASK: 10B.3.19 LINKUP

CONDITION(S): The company is ordered to link up with a unit. Platoon-size elements are operating in the area. Friendly and enemy units have indirect fire capability.

STANDARDS: EVAL: Y; N; NE

- .1 ____ Based on an estimate of the situation and METT-TSL, the commander develops a linkup plan.
 - a. Develops a scheme of maneuver and control measures (contact points, checkpoints, phase lines, routes, and zone of actions, movement).
 - b. The commander, in concert with FO and NGLO, develops the fire plan. Develops actions at the linkup point and tasks to subordinate elements.
 - c. The commander and FAC develop a plan for use of CAS/CIFS to support the fire plan.
 - d. Constructs contingency plans in the event of enemy contact before, during, and after the linkup.
 - e. Identifies tentative primary and alternate linkup sites by map reconnaissance or the linkup sites designated by higher headquarters.
 - f. Provides multiple access and escape routes.
- .2 ____ The company commander coordinates and obtains pertinent information from the linkup unit.
 - a. Verifies frequencies, call signs, codes, visual signals (far, near), and alternative recognition signals.
 - b. Obtains fire coordination measures (for example, restrictive fire line).
 - c. Determines the command relationship with the linkup unit. (Who is in charge if the enemy attacks during linkup)? (Who is in charge after linkup)?
 - d. Coordinates for actions following linkup.
 - e. Establishes control measure (contact points, checkpoints, phase line, and others, as required).
 - f. Establishes how long the linkup site will be occupied (that is, length of time or until percentage of unit arrives).
- .3 ____ The stationary unit establishes a linkup point.
 - a. The unit occupies the linkup rally point before the time stated in the order.
 - b. The company establishes all-around security.
 - c. The company establishes communications with the other unit, if not under radio-listening silence.
 - d. The commander sends a contact team, with communications to pinpoint and clear the linkup point.
- .4 ____ The contact team secures the linkup point.
 - a. Establishes security for the linkup point.
 - b. Take up covered and concealed positions to observe the linkup point and awaits the moving unit.
 - c. Marks the linkup point with prearranged recognition signals.
 - d. Perform linkup.
- .5 ____ The moving unit takes action to link up.

ENCLOSURE (1)

- a. The company halts a safe distance from the linkup point in a covered and concealed position (linkup rally point), and establishes local security.
- b. The commander establishes communications with the stationary unit, if not under radio-listening silence.
- c. The commander issues final instructions and contingency plans to the contact team.

.6 ____ The contact team performs the initial linkup.

- a. The contact team, with communications, departs the company position.
- b. The contact team maintains communications with the company.
- c. The contact team leader verifies the linkup point and positions the security element in covered and concealed positions that overwatch the linkup point.
- d. The contact team leader signals the stationary unit.
- e. The contact team leader does not block the security element's fires while approaching the linkup point.
- f. The contact team leader links up with the members from the stationary unit and exchanges oral authentication by the time stated in the order.
- g. The contact team leader conducts final coordination with the stationary unit.

.7 ____ The company links up.

- a. The contact team leader guides the stationary unit contact team to the company linkup rally point.
- b. The stationary unit contact team then guides the moving unit from its linkup rally point to the stationary unit linkup rally point to complete the linkup.
- c. The stationary unit contact team alerts its main body before guiding the moving unit to the stationary unit linkup rally point.
- d. The stationary unit's guides direct the moving unit into its assigned section of the defensive perimeter.
- e. The moving unit commander coordinates with the stationary unit commander and assigns tasks and sectors to his platoons and sections based on the coordination.

.8 ____ The linking units continue the mission under the guidance of the commander designated by high headquarters.

KEY INDICATORS:

CRITICAL STANDARDS

The units link up at the time and place specified in the order and receives no casualties from friendly fire. The main body is not surprised by the enemy.

ENCLOSURE (1)

TASK: 10B.3.20 BREAKOUT FROM ENCIRCLEMENT

CONDITION(S): The company is cut off from friendly units and encircled. Other friendly elements with the company (platoon and smaller), both attached and supporting, are encircled. The enemy is probing the company defenses and has the capability to attack by air, ground, and indirect fires. Company provides its own security.

STANDARDS: EVAL: Y; N; NE

- .1 ____ The company commander organizes the encircled force.
 - a. Assumes control of all friendly forces in the encirclement and re-establishes a chain of command.
 - b. Deploys all elements in a defense.
 - c. Establishes a reserve.
 - d. Organizes all available direct and indirect fire support and develops a fire plan.
 - e. Obtains status of units (personnel, weapons, equipment, ammunition, and other supplies) and reorganizes logistics.
- .2 ____ The company commander establishes communications with higher headquarters.
 - a. Reports status of units and tactical situation.
 - b. Requests authorization to conduct a breakout.
- .3 ____ The commander plans the breakout, once being given authority.
 - a. Directs reconnaissance of the enemy to determine weak points and gaps in his encircling force.
 - b. Decides to execute an attack.
 - c. Prepares to destroy equipment that cannot be moved.
 - d. Makes provisions for personnel who cannot accompany the breakout.
 - e. Uses deception to cover the breakout.
 - f. Rapidly executes attack before the enemy can organize his defenses.
- .4 ____ The company executes an attack.
 - a. The attack is aimed at a gap or weakness in the enemy's defenses.
 - b. The company fixes the enemy in other areas and maintains all-around security.
 - c. The company continues to defend in other areas of the perimeter.
 - d. Deception activities are employed to surprise the enemy as to the time and location of the breakout attack.
 - e. The attack exploits limited visibility if possible.
 - f. The company concentrates maneuver units and fire support at the point of penetration to conduct the breakout.
 - g. The attack is coordinated with supporting attacks by friendly units outside the encirclement, when possible.
 - h. On order, the defending elements disengage and follow the breakout attack.
 - i. The defending elements blow charges and destroy equipment left behind.

ENCLOSURE (1)

- j. Completes evacuation of all wounded personnel.
 - k. The company reports breakout status to higher headquarters.
- .5 ____ The company conducts subsequent actions upon breakout.
- a. Continues the mission.
 - b. Conducts new mission.
 - c. Returns to friendly units.

KEY INDICATORS:

CRITICAL STANDARDS

The company moves at least 75 percent of its strength, leaders, and primary weapon systems out from the encircling force. The breakout starts NLT the time specified and receives no casualties due to friendly fires.

TASK: 10B.3.21 INFILTRATE/EXFILTRATE

CONDITION(S): The company is task organized with a platoon of infantry and must move into or through an enemy area (infiltration) or return to friendly lines undetected (exfiltration). Enemy strength and disposition is unknown. Mechanized equipment is either moving on a separate axis, supporting by fire, or remains behind.

STANDARDS: EVAL: Y; N; NE

- .1 ____ The company commander plans the infiltration.
- a. Selected route(s) avoid natural lines of drift.
 - b. Establishes checkpoints.
 - c. Designates rally points that are easily identifiable.
 - d. Routes avoid areas occupied or covered by enemy elements.
 - e. Establishes sequence of movement (platoons, individual vehicles, squads).
 - f. Plans fires along infiltration routes.
 - g. Plans fires on known or suspected enemy positions.
- .2 ____ The company commander selects infiltration method and routes.
- a. The company conducts reconnaissance patrols to find gaps, weaknesses, routes, and positions in the enemy area.
 - b. Coordinates for passage of lines with forward unit, if necessary. Coordinates with flank units.
 - c. Task organizes to facilitate control of the infiltration with the largest elements that can move undetected. Maintains unit and weapon systems integrity.
 - d. Platoon commanders assign lanes to subordinate elements and squad release points.
 - e. Subordinate leaders decide on specific infiltration routes, release points, and methods.
 - f. Rehearse infiltration actions (use terrain models and walk-throughs).

ENCLOSURE (1)

- g. Tailors Marine's load to the minimum required for the operation.
- h. Makes contingency plans for contact with all or part of the infiltrating unit before, during, and after infiltration.
- i. Designates primary and alternate linkup points for elements.

.3 ____ The commander designates methods of communication.

- a. Considers enemy electronic warfare capabilities in designating a method.
- b. Arranges predetermined signals minimizing radio traffic.
- c. Uses visual signals or messengers to relay information.

.4 ____ The company infiltrates or exfiltrates.

- a. Maintains communications during movement.
- b. Breaks down into infiltrating elements at designated release points.
- c. Takes advantage of gaps and weaknesses in enemy positions, limited visibility, bad weather, and broken terrain affording cover and concealment.
- d. Avoids enemy contact. If contact is made, avoids becoming decisively engaged, breaks contact, and continues movement to the company rally point.
- e. Ignores ineffective enemy fire.
- f. Maintains dispersion and strict noise, light, and camouflage discipline.
- g. Enforces radio silence until the entire unit reaches either the objective or ORP.
- h. Uses the method of infiltration determined during planning.
- i. Elements use artillery and related battlefield noise to mask movement.
- j. Elements avoid enemy contact by halting and hiding.
- k. Elements engage the enemy primarily with indirect fire.
- l. Platoons infiltrate or exfiltrate.

.5 ____ The company links up.

KEY INDICATORS:

CRITICAL STANDARDS

The company moves through the enemy area avoiding decisive engagement, and reaches the rally point without the enemy determining the size of the friendly force. The company sustains no more than 10 percent casualties and links up a minimum of 75 percent of the personnel and equipment at the specified time and location.

ENCLOSURE (1)

TASK: 10B.3.22 DELAY

CONDITION(S): The battalion orders the company to delay the enemy for a specified time period. The enemy can attack by air, indirect fire, and ground (mounted or dismounted).

STANDARDS: EVAL: Y; N; NE

- .1 ____ The company commander plans a delay in sector or by subsequent battle positions.
 - a. Obtains graphics or overlays for the operation.
 - b. Identifies initial and subsequent delay positions.
 - c. Includes company-level phase lines and graphics.
 - d. Identifies general routes between delay positions.
 - e. Locates and develops a series of platoon delay positions.
 - f. Conducts a reconnaissance and marks general routes between delay positions.
 - g. The delay plan may include offensive operations.
 - h. Develops an indirect fire support plan.
 - i. Plans obstacles to slow the enemy advance.
- .2 ____ Units plan the logistics for the delay.
 - a. Plans evacuation routes.
 - b. Plans prestocks of fuel and ammunition in designated positions.
 - c. Establishes recovery priorities and criteria for abandonment of vehicles.
- .3 ____ The company prepares to conduct the delay.
 - a. Prepares/marks routes and subsequent positions.
 - b. Conducts reconnaissance and rehearsals.
 - c. Constructs a series of fighting positions to fall back to.
 - d. Prestocks supplies, ammunition, and fuel in subsequent fighting positions.
 - e. Establishes a series of obstacles at critical choke points and engagement areas.
 - f. Evacuates unneeded personnel, supplies, and equipment.
 - g. Destroys unneeded supplies and equipment.
- .4 ____ The company conducts the delay.
 - a. The platoons occupy initial delay positions as per company operation order.
 - b. The company complies with all control measures and time constraints specified in the battalion order.
 - c. Tank platoons engage the enemy.
 - d. Implements the fire support plan.
 - e. Engaged platoons disengage from the enemy.
 - f. Disengaged platoons move to subsequent delay positions.
 - g. Company provides support by fire for disengaging platoons.

ENCLOSURE (1)

- h. The delaying action continues until the unit reaches its final BP or the mission is altered by battalion headquarters.
- i. The company is not decisively engaged or bypassed.

.5 _____ The company conducts follow-on operations.

- a. The company moves to new positions and continues the defense.
- b. The company returns to friendly units, conducts a passage of lines and moves into an assembly area.

KEY INDICATORS:

CRITICAL STANDARDS

The company delays the enemy for a specified time in the designated area for the specified time period, and sustains no more than 30 percent casualties. The company maintains contact with the enemy and does not become decisively engaged.

TASK: 10B.3.23 WITHDRAW NOT UNDER ENEMY PRESSURE

CONDITION(S): The battalion orders the company to conduct a withdrawal. The enemy is not attacking the company. The enemy has the ability to attack by air, indirect fires, and mounted and dismounted forces.

STANDARDS: EVAL: Y; N; NE

.1 _____ The company commander develops a plan for the withdrawal.

- a. The company commander sets a time for the start of the withdrawal (makes maximum use of reduced visibility).
- b. Identifies the location of company assembly area and develops the actions of platoons in the assembly area.
- c. The company commander develops the size, composition, tasks, and leader of the company quartering party.
- d. Obtains future company and platoon missions from higher headquarters.
- e. Develops deception activities.
- f. Distributes specific tasks to subordinate units.
- g. Plans fires (organic and supporting for indirect fires along the withdrawal route to aid in disengagement).
- h. Develops contingency plans if the enemy should attack during the withdrawal.
- i. Detachments left in contact (DLIC) are organized as directed by battalion.
- j. Security forces to cover movement are organized.

.2 _____ The quartering party establishes the assembly area.

- a. The quartering party departs for the designated assembly area.
- b. All unneeded supplies are transported with the quartering party.
- c. The quartering party establishes security, chooses tentative platoon positions, and conducts the necessary chemical/radiological reconnaissance.

ENCLOSURE (1)

- d. The quartering party reports when the assembly area is prepared.
- .3 ____ The company initiates the withdrawal.
- a. Company establishes DLIC as directed.
 - b. Company initiates indirect fire, smoke, decoys, and diversions to assist the withdrawal and initially break contact with the enemy.
 - c. All supplies and equipment that are not needed are moved to the rear (possibly with the quartering party).
 - d. At the time specified in the order, the withdrawal starts.
 - e. Platoons account for all vehicles and squads, and then conduct the withdrawal to the company assembly area.
 - f. All elements use covered and concealed routes for movement and maintain operational security.
 - g. Units use bounding overwatch to provide movement security.
 - h. All material and equipment that must be left behind are destroyed or rendered inoperable.
- .4 ____ The company moves to their new positions as ordered.
- a. The company occupies the new assembly area located in the battalion rear area upon completion of the withdrawal.
 - b. The company reports the occupation of the assembly area to battalion.

KEY INDICATORS:

CRITICAL STANDARDS

The enemy does not detect the withdrawal until at least 60 percent of the company has withdrawn. The company moves all personnel and equipment to the designated position NLT the specified time. The company sustains no more than 5 percent casualties. The company is not surprised by the enemy. All EPWs and casualties are evacuated. All supplies and equipment left behind are destroyed.

TASK: 10B.3.24 WITHDRAW UNDER ENEMY PRESSURE

CONDITION(S): The enemy is engaging the company by direct fire or ground attack. The battalion orders the company to conduct a withdrawal, or the enemy forces the company from its position. Another element may be covering withdrawal. Enemy is battalion (-) size.

STANDARDS: EVAL: Y; N; NE

- .1 ____ During offensive/defensive planning, the company commander plans/prepares withdrawal.
- a. Plans and prepares routes to reduce congestion.
 - b. Plans overwatching fires to cover withdrawal.
 - c. Plans smoke/indirect fires to cover disengagement.
 - d. All leaders conduct reconnaissance.
 - e. Plans/coordinates with overwatching elements.

ENCLOSURE (1)

- f. Rehearses passage of line withdrawal if possible.
- .2 ____ The company commander gives fragmentary order for withdrawal.
- a. The company commander receives the order to withdraw.
 - b. The company commander makes a rapid estimate of the situation.
 - c. Establishes a sequence of withdrawal.
 - d. Orders a subunit or element to disengage (normally the least heavily engaged disengages first). Casualties and nonessential elements are evacuated with this element.
 - e. Coordinates with battalion covering force.
 - f. Coordinates for a rearward passage of lines when necessary.
 - g. Plans occupation of the new position.
 - h. Designates a rear guard force to be used when the withdrawing unit is under extreme, enemy pressure.
- .3 ____ The company executes the withdrawal.
- a. Commander maneuvers platoons and controls fires to slow or stop the enemy.
 - b. Routes are reconnoitered to ensure rapid movement.
 - c. All elements disengage on order concealing their movements.
 - d. The disengaged element is directed to take up an overwatch position to aid the other elements to disengage. When the elements are prepared to overwatch, they notify the commander.
 - e. Accounts for all personnel.
 - f. The next element(s) is ordered to disengage. The overwatch element assists by fire, if needed.
 - g. Indirect fires and obstacles are employed to slow the enemy and mask the movement of the elements.
 - h. The process is continued with elements changing roles to perform fire and movement of bounding overwatch to the rear until the entire unit has withdrawn.
 - i. The company conducts a rearward passage of lines when necessary.
- .4 ____ The company reports its status when it has completed the withdrawal, and when it is ready to continue the defense or execute the next mission.
- a. The company provides information regarding casualties, vehicle losses, and overall unit capability.
 - b. Battalion CP acknowledges receipt of company status report.

KEY INDICATORS:

CRITICAL STANDARDS

The company moves all personnel and equipment to the designated position NLT the specified time. The company sustains no more than 30 percent casualties. All supplies and equipment that cannot be evacuated are destroyed. All EPWs and casualties are evacuated. Company breaks contact and is not bypassed.

ENCLOSURE (1)

TASK: 10B.3.25 PERFORM RELIEF IN PLACE

CONDITION(S): The company is ordered to relieve another unit in place or is relieved by another unit. The enemy can attack with up to a company-size element supported by indirect fire and air support.

STANDARDS: EVAL: Y; N; NE

- .1 ____ The company commander plans a relief in place.
 - a. Issues a fragmentary order.
 - b. Formulates an advance party.
 - c. Conducts a reconnaissance to the greatest extent possible.
 - d. Assumes the outgoing unit's pattern of activity.
 - e. Determines the exact point in the relief for transfer of responsibility.
 - f. Co-locates command posts.
 - g. Relieves combat elements first.
 - h. Transfers equipment and supplies.
 - i. Emplaces sensors and chemical alarms.
- .2 ____ Companies prepare for relief.
 - a. Reconnaissance is conducted.
 - b. Nonessential equipment moved early.
 - c. Routes and positions marked.
 - d. Guides positioned.
- .3 ____ The relieving commander and the relieved commander meet and exchange essential information.
 - a. Arranges a specific time and place for coordination.
 - b. Includes participation by the 10, platoon commanders, and attachment leaders.
 - c. Exchanges enemy information.
 - d. Reconnoiters the relieved unit area.
 - e. Exchanges CEOI information.
 - f. Discusses the use of guides and liaison personnel.
 - g. Checks security and control measures.
 - h. Reviews fire support plans.
 - i. Establishes the sequence and method of relief.
 - j. Establishes a specific point in time for the transfer of responsibility.
- .4 ____ The relieving company commander finalizes his plan.
 - a. Develops a plan based on planning and coordination with the relieved unit.
 - b. Develops and issues an operation order based on that plan.
- .5 ____ The units execute the relief sequentially or simultaneously.

ENCLOSURE (1)

- a. Both outgoing and incoming units operate on the outgoing unit's command net.
- b. Unit guides control movement.
- c. Handles emergencies on the incoming unit's net.
- d. When the relief is complete, the incoming unit operates on its own net.

.6 ____ The units conduct a sequential relief.

KEY INDICATORS:

CRITICAL STANDARDS

A relief in place is conducted without enemy detection or loss of personnel or equipment. The company performs relief NLT time specified in the order. No friendly casualties due to friendly fire. If the enemy attacks, the company sustains no more than 10 percent casualties.

TASK: 10B.3.26 PERFORM RESERVE OPERATIONS

CONDITION(S): The company is a higher headquarters reserve. In offensive operations, it is trailing forward companies with a priority of commitment in two or more company zones. In defensive operations, it is given an assembly area or route(s) and tasks of preparing to perform three or more of the following type emissions: counterattack, reinforce, counterattack by fire, or perform rear area security. Priorities are given for planning. The company has 4 hours to plan.

STANDARDS: EVAL: Y; N; NE

- .1 ____ Company coordinates with companies in whose sector or zone the on-order mission is to be conducted.
- a. Companies coordinate at the beginning of the planning cycle.
 - b. Company commander has the plans of the companies/units in whose sector/zone will be possible commitment.
 - c. Routes, axis, boundaries, objectives, passage lanes, covering fires, fire support, identification procedures, frequencies, call signs, CSS, obstacles, and other items listed in the appropriate T/E and T/O for the on-order task are coordinated.
 - d. Subordinate leaders and staff are informed of coordinated information early enough to disseminate, plan, and conduct reconnaissance.
 - e. Physical liaison is maintained with higher headquarters and companies with the highest priority for commitment. The company is aware of any change in plan/status within 30 minutes.
 - f. Company commander monitors the command nets of the companies with the highest priority for commitment.
- .2 ____ Company plans/prepares/rehearses for reserve missions.
- a. Company plans, coordinates, reconnoiters, rehearses, and prepares for the priority reserve missions as time allows.
 - b. A plan is prepared for each priority mission.
 - c. Leaders conduct reconnaissance and rehearsals, if possible.
 - d. Company war games all implied tasks and prepares to assume missions of all other companies within zone.

ENCLOSURE (1)

- .3 ____ Company moves as a reserve in an offensive operation.
 - a. Company maintains its distance behind the lead company to avoid interference and decisive engagement, but it maintains contact and ability to quickly react.
 - b. When forward company is moving slowly or stopped, the company goes into a defensive posture. It resumes movement within five minutes of direction to do so.
- .4 ____ Company rapidly reacts to fragmentary order to execute the mission.
 - a. Company initiates movement action within 15 minutes. (Lead platoon commander reports SP.)
 - b. Company is in position and prepared to block, counterattack, attack, react, or reinforce within 15 minutes (plus the road march time).
- .5 ____ Company coordinates movement with all organizations whose area it moves through to LD, LD/LC, or designated position.
- .6 ____ Company reinforces another company.
 - a. Designated unit reaches the reinforced company within the specified time and at the specified location.
 - b. The company establishes communications with the company being reinforced. It coordinates the linkup location and tactical situation.
 - c. Reinforcing unit is provided with the above information.

KEY INDICATORS:

CRITICAL STANDARDS

- a. Specified and implied planning, preparation, and coordination are completed for all assigned tasks by the time specified in the order.
 - b. The company initiates movement (lead platoon reports SP) within 5 minutes of fragmentary order. (Offensive reserve mission.)
 - c. The company is in position and prepared to conduct its reserve mission within 15 minutes (plus road march time) after receiving the fragmentary order (defensive reserve mission).
-

10B.4 FIRE SUPPORT

TASK: 10B.4.1 EMPLOY INDIRECT FIRE IN THE OFFENSE

CONDITION(S): The company has been given a battalion order to attack as part of a battalion operation. The enemy is dug in and defending in deliberate defensive positions. Both enemy and friendly forces have indirect fire, close air support (CAS), and close-in fire support (CIFS) available.

STANDARDS: EVAL: Y; N; NE

- .1 ____ The company commander makes a tentative fire support plan.
 - a. Develop a fire support plan in concert with the battalion commander's plans, guidance, and intent.
 - b. Integrate battalion fire support plan into company operations to include maneuvering of the FO and FAC to ensure they are in position to execute tasks specified by the battalion.

ENCLOSURE (1)

- c. Augment the fires of the battalion commander's guidance to ensure that fires are planned from LD/LC to the objective, on the objective, and beyond the objective.
 - d. Develop a plan for the use of priority targets (if allocated by higher headquarters) addressing targets in depth, timing, and control of those fires.
- .2 _____ The company commander conducts reconnaissance and plan fires for the offense.
- a. Locate enemy positions.
 - b. Identify dominant terrain.
 - c. Target enemy avenues of approach.
 - d. Establish targets of concern (those targets that the maneuver commander feels will deter the success of the maneuver if not fired on).
 - e. Identify possible enemy locations.
 - f. Approve company fire support and distribute to platoon leaders as part of the operations order.
- .3 _____ Company executes fire support.
- a. All available supporting fires are executed in a timely manner and accomplish the prescribed result IAW the fire plan.
 - b. Available fires hit critical/vulnerable areas of enemy formations or positions.
 - c. Friendly fires stop or slow enemy movement.
 - d. Friendly fires sufficiently suppress enemy fires.
 - e. At least 80 percent of fire missions and 70 percent of rounds fired suppress/neutralize or destroy the enemy.
 - f. The volume of fire accomplishes the task.
 - g. Friendly supporting fires do not result in fratricide.
 - h. Requests to check fire are submitted to preclude possible fratricide.
 - i. Friendly forces are not silhouetted by friendly smoke.
 - j. Fire support priorities are adjusted as the battle progresses.
 - k. The company commander coordinates the use of all fire support assets when appropriate, to support his maneuver.
 - l. The company reports battle damage cause by the indirect fire to battalion CP at the close of each fire mission.

KEY INDICATORS:

CRITICAL STANDARDS

The company commander, platoon commanders, and company FO plan and execute fires that support the commander's scheme of maneuver, cover likely enemy counterattack routes, and key terrain. Fires suppress/neutralize enemy weapons/fires to allow accomplishment of the company mission. Eighty percent of fire missions and seventy percent of rounds fired suppress/neutralize/destroy the enemy. Friendly fires do not cause friendly casualties.

ENCLOSURE (1)

TASK: 10B.4.2 EMPLOY INDIRECT FIRE IN THE DEFENSE

CONDITION(S): The company is occupying defensive battle positions in a task force defense. The enemy is expected to attack the company position with a motorized rifle battalion. Both friendly and enemy forces have indirect fires available.

STANDARDS: EVAL: Y; N; NE

.1 _____ The company commander makes a tentative fire support plan.

- a. Develop a fire support plan in concert with the battalion's operation order, and intent.
- b. Integrate battalion fire support plan into company operations to include maneuvering of the fire support representatives to ensure he is in position to execute tasks specified by the battalion.
- c. Augment the fires of the battalion fire support plan IAW the battalion commander's guidance, to ensure that fires are in front of the defensive positions, on the positions, and behind the positions.
- d. Develop a plan for the use of priority targets (if allocated by higher) addressing targets in depth, timing, and control of those fires.
- e. Select the position of the final protective fires (FPF) (if available).
- f. Target possible enemy dead space in the engagement area.
- g. Establish targets to support planned obstacles.

.2 _____ The company commander conducts a reconnaissance and finalizes the defensive fire support plan.

- a. Locate enemy positions.
- b. Identify dominant terrain.
- c. Target enemy avenues of approach.
- d. Establish targets of concern (those targets that the maneuver commander feels will deter the success of the defense if not fired on).
- e. Identify possible enemy locations.
- f. Approve company fire support execution matrix and distribute to the platoon leaders as part of the operations order.

.3 _____ The company executes fire support in the defense.

- a. Synchronize direct and indirect fires using predetermined targets and signals.
- b. Fire planned targets IAW the fire support plan.
- c. Execute supporting fires in a timely manner and accomplish the desired result.
- d. A least 80 percent of the fire missions and 70 percent of the rounds fired suppress, neutralize, or destroy the enemy.
- e. Indirect fire stops or slows the enemy advance.
- f. Friendly supporting fires do not result in fratricide.
- g. Fire support priorities are adjusted as the battle progresses.
- h. The company commander requests CAS, CIFS, and naval gunfire when appropriate.
- i. The company reports battle damage cause by the indirect fire to battalion CP at the close of each mission.

KEY INDICATORS:

CRITICAL STANDARDS

The company commander plans and executes fires in support of the company defense plan. Friendly fires stop or slow the enemy. Fires neutralize/suppress or destroy enemy weapons and fires. Eighty percent of the fire missions and seventy percent of the rounds fired suppress/neutralize or destroy the enemy, Friendly fires do not cause friendly casualties.

10B.5 MOBILITY AND COUNTERMOBILITY

TASK: 10B.5.1 BREACH AN OBSTACLE

CONDITION(S): The company is conducting a movement to contact and encounters a double-strand wire obstacle and a hasty antitank minefield. The minefield 100 meters deep with mines 4m to 6m apart in the strips. No antipersonnel mines have been employed. If mines are buried, evidence is clearly visible showing where the strips are located. Enemy direct-fire antitank and antipersonnel weapons are 1,500 meters away. Enemy indirect fire is expected no earlier than two to three minutes from the start of the breach. The obstacle cannot be bypassed. The company has no engineer assets available and is not a part of a detailed task force breaching operation. Both enemy and friendly forces have indirect fire available.

STANDARDS: EVAL: Y; N; NE

- .1 ____ The company reacts to an obstacle encountered during tactical movement.
- a. Goes to covered position, deploys and reports.
 - b. Conducts a hasty reconnaissance.
 - c. Plans smoke on suspected enemy positions or between the obstacle and the suspected enemy position.
 - d. Determines if obstacle is covered by direct or indirect fire.
 - e. Checks approach routes for mines, boobytraps, and signs of ambush.
 - f. Collects information to determine if obstacles can be bypassed, breached or forced through by friendly units.
- .2 ____ Company commander plans the breaching operation to include the following:
- a. Determines the method of breaching.
 - b. Determines equipment needed to breach and/or reduce the obstacle.
 - c. Designates breach, assault, and support forces.
 - d. Develops a coordinated plan that provides for suppression, obscuration, security, and obstacle reduction.
 - e. Develops a plan to overcome enemy use of chemicals employed with obstacle.
- .3 ____ Support force moves to an overwatch position.
- a. Selects a position that covers likely enemy positions.
 - b. Utilize available cover and concealment during movement.
- .4 ____ Support force provides overwatch for breach force.
- a. Requests smoke on the far side of the obstacle.

- b. Suppresses suspected and known enemy locations with direct fires.
 - c. Employs smoke to obscure area around obstacle.
- .5 ____ The company prepares obstacle breaching team.
- a. Two teams are prepared consisting of a demolition specialist and a lane marker.
 - b. The teams prepare eight charges for mine detonation.
 - c. The teams prepare or obtain flares and flags for lane marking.
 - d. Each team member wears a protective vest and carries smoke grenades for self-screening during the breaching operation.
 - e. Smoke pots are prepared for immediate placement upon breaching of the obstacle.
- .6 ____ Breach force establishes breach site security.
- a. Establishes and operates OPs/LPs under the cover of smoke.
 - b. Employs OPSEC measures.
 - c. Secures near side of obstacle.
 - d. Far side security is established if possible.
- .7 ____ Breach force clears the wire obstacle.
- a. Infantry moves under cover of smoke and support force to the wire obstacle.
 - b. Obstacle teams prepare satchel charges.
 - c. Dismount obstacle teams.
 - d. Obstacle teams throw grappeling hooks over wire obstacle to clear wire obstacle and booby traps or antihandling devices.
 - e. Dismounted obstacle teams remount vehicles for protection from potential blast from booby traps.
 - f. Vehicles pull wire, detonating the booby traps or antihandling devices and possibly breaking the wire.
 - g. Obstacle teams dismount and cut wire if necessary.
- .8 ____ Breach force clears a path through the minefield.
- a. Dismounted force clears a path through the minefield.
 - b. Dismounted obstacle teams move through the minefield and place a one-half pound to two and one-half pound TNT or C4 primed nonelectrically with 4 feet (2 minutes) of time fuze and a fuze lighter per mine.
 - c. Once the charges are set, the obstacle team ignites the fuze lighters in succession from near to far side.
 - d. Obstacle team seeks cover and counts the mine detonations.
 - a. Detonation failures are set with a second charge after waiting 4 minutes (twice the fuze time).
- .9 ____ Obstacle team marks the lane.
- a. The company blade tanks (if so equipped) skim and proof the lane and place smoke pots to maximize obscuration.
 - b. Flags are staked to the ground on the center line of the lane at 10-meter intervals.

- c. Flares are-placed on the center lane every 20 meters in the interval between marking flags.
- .10 ____ Assault force moves through the obstacle.
 - a. Tanks move through first taking up supporting positions on the far side of the obstacle.
 - b. Expands the lodgment, destroying enemy forces supporting the obstacle.
- .11 ____ Breach support forces and follow-on forces moves through lanes and join assault force.
 - a. Support force moves through first and links up with the assault force.
 - b. Breach force follows.
- .12 ____ Company commander reports to battalion headquarters.
 - a. Completion of breach.
 - b. Trafficability.
 - c. Location of breached lanes.
 - d. Enemy situation.

KEY INDICATORS:

CRITICAL STANDARDS

The company must breach the obstacle and clear a lane 20 feet wide within 30 minutes. Lanes must be clearly marked with visual and thermal markers. The company must be through the breach 45 minutes from the beginning of the breaching operation. The company loses less than 50 percent of its combat vehicles and infantry.

TASK: 10B.5.2 EMLACE AN OBSTACLE

CONDITION(S): The company is defending a battle position as part of a battalion defense. It is ordered to emplace a hasty protective minefield 300m by 100m of triple-strand concertina, and a 300m tank ditch. An engineer platoon with bucket-loader and 5-ton dump truck is attached for this task. The enemy is expected to attack within 6 hours. Both enemy and friendly indirect fire is available.

STANDARDS: EVAL: Y; N; NE

- .1 ____ The company commander, based on the battalion commander's orders and METT-TSL, identifies a site for an obstacle that can be covered by observation and/or direct fires from the company's positions.
 - a. The company commander finds out immediately from the battalion commander where he wants the obstacle system.
 - b. Requests guidance from the engineers as to the appropriate emplacement of obstacles.
 - c. Ensures that obstacles are covered by direct fire weapon systems.
- .2 ____ Company constructs obstacles.
 - a. Organizes engineers and work crews.
 - b. Starts working on obstacle system without delay.

ENCLOSURE (1)

- c. Company commander coordinates with engineers to efficiently utilize the bucket-loader, dump truck, and personnel.
- d. The company commander directs an individual to supervise emplacement of the obstacle.
- e. Stake out limits of minefield, ditch, and wire obstacle.
- f. The crews selected assist in emplacing the wire obstacle and minefield.
- g. Place mines so that antitank mines block likely armor avenues of approach and antipersonnel mines block dismounted avenues of approach.
- h. Provide security for the obstacle under construction.
- i. Wire is emplaced to the rear of the ditch or mines.
- j. Vehicle fighting positions are enhanced as time permits.
- k. Provides the company commander with a record of minefields.
- l. Engineers with bucket-loader and 5-ton dump truck concentrate on the antitank ditch.
- m. Antitank ditch is a minimum of 300m long, 1.5m deep, and 3.3m wide.

KEY INDICATORS:

CRITICAL STANDARDS

The company, with engineer assistance, emplaces the wire obstacle within 1 hour, constructs the ditch within 6 hours, and completes the minefield (buried mines) within 6 hours. Placement of the obstacles complement each other. They should be tied into the terrain where the company can provide massed direct and indirect fire on the enemy delayed by the obstacle. The obstacle blocks, delays, or canalizes the enemy force.

10B.6 AIR DEFENSE

TASK: 10B.6.1 DEFEND AGAINST AIR ATTACK (ACTIVE)

CONDITION(S): The company receives an early warning of aircraft operating in the area. Unit personnel detect unknown or hostile aircraft. The unit deployment is tactical.

STANDARDS: EVAL: Y; N; NE

- .1 _____ Stationary unit takes active air defense measures against nonattacking hostile aircraft.
- a. Gives air attack alarm as specified in the SOP.
 - b. Occupies defensive positions.
 - c. Searches assigned sectors for aircraft. Unit air guards detect the aircraft within their sectors and immediately alert unit.
 - d. Identifies and reports presence of aircraft in the area.
 - e. Conceals unit and holds fire to avoid revealing its position. A nonattacking aircraft is engaged only as directed.
 - f. The commander orders the unit to engage.
 - g. Unit engages the aircraft with all available small arms (rifles and machine guns).

- h. Reloads weapons following an engagement.
 - i. Commander reports priority of intelligence requirements (PIR) to higher headquarters.
 - j. Evaluates situation and moves unit position as directed by higher headquarters.
- .2 _____ Moving unit takes active air defense measures against nonattacking hostile aircraft.
- a. Company halts in place to avoid detection when in an open area.
 - b. Gives air attack alarm as specified in SOP.
 - c. Disperses vehicles laterally and in depth and vehicle operators continue to move unit.
 - d. Move vehicles to covered and concealed positions, increase dispersion, all personnel prepare to engage aircraft as directed.
 - e. Engage nonattacking aircraft only as directed.
 - f. Visually identify threat aircraft.
 - g. Report any aircraft action to higher headquarters.
 - h. Commander orders the unit to engage.
 - i. Unit engages the aircraft with all available small arms (rifles and machine guns).
 - j. Reloads weapons following engagement of aircraft.
- .3 _____ Stationary unit takes active air defense against attacking aircraft.
- a. Gives air attack alarm as specified in SOP.
 - b. Engages attacking aircraft immediately with all available personnel (IAW engagement procedures).
 - c. Reloads weapons following engagement of aircraft.
 - d. Personnel assigned observation posts (OPs) continue to scan their assigned sectors for additional aircraft.
 - e. Visually identify attacking aircraft.
 - f. Report any aircraft action to higher headquarters.
 - g. Commander evaluates situation and moves unit position as directed by higher headquarters.
- .4 _____ Moving unit takes active air defense during convoy operations.
- a. Alerts vehicle commanders of impending attack as specified in SOP.
 - b. Dismounts Stinger gunner (if available).
 - c. Disperses vehicles alternately to shoulders of the road (off road if possible). Turns to covered and concealed positions if terrain permits.
 - d. Maintains vehicle intervals, or increases interval/dispersion and uses evasive driving techniques.
 - e. Dismounts infantry personnel and takes up firing positions.
 - f. Prepares personnel to fire on orders of senior individual present or automatically returns fire (IAW engagement procedures) if aircraft is attacking.
 - g. Reloads weapons following attack.
 - h. Identifies the aircraft.

ENCLOSURE (1)

- i. Reports the attack and submits PIR to higher headquarters.

KEY INDICATORS:

CRITICAL STANDARDS

The company destroys or wards off all attacking aircraft. All personnel commence firing on order. Unit sustains no more than 10 percent casualties due to air attack. The company fires at no friendly nonattacking aircraft and air warning is sent to battalion task force within 1 minute.

TASK: 10B.6.2 DEFEND AGAINST AIR ATTACK (PASSIVE)

CONDITION(S): The unit deployment is tactical. Hostile aircraft are operating in the general area. The unit does not want to initiate enemy contact.

STANDARDS: EVAL: Y; N; NE

- .1 ____ Company uses passive air defense measures in a tactical environment.
 - a. Uses all available resources (camouflage, cover, concealment, dispersion, and so forth) to hide the unit and limit its vulnerability.
 - b. Establishes and rehearses alarms.
 - c. Establishes immediate action procedures upon sighting approaching unidentified aircraft.
 - d. Announces readiness posture.
 - e. Announces weapon control status.
 - f. Assigns Marines air guard duties with specific search sectors covering 360 degrees.
 - g. Visually identifies threat aircraft.
 - h. Reports all aircraft actions to higher headquarters.
- .2 ____ Unit uses passive air defense measures in a defensive position.
 - a. Covers or shades shiny items, particularly windshields and optics.
 - b. Constructs field fortifications with organic equipment to protect personnel and vulnerable mission-essential equipment.
 - c. Mans OPs (daytime/nighttime) to provide warning of approaching aircraft.
 - d. Approaches battle positions (BPs) from the rear to avoid leaving tracks and destroying cover.
 - e. Vehicles move into hide, turret-down, or hull-down positions, if possible.
 - f. Limit vehicular movement.
- .3 ____ Unit uses passive air defense measures in a convoy.
 - a. All unit personnel are briefed by the convoy commander.
 - b. Camouflage vehicles and equipment before moving out.
 - c. Select column interval based on instructions, mission, terrain, and so forth.

ENCLOSURE (1)

- d. Alternate individual and crew-served weapons throughout the convoy to cover front, rear, and flanks (avenues of approach).
- .4 _____ Unit uses passive air defense measures when it is emplacing and/or displacing.
- a. Maintains vehicle interval specified in the unit order.
 - b. Staggers vehicles to avoid linear patterns.
 - c. Establishes vehicle order of precedence.
 - d. Vehicles disperse at an angle oblique to the original direction of movement.
 - e. Avoid leaving tracks through mud, cornfields, and moving through open areas.

KEY INDICATORS:

CRITICAL STANDARDS

The company is not detected by enemy aircraft. Enemy aircraft do not surprise the company. Company sustains no more than 5 percent losses due to attacking aircraft.

10B.7 COMBAT SERVICE SUPPORT

TASK: 10B.7.1 PERFORM LOGISTICAL PLANNING

CONDITION(S): The company is conducting a tactical operation separately or as part of larger force. They must provide their own security. Enemy and friendly units have the ability to engage with indirect fire.

STANDARDS: EVAL: Y; N; NE

- .1 _____ The company commander plans CSS activities.
- a. Estimates fuel usage.
 - b. Estimates ammunition usage.
 - c. Identifies a location for resupply as near as possible and allow for adjustments as the tactical situation changes.
 - d. Identifies locations of company trains based on the tactical situation and METT-TSL.
 - e. Establishes resupply priority based on METT-TSL and SOP.
 - f. Identifies prestock points and supplies to be pre-positioned.
 - g. Obtains requirements for cross leveling from battalion headquarters.
 - h. Company commander provides input and recommendations based on his anticipated requirements for his company to S4.
 - i. Develops an estimate resupply rate for mission specific supplies and equipment.
- .2 _____ The company commander reports to the battalion per SOP on time as needed.
- a. Reports fuel usage per SOP.
 - b. Reports ammunition usage per SOP.
 - c. Reports personnel losses per SOP.

ENCLOSURE (1)

- d. Reports special requirements such as resupply of NBC gear or vehicle system specific items.
- e. Reports operational specific items (such as obstacle-building equipment and materials system or explosives for conducting a breach.

KEY INDICATORS:

CRITICAL STANDARDS

The company leaders plan logistical support. Mission accomplishment is not hindered by a lack of logistical planning. Reports rendered IAW unit SOP. Company consolidates logistical requirements.

TASK: 10B.7.2 PERFORM TACTICAL RESUPPLY

CONDITION(S): The unit is occupying stationary positions and enemy contact is possible. The unit commander has selected the tailgate method of resupply and has specified a time by which resupply should be completed.

STANDARDS: EVAL: Y; N; NE

- .1 ____ XO/tank leader coordinates with battalion S4.
 - a. Verifies LRP.
 - b. Requests special items not included in routine LOGPAC.
- .2 ____ Unit commander determines priority of classes I, III, V, and maintenance.
 - a. Specifies order in which platoons will be resupplied.
 - b. Operational vehicles will be supplied first.
 - c. Nonoperational vehicles will receive maintenance support first.
- .3 ____ Tank leader guides LOGPAC to company BP's.
 - a. Using covered and concealed routes, moves to LRP.
 - b. Verifies that proper supplies are present.
 - c. Alerts commander that the LOGPAC is en route.
 - d. Receives an update in the company tactical situation.
 - e. Utilizes covered and concealed routes into and out of each platoon BP.
- .4 ____ Tank leader coordinates actions at LRP.
 - a. Requests awards and personnel actions.
 - b. Cross levels supplies.
 - c. Provides resupply requirements.
 - d. Updates battle roster.
 - e. Picks up/delivers mail.
- .5 ____ Platoon conducts resupply activities.

ENCLOSURE (1)

- a. Tank leader guides LOGPAC vehicles to each platoon position for resupply.
 - b. Platoon commanders or platoon sergeants guide LOGPAC vehicles to each individual vehicle position within their platoon.
 - c. LOGPAC vehicles disperse throughout the battle position to avoid clustering around a single vehicle fighting position.
 - d. LOGPAC vehicles are guided to those vehicles with the most need IAW priorities established by the commander.
 - e. Noise and light discipline are strictly enforced so as to avoid detection of vehicle positions by enemy forces.
 - f. Platoon sergeant relays future needs to the tank leader.
 - g. Crewman rotate through class I point and receive personal items and mail.
 - h. LOGPAC vehicles rotate to each individual battle position until all platoon vehicles have been serviced.
 - i. Once rearming and refueling is complete, LOGPAC vehicles move to a platoon holding area.
 - j. Upon completion of the platoon's resupply operations, the platoon sergeant reports to the platoon commander and tank leader.
 - k. The tank leader guides the LOGPAC to the next platoon BP.
 - l. Tank leader guides LOGPACs/supply vehicle back to LRP, combat trains.
- .6 ____ Company commander reports completion of the resupply to battalion CP.

KEY INDICATORS:

CRITICAL STANDARDS

Resupply is effected IAW unit SOP. Resupply does not expose friendly positions to the enemy. All elements are resupplied IAW company commander's guidance. Company mission is not hindered by lack of supplies. Resupply is completed by the time specified by the company commander.

TASK: 10B.7.3 PERFORM SERVICE-STATION RESUPPLY

CONDITION(S): The unit is moving or occupying a stationary position and enemy contact is possible. The unit commander has selected the service-station method of resupply and specified time by which resupply must be completed.

STANDARDS: EVAL: Y; N; NE

- .1 ____ XO/tank leader coordinates with battalion S4.
- a. Verifies time that LOGPAC will be at LRP.
 - b. Verifies LRP location.
 - c. Requests special items not included in routine LOGPAC resupply.
- .2 ____ Tank leader selects resupply site for unit.
- a. Is easily accessible to tracked and wheeled vehicles.
 - b. Provides cover and concealment.

- c. Located within one terrain feature of unit position.
- .3 ____ Company commander determines priority for classes I, III, V, and maintenance.
 - a. Specifies order in which platoons and attachments will resupply.
 - b. Operational vehicles receive first priority for resupply.
 - c. Nonoperational vehicles receive first priority for maintenance.
- .4 ____ Tank leader moves to LRP to receive LOGPAC.
 - a. Uses covered and concealed routes.
 - b. Verifies that normal and requested supplies are present.
- .5 ____ Tank leader guides LOGPAC to resupply site.
 - a. Uses covered and concealed routes.
 - b. Alerts commander that LOGPAC is en route.
- .6 ____ Unit prepares to move to resupply site.
 - a. Tank leader disseminates location and time via a fragmentary order or operation order.
 - b. Prepares vehicle positions for easy identification and reentry upon completion of resupply activities.
 - c. Tank leader briefs platoon sergeants on organization of resupply site, specifying locations of corpsmen, maintenance, supply, KIA collection points, and EPW holding area.
- .7 ____ Designated platoon moves to resupply site.
 - a. Uses covered and concealed routes.
 - b. Conducts hand off of sector of responsibility.
- .8 ____ Designated platoons conduct out-of-position resupply.
 - a. Platoon commander and wingman move to refuel point.
 - b. Platoon sergeant and wingman move to rearm point.
 - c. Platoon sergeant reports to tank leader with actual and anticipated logistics requests.
 - d. Platoon commander and wingman complete refueling and move to rearm point.
 - e. Platoon sergeant and wingman complete rearming and move to refuel point.
 - f. Individual crewman rotates through feeding area and receive personal supply items.
 - g. Once rearming and refueling is complete, entire platoon moves to holding area.
 - h. Platoon sergeant reports status to platoon commander and tank leader.
 - i. Platoons maintain local security throughout resupply activities.
- .9 ____ Resupplied platoon moves back to defensive position and relieves second platoon for resupply.
 - a. Unit commander ensures defense is not degraded during resupply operation.
 - b. Sectors of responsibility are adjusted to compensate for vehicles at resupply site.
- .10 ____ Company commander reports completion of the resupply to the battalion CP.

KEY INDICATORS:

CRITICAL STANDARDS

Resupply is effected IAW unit SOP. Resupply does not expose friendly positions to the enemy. All elements are resupplied IAW company commander's guidance. Company mission is not hindered by the lack of supplies. Resupply is completed by the time specified by the company commander.

TASK: 10B.7.4 CONSOLIDATE ON THE OBJECTIVE

CONDITION(S): The company has assaulted and seized an objective. The leading elements of the assaulting forces are at the objective. Enemy forces have withdrawn to hasty defensive positions. Remaining enemy forces on the objective are scattered and disorganized. The enemy has the capability to employ light antitank weapons and call indirect fires.

STANDARDS: EVAL: Y; N; NE

- .1 ____ The company command element moves into position to provide command and control.
 - a. Commander and company CP position with the lead element.
 - b. Position tanks, AAVs, LAVs, other equipment, and personnel to cover avenues of approach, thus providing security on the objective.
- .2 ____ Company commander develops courses of action.
 - a. Evaluates the overall situation.
 - b. Evaluates dangers on the objective.
 - c. Determines the threat potential to his company.
 - d. Determines when the unit must finish the consolidation process in order to prepare for a possible enemy counterattack.
- .3 ____ The company eliminates 100 percent of all enemy on the objective.
 - a. Leading tanks take up defilade or concealed positions.
 - b. Employs main gun and machine gun fires.
 - c. Infantry sweeps the objective.
 - d. The company destroys or captures 100 percent of the enemy soldiers on the objective.
 - e. The company captures or renders 100 percent of enemy combat vehicles inoperative.
 - f. Personnel and vehicles avoid skylining themselves.
- .4 ____ The company establishes a hasty defensive position.
 - a. Designated tanks and personnel occupy firing positions.
 - b. Company commander and company FO update fire support target list.
 - c. Company emplaces hasty minefield and other hasty obstacles.
 - d. Company commander develops engagement criteria.
 - e. Company emplaces M8A1 alarms.
- .5 ____ Company commander prepares to continue the mission.

ENCLOSURE (1)

- a. Makes a map and visual reconnaissance of the terrain between the current position and the next objective.
- b. Continues to implement the SOP.
- c. Issues necessary fragmentary orders or warning orders as necessary.

KEY INDICATORS:

CRITICAL STANDARDS

All remaining enemy resistance is destroyed or captured. The company is prepared for an enemy counterattack. The company is prepared to continue the attack. Company sustains no more than 10 percent casualties during consolidation.

TASK: 10B.7.5 REORGANIZE ON THE OBJECTIVE

CONDITION(S): The company has assaulted and seized an objective. Consolidation has been completed. The threat of enemy counterattack is minimal, but a distinct possibility. The enemy can attack with indirect fires and CAS.

STANDARDS: EVAL: Y; N; NE

- .1 ____ Platoon commanders report status to commander and XO.
 - a. Report casualties and personnel status.
 - b. Report class III and V status.
 - c. Report vehicle status.
 - d. Report items for resupply.
- .2 ____ Company commander establishes or re-establishes command and control.
 - a. Re-establishes communications with the battalion CP and adjacent units.
 - b. Develops a course of action for the unit.
 - c. Coordinates the company's actions with adjacent units.
- .3 ____ Company establishes security on the objective.
 - a. Tanks are positioned to cover logical armor avenues of approach.
 - b. Infantry organizes hasty dismounted positions with AAVs or LAVs providing cover on infantry avenues of approach.
 - c. Emplaces OPs.
 - d. Place units so they have overlapping fields of fire.
- .4 ____ Company accounts for personnel.
 - a. Platoons determine WIAs, MIA, and KIAs.
 - b. Platoons submit personnel status to company CP.
 - c. Company reports personnel status to battalion CP.
- .5 ____ Company commander replaces key losses.

ENCLOSURE (1)

- a. Utilizes personnel from disabled vehicles.
 - b. Ensures all leader positions are filled first.
 - c. Ensures all tanks have at least a three-man crew.
 - d. Ensures key weapon systems are manned.
 - e. Redesignates wingmen.
 - f. Submits requests for replacement personnel.
- .6 ____ Company initiates evacuation procedures.
- a. Evacuates the seriously wounded and KIAs.
 - b. Recovers and evacuates disabled vehicles.
 - c. Evacuates intelligence information and EFWs.
- .7 ____ Company cross-levels and resupplies communication.
- a. Inventories and cross-levels remaining ammunition.
 - b. Redistributes ammunition from damaged vehicles.
 - c. Reloads ready storage area and machine gun bins to capacity.
 - d. Platoon sergeants consolidate platoon ammunition status and report to XO/tank leader.
 - e. Platoon sergeants request resupply from XO/tank leader.
 - f. Tank leader requests resupply from battalion S4.
- .8 ____ Unit prepares for tactical operations.
- a. Restores communications.
 - b. Performs maintenance checks and emergency repairs.
 - c. Refuels and rearms.
 - d. Continues to implement SOP.
 - e. Issues fragmentary order as necessary.

KEY INDICATORS:

CRITICAL STANDARDS

The company reorganizes ensuring command and control is maintained, security is established, key positions are filled, wounded personnel and damaged equipment are treated and recovered, and cross leveling and resupply are accomplished. The company is prepared to continue the mission within 30 minutes.

ENCLOSURE (1)

X-B-65

TASK: 10B.7.6 INTEGRATE REPLACEMENTS

CONDITION(S): Company replacement(s) arrive in unit area from battalion headquarters.

STANDARDS: EVAL: Y; N; NE

- .1 ____ First sergeant and supply NCO provides administrative inprocessing.
 - a. Issues equipment, weapons and supplies needed by the replacement.
 - b. Receives initial orientation to the company.
 - c. Annotates battle roster with replacement data.
 - d. Brings replacement forward with LOGPAC.
- .2 ____ Company commander/first sergeant receives replacement.
 - a. Provides initial unit welcome.
 - b. Assigns replacements to platoons.
 - c. Updates company battle roster.
- .3 ____ Platoons receives replacements.

KEY INDICATORS:

CRITICAL STANDARDS

Replacements are provided information on the tactical situation, their assignment, unit procedures, and are issued company equipment in a manner which supports their rapid integration into the unit.

TASK: 10B.7.7 PROVIDE MEDICAL EVACUATION AND TREATMENT OF CASUALTIES

CONDITION(S): While conducting combat operations, unit has sustained casualties requiring medical treatment and evacuation. The commander has designated the company trains area as the casualty collection point.

STANDARDS: EVAL: Y; N; NE

- .1 ____ Company receives casualty report request for medical evacuation and treatment.
 - a. Casualty report includes number, location and status of casualties.
 - b. Platoon commanders/platoon sergeants report the enemy situation.
- .2 ____ Company reacts to mass casualty situation.
 - a. Company establishes aid station.
 - b. All casualties evacuated to aid station.
 - c. Tank leader coordinates evacuation using CSS/ combat vehicles.
 - d. Corpsmen with support from other personnel stabilize casualties.
 - e. Tank leader coordinates medical evacuation.
- .3 ____ Tank leader dispatches the corpsmen.

ENCLOSURE (1)

- a. Corpsman move to the site of wounded team members using covered and concealed routes.
 - b. Corpsmen locate and identify casualties.
- .4 ____ Corpsman examine casualties.
- a. Conduct quick visual examination.
 - b. Determine which patients are most seriously ill or injured.
 - a. Move casualty to secure location.
- .5 ____ Corpsman treat casualties.
- a. Determine the general conditions, type of injuries, and need for immediate life-saving measures.
 - b. Provide emergency medical treatment to stabilize a seriously wounded Marine for transportation to the battalion aid station.
 - c. Provide first aid for minor injuries or illness.
 - d. Initiate casualty tags.
- .6 ____ Company transports casualties requiring further treatment to the battalion aid station.
- a. Patients are moved as quickly as possible by any available means using covered and concealed routes.
 - b. Provide supporting treatment en route.
- .7 ____ Company submits requests and prepares landing site for aeromedical evacuation.
- a. Tank leader identifies the best available covered and concealed landing zone.
 - b. Provides security of landing zone.
 - c. Provides number, type of casualty, and patient conditions.
 - d. Corpsman move casualties to the landing zone and continue treatment.
 - e. Assist the flight crew with loading of casualties.
- .8 ____ First sergeant supervises evacuation of remains and effects of KIAs.
- a. Submits a casualty report to higher headquarters IAW unit SOP. Takes custody of government property under control of the KIA.
 - b. Ensures the remains and personal effects of the KIA are evacuated IAW unit SOP.
 - c. Prepares statements of recognition and witness statements and forwards them to higher headquarters.
 - d. First sergeant updates company personnel roster.

KEY INDICATORS:

CRITICAL STANDARDS

All WIA are evacuated and treated without causing additional injury. Unit provides its own security.

ENCLOSURE (1)

TASK: 10B.7.8 PROVIDE MAINTENANCE SUPPORT

CONDITION(S): Company is operating separately or as a part of a larger force. Must provide its own security. While conducting tactical operations. the company has sustained sufficient vehicle damage to require on-site repair in order to continue the mission. Both friendly and enemy forces have indirect fire and CAS available.

STANDARDS: EVAL: Y; N; NE

- .1 ____ Company receives vehicle damage report.
 - a. Vehicle commander determines whether or not damage is beyond capabilities.
 - b. Provides condition, location, and circumstances of damage to the platoon sergeant.
 - c. Estimates support requirements necessary to initiate recovery and repair.
 - d. Platoon notifies maintenance chief of damaged vehicle.
- .2 ____ Maintenance chief dispatches maintenance team.
 - a. Organizes maintenance effort based on priorities established in the SOP and the nonoperational conditions report.
 - b. Maintenance team moves to the vehicle breakdown site using covered and concealed routes.
 - c. Moves damaged vehicles or equipment to secure areas when it is subject to hostile fire.
 - d. Uses smoke screens and camouflage to obscure the removal of the damaged equipment from enemy observation.
- .3 ____ Crew and maintenance personnel inspect disabled vehicles for safety hazards.
 - a. Check for radioactive or chemical contamination.
 - b. Check for damaged ammunition.
 - c. Make sure abandoned vehicles are checked for booby traps prior to recovery.
 - d. Expeditiously remove and treat casualties.
- .4 ____ The maintenance chief determines maintenance requirements.
 - a. Determines man-hours, equipment, special tools, and repair parts necessary for repair.
 - b. Determines when on-site maintenance is not feasible and higher-echelon maintenance is necessary.
 - c. Reports vehicle repair needs and status to the companies tank leader and the battalion's maintenance chief.
- .5 ____ Unit recovers equipment.
 - a. The maintenance chief coordinates recovery/repair if within his capability.
 - b. Unit uses self- or like-vehicle recovery.
 - c. Unit recovery operations use covered and concealed routes whenever possible.
 - d. Recovered vehicles are moved to secure locations in order to conduct repairs.
- .6 ____ Unit conducts repairs.
 - a. Conducts repairs on-site when possible.
 - b. Accomplishes repair within 2 hours unless otherwise ordered by the commander.

- c. Crew assists the maintenance team conducting repairs.
 - d. When repairs exceed the 2 hour timeline, evacuate equipment to the UMCP IAW SOP.
- .7 ____ Abandon severely damaged vehicles.
 - a. Remove usable parts, weapons, sensitive items, personal gear, and equipment.
 - b. Destroy or render ineffective, all equipment, sensitive items, or information and weapons that must be left with the vehicle.
 - c. Destruction or disabling will be accomplished only on command order.
- .8 ____ Company commander reports operational status.
 - a. Reports daily LAW unit SOP or operation order.
 - b. Provides updates to higher headquarters when necessary.

KEY INDICATORS:

CRITICAL STANDARDS

Damaged equipment is repaired to an operating status or evacuated without causing additional damage to the equipment. Lack of maintenance support does not hinder the tactical mission.

TASK: 10B.7.9 PROCESS ENEMY PRISONERS OF WAR (EPWs)

CONDITION(S): Company has been conducting tactical operations separately or as part of a larger force. Enemy soldiers have been captured.

STANDARDS: EVAL: Y; N; NE

- .1 ____ Captured enemy troops are processed LAW the five S's.
- .2 ____ Company commander collects all items of tactical significance.
 - a. Extracts information that is of immediate value.
 - b. Reports items to higher headquarters (usually the S2)
- .3 ____ Unit speeds prisoners to the rear.
 - a. Unit coordinates with S4 for transportation, food, water, and emergency clothing of EPWs.
 - b. Unit coordinates with S4 for transportation of captured materials.
 - c. Unit decides whether to evacuate prisoners from unit location or move prisoners to MSR.
 - d. Unit coordinates with medical platoon for medical support and evacuation of sick and wounded EPWs.
 - e. Unit provides guards for prisoners until guards are released by higher headquarters.

ENCLOSURE (1)

KEY INDICATORS:

CRITICAL STANDARDS

Prisoners of war are processed IAW the five S's so that, at a minimum, EFWs are not allowed to disrupt or halt the unit's mission and are treated humanely according to their rights under international law.

10B.8 NBC

TASK: 10B.8.1 REACT TO CHEMICAL ATTACK

CONDITION(S): The company is subjected to a chemical attack without warning.

STANDARDS: EVAL: Y; N: NE

.1 ____ The company reacts to a chemical attack.

a. The company performs appropriate first aid on chemical casualties:

- 1) Nerve: Give nerve antidote injection. Artificial respiration may be necessary.
- 2) Blister: None.
- 3) Blood: Inhale emyl nitrite. Artificial respiration may be necessary.

b. Leaders supervise the unit's response to the chemical attack and determine the status of the casualties.

c. The company commander forwards NBC 1 report to battalion headquarters IAW unit SOP.

.2 ____ The unit detects chemical agent.

a. Marines attach chemical-agent paper to overgarments and to supplies.

b. The chemical-agent detector kit is used when the company is under chemical attack, when a chemical attack is likely, or when the presence of a chemical agent is suspected.

c. Designated personnel perform periodic monitoring using the chemical-agent detector kits.

d. The unit performs continuous monitoring using chemical alarms and sends the results to battalion headquarters.

e. Leaders ensure at least two Marines (one primary and one alternate) are assigned to and can use each chemical agent detector kit and chemical alarm.

f. Positive tests using chemical-agent paper are verified using the chemical detector kit.

.3 ____ The unit minimizes additional contamination.

a. Leaders order crossing of a known contaminated area only when the area cannot be bypassed. When possible, lanes are cleared through contaminated areas.

b. When possible, Marines avoid handling contaminated materiel.

c. Vital sustaining items, such as water, spare clothing, protective mask filters, and food, are carried inside vehicles.

d. The company monitors the communication net to stay informed on the contamination threat in the unit's area.

- .4 _____ The unit un.masks.
- a. Before unmasking, the area is checked using the chemical-agent detector kit, when possible.
 - b. Unmasking is performed only when the chemical agent is identified as nonpersistent and decontamination is no longer needed.
 - c. Only the commander or senior leader present announces, "All clear."
 - d. The leader announces, "All clear," only after all unmasking procedures have been completed.
 - e. No Marine un.masks until he hears "All clear" from his commander or the senior leader present.
- .5 _____ Marines perform basic skills decontamination.
- a. Marines use towelettes to wipe down hood, mask, weapons, gloves, and helmets.
 - b. Marines use sticks or other objects to remove globs of liquid chemical contamination on overgarments.
 - c. The unit completes basic skill decontamination within 15 minutes.
- .6 _____ The company performs partial decontamination. Partial decontamination allows the unit to perform the assigned mission without additional chemical casualties.
- a. Contaminated clothing and equipment are partly decontaminated as soon as possible.
 - b. Essential items are decontaminated first-- driver's area, gunner's sight, individual weapon.
- .7 _____ The unit decontaminates individual equipment.
- a. Any gross contamination is removed using sticks, rags, or other objects, then those sticks, rags, and objects are buried.
 - b. Boots are decontaminated with the personal decontamination kit, washed with soapy water, and rinsed.
 - c. Metal equipment is decontaminated using DS2, soapy water, or the personal decontamination kit.
 - d. Individual weapons are decontaminated with the personal decontamination kit, disassembled, washed in soapy water, rinsed, dried, oiled, reassembled, and test fired.
 - e. Load-bearing equipment is decontaminated.
 - 1) Light contamination: Decontaminated using personal decontamination kit.
 - 2) Heavy contamination: Decontaminated at a personnel decontamination station or buried there and replaced with new 782 gear.
- .8 _____ The company decontaminates unit equipment.
- a. As soon as possible, the company decontaminates unit equipment to continue the mission and avoid further casualties.
 - b. Vehicles and crew-served weapons are decontaminated.
 - 1) Areas essential to the vehicle or weapon operation are decontaminated using the M11 portable decontaminating apparatus and, when necessary, field-expedient measures such as mud or rags.
 - 2) Light contamination is removed by airing.

ENCLOSURE (1)

- 3) Heavier decontamination is removed using DS2, soapy water, solvents, or slurry.
 - 4) Contaminated wood surfaces and tires are decontaminated with STB slurry.
 - 5) No DS2 is used on gunner sights.
- c. Ammunition is decontaminated.
- 1) Ammunition is decontaminated with soapy water, wiped with organic solvent, thoroughly dried, and aerated.
 - 2) Ammunition corroded from contact with chemical agents is disposed of, mainly if the brass cannot be cleaned.
 - 3) STB is not used on ammunition contaminated with mustard-type blister agents.
- d. Optical instruments are decontaminated using the M258-series kit or by blotting with rags and then wiping with an organic solvent. Optical instruments are air-dried (lens cleaning solvent is used only on lenses) OR if available, hot air is used.
- e. Communications equipment is decontaminated using hot air, when available, or by airing or weathering.
- f. Food and water is decontaminated.
- 1) Packaged rations are decontaminated with soap and water or DS2.
 - 2) Food is decontaminated only by Marines who know decontamination procedures.
 - 3) Decontaminated food is inspected and approved by medical personnel before being eaten.
 - 4) Water in closed containers is consumed after outside of containers is decontaminated using STB slurry or DS2.
 - 5) Contaminated water is not consumed and Marines do not try to purify it.
- g. Designated personnel verify decontamination is complete using chemical detector kits. Any remaining contamination is decontaminated again.

.9 _____ The company continues the mission and maintains security.

- a. The company maintains security during decontamination.
- b. Loader machine guns are manned during decontamination based on the tactical situation.
- c. Leaders rotate personnel between decontaminating, continuing the mission, and maintaining security, as needed.
- d. The company commander adjusts the MOPP level to the NBC threat or LAW the order of the battalion commander.
- e. The company coordinates for the resupply of chemical defensive equipment.
- f. The company resumes the mission.

KEY INDICATORS:

CRITICAL STANDARDS

The company quickly reestablishes security; casualties are treated; chemical detection monitoring commences; unmasking procedures are conducted; partial decontamination is conducted; and, the company resumes its mission.

ENCLOSURE (1)

TASK: 10B.8.2 REACT TO A NUCLEAR ATTACK

CONDITION(S): The company is subjected to a nuclear attack without warning.

STANDARDS: EVAL: Y; N; NE

- .1 ____ The company reacts to an unwarned nuclear attack.
 - a. Leaders supervise unit's response to nuclear attack and determine status of casualties.
 - b. The company commander sends and NBC 1 report to battalion headquarters IAW unit SOP.
- .2 ____ The unit takes action following nuclear detonation.
 - a. Marines check for injuries and give first aid.
 - b. Marines monitor each other for initial symptoms of radiation poisoning.
 - c. Leaders report unit personnel and equipment status to immediate superiors.
 - d. Company places radios back into operation and monitors nets.
 - e. Vehicles and other equipment are returned to full combat-ready status.
 - f. Designated Marines begin continuous monitoring with radiacmeters.
 - g. Leaders reestablish security.
 - h. Leaders check dosimetry device readings.
 - i. When there is no longer a radiation hazard, only the senior leader present announces, "All clear."
- .3 ____ The unit detects radiation.
 - a. Marines shout, "Fallout!" upon detecting radiation or hearing the command FALLOUT.
 - b. All Marines are aware of the radiation hazard.
 - c. Leaders collect readings on radiacmeters and dosimeters from Marines and report readings to the company commander.
 - d. All Marines with dosimeters and leaders know acceptable radiation levels.
 - e. Leaders ensure at least two Marines (one primary and one alternate) are assigned to and can use each radiacmeter and radiac set.
 - f. The company performs periodic or continuous monitoring IAW unit SOP.
 - g. The company begins continuous monitoring with radiacmeters when a nuclear burst is reported or radiation of 1 cGy per hour is detected by periodic monitoring.
 - h. Stationary units stop continuous monitoring with radiacmeters when the dose rate falls below 1 cGy per hour.
 - i. Moving units perform continuous monitoring until movement is completed.
 - j. Radiation levels are checked whenever the unit moves into a new area and before Marines dismount.
- .4 ____ The unit takes actions to reduce exposure to further radiation.
 - a. Floors of vehicles are covered with a layer of sandbags.

ENCLOSURE (1)

- b. At least 24-hours of uncontaminated food and water for each Marine is kept on hand.
- c. The company will bypass the area unless the mission requires the contaminated area to be traversed.
- d. When crossing contaminated areas, leaders--
 - 1) Pick the route that allows the fastest travel consistent with the mission.
 - 2) Ensure doors, windows, and hatches on vehicles are closed, consistent with security requirements.
 - 3) Go as fast as possible through the area while maintaining safety and security.
 - 4) Employ column formation when possible (to avoid throwing dust onto trailing vehicles) and increase the interval between vehicles.
- e. Marines drink and eat only from approved sources.
- f. Marines wear a handkerchief or scarf over their noses and mouths to avoid inhaling contaminated dust.
- g. Leaders monitor radiation levels for each squad and try to reduce exposure-to higher radiation dose levels.
- h. Marines wear rubber overshoes (not chemical overboots) outside of vehicles in contaminated areas. Overshoes are stored outside vehicles before Marines enter vehicles.
- i. Marines should avoid handling contaminated materiel.
- j. The unit monitors the communications nets to stay informed on the contamination threat in the unit's area.

.5 ____ The unit decontaminates.

- a. Unit performs partial decontamination by washing and brushing off fallout.
- b. Essential items are decontaminated first-- driver's area, gunner's sight, individual weapon.
- c. Leaders supervise partial decontamination, ensuring unit can perform its assigned mission without exposure to excessive radiation.

.6 ____ The unit continues the mission.

KEY INDICATORS:

CRITICAL STANDARDS

Within 2 seconds, dismounted personnel drop to prone positions and close their eyes. Within 2 seconds, mounted personnel drop down inside the vehicle and brace themselves for the blast wave. Within 30 seconds after the blast and shock waves, security is established. Within 5 minutes, radiological monitoring is started.

ENCLOSURE (1)

TASK: 10B.8.3 PREPARE FOR A CHEMICAL ATTACK

CONDITION(S): The company has received a warning to prepare for a chemical attack.

STANDARDS: EVAL: Y; N; NE

- .1 ____ The company commander issues warning order.
 - a. Orders Marines to put on chemical protective overgarments, overboots, mask with hood, and gloves (MOPP 4).
 - b. Company Marines use the buddy-team method to don and check proper wear of protective suit.
 - c. Individual Marines cover their equipment and weapons using ponchos, foliage, plastic, or any material that is expendable or readily decontaminated.
 - d. Marines attach M9 paper to overgarments and to supplies.
- .2 ____ Vehicle crews prepare their vehicles.
 - a. Store, in the vehicle, water, rations, and equipment not being used.
 - b. The gunner places a poncho or tarpaulin over the launcher (dependent on the tactical situation).
- .3 ____ Platoon commanders ensure that designated personnel conduct monitoring.
 - a. Periodically with a chemical-agent detector kit.
 - b. Continuously monitoring with a chemical alarm.
 - c. Results are sent to the company commander.
- .4 ____ Platoon commanders inspect to ensure that their platoons are prepared for a chemical attack.
 - a. Decontamination equipment is available and serviceable.
 - b. Company personnel and equipment are prepared for a chemical attack.
 - c. The company is capable of operating in MOPP 4 for six hours.

KEY INDICATORS:

CRITICAL STANDARDS

Within eight minutes, MOPP gear is donned using the buddy-team method. The company's chemical-agent detector kit and chemical alarm are put into operation. Weapons and equipment are prepared, as required.

TASK: 10B.8.4 PREPARE FOR A NUCLEAR ATTACK

CONDITION(S): The company receives a STRIKWARN message or warning and prepares for a nuclear attack.

STANDARDS: EVAL: Y; N; NE

- .1 ____ The company prepares for a nuclear attack.
 - a. The company commander instructs all personnel to prepare for a nuclear blast.

- b. Vehicles are-positioned so that the front of the vehicles are toward the expected direction of the blast.
- .2 _____ Drivers and gunners prepare vehicles.
- a. Remove and stow daysight and nightsights in vehicle.
 - b. Make sure the vehicles are dug in or in trenches or in cuts in roadways.
- .3 _____ Company Marines prepare vehicles and equipment.
- a. Place one or more layers of sandbags on top of each vehicle and around launcher (offers additional protection from gamma radiation).
 - b. Wet down the sandbags (enhances neutron radiation shielding and protects sandbags from thermal damage).
 - c. Disconnect and stow all radios and antennas. (In the offense, one radio is left on.)
 - d. Stow all water and rations inside the vehicles.
 - e. Tie dawn all loose equipment inside the vehicles. (This prevents equipment from being thrown about by the blast.)
- .4 _____ Company Marines prepare themselves.
- a. Position themselves as low as possible within the fighting positions.
 - b. Wear their helmets with chin strap secured.
 - c. Brace themselves for the blast.
- .5 _____ Platoon commanders inspect to ensure that their platoons are prepared for nuclear attack and report results to the company commander.
- a. Vehicles are ready.
 - b. Equipment is secured.
 - c. Personnel are prepared.

KEY INDICATORS:

CRITICAL STANDARDS

Within the time specified in the STRIKWARN message, company vehicles and equipment are prepared and personnel assume covered positions.

10B.9 AMPHIBIOUS OPERATIONS

TASK: 10B.9.1 CONDUCT AMPHIBIOUS PLANNING

CONDITION(S): The company is attached to an infantry battalion of the Ground Combat Element (GCE) of a Marine Air Ground Task Force (MAGTF) that has been alerted to a political situation that requires an amphibious operation. The Amphibious Task Force (ATF) is currently in transit. The initiating directive has been received. A Carrier Battle Group (CVBG) is also en route. Threat forces have direct and indirect fire weapons, rotary and fixed-wing aircraft, and Electronic Warfare (EW) capabilities. It is anticipated that operations ashore will be of limited duration. The initial planning conference has been completed; and

ENCLOSURE (1)

the Commander Landing Force (CLF) has issued the MAGTF planning directive. The GCE order has been issued. The infantry battalion commander/staff and subordinate leaders have begun their initial planning.

STANDARDS: EVAL: Y; N; NE

- .1 _____ Company commander analyzes the mission in the warning order to identify specified and implied tasks.
- .2 _____ Company commander develops preliminary estimates based on the warning order and general planning guidance provided by the GCE and battalion commanders.
- .3 _____ Company commander coordinates with the battalion staff, providing input regarding basic requirements, essential elements of information (EEI's) and other intelligence requirements (OIR's). Identifies intelligence gaps to request response/collection from higher, lower and adjacent headquarters.
- .4 _____ Company commander issues warning order to subordinate element leaders.
- .5 _____ Company commander coordinates with the battalion staff during the selection of recommended landing area, Landing Force (LF) objectives, and beachhead for regimental, CLF/Commander Amphibious Task Force (CATF) approval.
- .6 _____ Company commander coordinates with the battalion staff in the development of additional battalion objectives, if desired.
- .7 _____ Briefs estimate of supportability to the battalion commander.
- .8 _____ Company commander provides input to the battalion staff regarding tank employment as the staff constructs the tentative task organization and begins the concurrent development of the scheme of maneuver and fire support plan.
- .9 _____ Company commander coordinates with the battalion staff as they conduct a thorough and continuous analysis of the terrain, weather, hydrographic conditions, and enemy situation throughout the planning process.
- .10 _____ Company commander conducts concurrent planning (when possible) with the battalion, providing input concerning tank employment as the plan progresses.
- .11 _____ Upon receipt of the battalion order, the company commander finalizes his plan and briefs subordinate leaders.
- .12 _____ Company commander constructs/coordinates en route training plans for subordinate units and forwards them to the battalion.

KEY INDICATORS:

CRITICAL STANDARDS

The company commander analyzes the mission and coordinates with battalion concerning tank employment to ensure coordinated initial planning. During this phase of planning the company commander may also act as a special staff officer for the battalion concerning tank employment.

ENCLOSURE (1)

TASK: 10B.9.2 ASSIST DEVELOPMENT OF THE LANDING PLAN

CONDITION(S): The battalion has received the GCE/MAGTF concept of operations and has developed a plan of attack which has been approved. Sufficient landing craft are available. The landing can occur during the day, at night, or during periods of limited visibility.

STANDARDS: EVAL: Y; N; NE

- .1 ____ The company commander assists the battalion in determining the requirements for ship-to-shore movement in coordination with a review of the Amphibious Vehicle Availability Table, Helicopter Availability Table, and the Landing Craft Availability Table.
- .2 ____ The company commander provides input regarding assignment of elements to one of five categories in order to indicate their relative priority for landing and to facilitate control of the ship-to-shore movement.
- .3 ____ The company commander reviews allocated landing assets and ensures that they are sufficient.
- .4 ____ The company commander provides input into the development of the proposed Serial Assignment Table and ensures that it is based on the task organization for the landing.
- .5 ____ The company commander ensures that the development of the Landing Craft and Amphibious Vehicle Assignment Table is coordinated and is compatible with the previously approved landing plan documents.
- .6 ____ The company commander provides input for the development of the Approach Schedule.
- .7 ____ The company commander ensures that he receives the Debarkation Schedule (prepared jointly by the GCE and the ship's commanding officer), when applicable.
- .8 ____ The company commander coordinates cross-decking of his unit/equipment if required by the landing plan.
- .9 ____ The company commander ensures that the Tactical-Logistics Group (TACLOG) is aware of the location of troops, equipment, supplies; landing requirements, and of adjustments to the landing sequence.
- .10 ____ The company commander coordinates planning with the battalion for pre D-Day transfers of personnel and equipment.

KEY INDICATORS:

CRITICAL STANDARDS

The company commander ensures that the landing plan supports accomplishment of his mission. The landing plan must provide for the delivery of the company, in the desired formation, with the necessary equipment, over the selected beaches, at the time set by the battalion commander. Flexibility is preserved through the selective scheduling and subsequent cross decking (if required), of personnel and equipment so that critical elements are brought ashore, as required.

TASK: 10B.9.3 CONDUCT ASSAULT LANDING

CONDITION(S): CATF has issued the order to land the landing force. Assault amphibious vehicles, landing craft, and helicopter operational readiness rates are equal to the numbers anticipated in the final version of the MAGTF landing plan developed after the final rehearsal. Close, continuous, and detailed coordination among the CATF, MAGTF, ACE, GCE, and CSSE staff members, as well as unit commanders has occurred throughout the entire planning process.

ENCLOSURE (1)

STANDARDS: EVAL: Y; N; NE

- .1 ____ The company commander receives and disseminates to subordinate leaders, final intelligence update which emphasizes critical aspects of the landing such as beach obstacles, known and suspected location of defensive positions in the vicinity of landing beaches, and antiaircraft weapons positions.
- .2 ____ The company commander confirms H-hour.
- .3 ____ The company commander ensures that all personnel and equipment are assembled, staged, and prepared for debarkation.
- .4 ____ Boat team commanders demonstrate control over the loading of all troops and equipment.
- .5 ____ The company adheres to electromagnetic emission control (EMCON) condition set by the MAGTF, removing restrictions on radio transmissions only on order.
- .6 ____ Boat team commanders orient subordinates to visible terrain features on or near the beach (when practicable) and alert all team members when the wave is within 100 meters of the beach.
- .7 ____ Unit commanders quickly regain control of their units, and maintain momentum of the attack by avoiding unnecessary delays.
- .8 ____ The company demonstrates effective employment of air and NGFS to suppress and/or neutralize targets of opportunity.
- .9 ____ The company provides accurate counterbattery fire data to the battalion Fire Support Coordination Center (FSCC).
- .10 ____ The company uses terrain effectively for cover and concealment.
- .11 ____ The company demonstrates effective indirect fire control/coordination via the battalion's FSCC, using FO's; and requests adjustments to the delivery times of preplanned fires to coincide with actual progress on the ground.
- .12 ____ The company effectively utilizes Close-In Fire Support (CIFS) to support the assault.
- .13 ____ The company provides situation reports to the battalion commander as the assault progresses.
- .14 ____ The company maintains momentum of the attack through issuance of fragmentary orders (FRAGO's), the integration of coordinated fire and maneuver, and aggressive small unit leadership.
- .15 ____ The company effectively conducts linkup with adjacent forces, demonstrating positive communications, and fire support coordination.
- .16 ____ The company maintains reliable HF, UHF, and VHF communications.
- .17 ____ The company establishes covered communications on those covered nets identified in the CEOI.
- .18 ____ The company coordinates logistics support through the battalion.
- .19 ____ The company maintains dispersion of personnel, equipment, and supplies on the beach.
- .20 ____ The company demonstrates knowledgeable treatment and timely MEDEVAC of casualties.

KEY INDICATORS:

CRITICAL STANDARDS

Command and Control. The initial stages of the assault will generally result in some degree of decentralized control. Actions by subordinate leaders must be aggressive and bold. Tactical control measures are used to allow subordinate leaders to regain control as quickly as possible. Reliance on mission-type orders will further facilitate control and seizure of initial objectives.

ENCLOSURE (1)

Indirect Fire. While many of the fires contained in the plan for supporting fires may be scheduled based on planned rates of movement, adjustments must be made to reflect the actual rate of movement on the ground. The company commander must identify alterations needed to planned fires and make them known to the battalion FSCC.

Logistics Support. As material is delivered ashore, means must be established to make emergency resupply immediately available. This capability must be sustained throughout the buildup of combat power.

ENCLOSURE (1)

X-B-80

SECTION 10C
TANK PLATOON

ENCLOSURE (1)

<u>TABLE OF CONTENTS</u>		<u>PAGE</u>
<u>MPS 10C.1 - COMMAND, CONTROL, AND COMMUNICATIONS</u>		
TASK 10C.1.1	PERFORM TACTICAL PLANNING	X-C-1
TASK 10C.1.2	PREPARE FOR TACTICAL OPERATIONS	X-C-2
TASK 10C.1.3	PERFORM PRECOMBAT CHECKS	X-C-3
TASK 10C.1.4	PERFORM CONSOLIDATION AND REORGANIZATION ACTIVITIES	X-C-6
TASK 10C.1.5	EMPLOY ELECTRONIC COUNTER-COUNTERMEASURES	X-C-8
TASK 10C.1.6	PRODUCE A PLATOON FIRE PLAN	X-C-9
TASK 10C.1.7	EMPLOY COMMAND AND CONTROL MEASURES	X-C-10
<u>MPS 10C.2 - INTELLIGENCE AND ELECTRONIC WARFARE</u>		
TASK 10C.2.1	EMPLOY CAMOUFLAGE AND COUNTERSURVEILLANCE MEASURES	X-C-11
TASK 10C.2.2	ESTABLISH AN OBSERVATION POST	X-C-13
TASK 10C.2.3	PROCESS ENEMY PRISONERS OF WAR	X-C-15
TASK 10C.2.4	PROCESS CAPTURED DOCUMENTS AND EQUIPMENT	X-C-16
<u>MPS 10C.3 - MANEUVER</u>		
TASK 10C.3.1	PERFORM ASSEMBLY AREA ACTIVITIES	X-C-17
TASK 10C.3.2	EXECUTE A COIL FORMATION	X-C-18
TASK 10C.3.3	EXECUTE A HERRINGBONE FORMATION	X-C-19
TASK 10C.3.4	EXECUTE A COLUMN FORMATION	X-C-20
TASK 10C.3.5	EXECUTE A STAGGERED COLUMN FORMATION	X-C-20
TASK 10C.3.6	EXECUTE A WEDGE FORMATION	X-C-21
TASK 10C.3.7	EXECUTE A LINE FORMATION	X-C-22
TASK 10C.3.8	EXECUTE AN ECHELON FORMATION	X-C-23
TASK 10C.3.9	EXECUTE TRAVELING	X-C-24
TASK 10C.3.10	EXECUTE TRAVELING OVERWATCH	X-C-24
TASK 10C.3.11	EXECUTE BOUNDING OVERWATCH	X-C-25
TASK 10C.3.12	CONDUCT A TACTICAL ROAD MARCH	X-C-26
TASK 10C.3.13	MOVE IN A BUILT-UP AREA	X-C-28
TASK 10C.3.14	ASSIST A PASSAGE OF LINES	X-C-29
TASK 10C.3.15	PERFORM A PASSAGE OF LINES	X-C-30
TASK 10C.3.16	CONDUCT REHEARSALS FOR A MISSION	X-C-32
TASK 10C.3.17	EXECUTE ACTIONS ON CONTACT	X-C-33

TASK 10C.3.18	. . . . .	X-C-34
	PERFORM PLATOON FIRE AND MOVEMENT	
TASK 10C.3.19	. . . . .	X-C-35
	PERFORM RECONNAISSANCE BY FIRE	
TASK 10C.3.20	. . . . .	X-C-36
	PERFORM AN ATTACK BY FIRE	
TASK 10C.3.21	. . . . .	X-C-37
	ASSAULT AN ENEMY POSITION	
TASK 10C.3.22	. . . . .	X-C-38
	OCCUPY A PLATOON BATTLE POSITION	
TASK 10C.3.23	. . . . .	X-C-41
	DISPLACE TO A SUBSEQUENT BATTLE POSITION	
TASK 10C.3.24	. . . . .	X-C-44
	REACT TO AN ENEMY DISMOUNTED ATTACK	
TASK 10C.3.25	. . . . .	X-C-45
	EXECUTE A PLATOON DEFENSIVE MISSION	
TASK 10C.3.26	. . . . .	X-C-47
	ASSIST A RELIEF IN PLACE	
TASK 10C.3.27	. . . . .	X-C-48
	CONDUCT HASTY OCCUPATION OF A BATTLE POSITION	
<u>MPS 10C.4 - MOBILITY, COUNTERMOBILITY, AND SURVIVABILITY</u>		
TASK 10C.4.1	. . . . .	X-C-50
	TAKE ACTIONS AT AN OBSTACLE	
TASK 10C.4.2	. . . . .	X-C-51
	EXECUTE A PREPARED OBSTACLE	
TASK 10C.4.3	. . . . .	X-C-52
	CONSTRUCT A HASTY OBSTACLE	
TASK 10C.4.4	. . . . .	X-C-53
	EMPLACE A HASTY PROTECTIVE MINEFIELD	
<u>MPS 10C.5 - AIR DEFENSE</u>		
TASK 10C.5.1	. . . . .	X-C-54
	TAKE PASSIVE AIR DEFENSE MEASURES	
TASK 10C.5.2	. . . . .	X-C-55
	TAKE ACTIVE AIR DEFENSE MEASURES AGAINST HOSTILE AIRCRAFT	
<u>MPS 10C.6 - COMBAT SERVICE SUPPORT</u>		
TASK 10C.6.1	. . . . .	X-C-57
	PERFORM RESUPPLY OPERATIONS	
TASK 10C.6.2	. . . . .	X-C-58
	PREPARE AND EVACUATE CASUALTIES	
TASK 10C.6.3	. . . . .	X-C-59
	PERFORM MAINTENANCE OPERATIONS	
TASK 10C.6.4	. . . . .	X-C-60
	PERFORM FIELD SANITATION OPERATIONS	
<u>MPS 10C.7 - NBC</u>		
TASK 10C.7.1	. . . . .	X-C-61
	REACT TO CHEMICAL ATTACK	
TASK 10C.7.2	. . . . .	X-C-64
	REACT TO A NUCLEAR ATTACK	
TASK 10C.7.3	. . . . .	X-C-66
	PREPARE FOR A CHEMICAL ATTACK	
TASK 10C.7.4	. . . . .	X-C-66
	PREPARE FOR A NUCLEAR ATTACK	

ENCLOSURE (1)

10C.1 COMMAND, CONTROL, AND COMMUNICATIONS

TASK: 10C.1.1 PERFORM TACTICAL PLANNING

CONDITION(S): The platoon has received a warning order, fragmentary order, or operation order for a future operation. Threat situation is as described in the order.

STANDARDS: EVAL: Y; N; NE

- .1 ____ Leaders receive the mission.
 - a. Identify the specific tasks located in paragraphs 2 and 3 of the operation order.
 - b. Identify the implied tasks to accomplish the mission.
 - c. Identify the essential tasks from the list of specific and implied tasks.
 - d. Put the essential tasks in the form of a restated mission that includes who, what, when, where, and why.
- .2 ____ Leaders issue a warning order.
 - a. Issue a warning order immediately after determining the platoon mission.
 - b. Ensure warning order is brief (oral or written).
 - c. Begin the message by saying "Warning Order."
 - d. List addressees.
 - e. Tell subordinates the nature of the operation so they can immediately start preparing.
 - f. Tell subordinates the time the operation is to begin.
 - g. Tell subordinates the earliest time they must be ready to move out.
 - h. Tell subordinates if there are any changes in task organization and what the changes are.
 - i. Tell subordinates the time and place the complete order (if any) will be given.
 - j. Make sure subordinate elements acknowledge receipt of the warning order.
- .3 ____ Leaders make a tentative plan considering METT-TSL.
 - a. Develop a tentative plan based on the mission, enemy, terrain and weather, troops available, time available, space, and logistics (METT-TSL).
 - b. Develop alternative courses of action based on the tentative plan.
 - c. Compare alternative courses of action.
 - d. Select the best course of action.
- .4 ____ Leaders initiate necessary movement.
 - a. Coordinate movement route.
 - b. Coordinate necessary transportation.
- .5 ____ Leaders perform leader's reconnaissance.
 - a. Conduct a map reconnaissance as a minimum.
 - b. Analyze the five military aspects of terrain (KOCOA).
 - c. Determine route of movement.

ENCLOSURE (1)

- d. Determine formation and techniques of movement and areas where the technique or formation may change.
- e. Determine likely Threat positions and kill zones.
- f. Determine likely routes around Threat positions and opportunities to create flank shots against Threat tanks.
- g. Determine likely locations for sector/zone observation.
- h. Determine likely overwatch positions.
- i. Determine likely artillery targets.
- j. Verify map reconnaissance by ground reconnaissance, if possible.

.6 ____ Leaders complete the plan.

- a. Make final adjustments.
- b. Put the plan in the five-paragraph order.
- c. Prepare an operations overlay which graphically depicts the final plan.

.7 ____ Leaders issue the order.

- a. Ensure the complete orders group is present.
- b. Check subordinates' overlays to ensure they are posted correctly.
- c. Brief the entire order in sequence covering all details.
- d. Ensure everyone understands the mission and concept of operations; check through backbriefs/rehearsals.

.8 ____ Leaders supervise and refine the order.

- a. Refine the plan as the situation changes.
- b. Locate where the most critical events or activities are to take place.

KEY INDICATORS:

CRITICAL STANDARDS

Leaders utilize troop-leading steps to plan tactical missions and brief troops. The platoon plan supports the commander's plan and intent. All platoon members are able to brief back and explain platoon plan when directed.

TASK: 10C.1.2 PREPARE FOR TACTICAL OPERATIONS

CONDITION(S): The platoon is operating in a tactical environment and has been given an order to conduct a tactical operation at a given time. Threat situation corresponds to that given in the order.

ENCLOSURE (1)

STANDARDS: EVAL: Y; N; NE

- .1 _____ Platoon sergeant establishes the priority of work for the platoon, as per METT-TSL:
 - a. Guard and security,
 - b. Maintenance and prepare-to-fire checks.
 - c. Resupply of Class III and V.
 - d. Weapons cleaning.
 - e. Class I.
 - f. Sleep plan.
- .2 _____ Platoon assumes or upgrades readiness condition (REDCON) status ordered by the company commander to accomplish specified tasks, but does not decrease its REDCON level below that ordered by the commander.
 - a. REDCON 4 (minimum security). One man guard, one man local security, remainder of platoon conducts required preparations, and platoon is prepared to move within one hour of notification.
 - b. REDCON 3 (reduces security). Fifty percent of platoon conducts security, remainder of platoon conducts required preparations, and the platoon is prepared to move within 30 minutes of notification.
 - c. REDCON 2 (stand-to). All equipment stowed (except hot loop and NBC alarms), vehicles and weapons manned (OPs still out), precombat inspections completed, operation order or fragmentary order and graphics issued, prepare-to-fire checks completed, and all maintenance and resupply completed. All vehicles started together on order from platoon leader or platoon sergeant, stand-to reports submitted to platoon by each crew (over hot loop), and platoon leader enters company radio net and sends platoon's stand-to report by unit SOP. The platoon is prepared to move within 15 minutes of notification.
 - d. REDCON 1 (full alert). All personnel mounted on vehicles (OPs in). hot loop and NBC alarms taken in, and platoon is prepared to execute mission immediately.

KEY INDICATORS:

CRITICAL STANDARDS

The platoon is prepared to conduct the operation at the time stated in the operation order.

TASK: 10C.1.3 PERFORM PRECOMBAT CHECKS

CONDITION(S): The platoon has received a warning order for an upcoming mission. The warning order specified earliest time for movement and the location of the operation order. The platoon has sufficient time for thorough preparation. Threat contact is not expected.

STANDARDS: EVAL: Y; N; NE

- .1 _____ Platoon commander/platoon sergeant prepares for upcoming mission.
 - a. Directs precombat checks be performed.
 - b. Coordinates for technical assistance, if required.
 - c. Supervises the precombat checks.

- d. Identifies and reports uncorrected deficiencies to company maintenance personnel.
- .2 _____ Platoon commander/platoon sergeant performs precombat checks for personnel.
- a. Ensures Marines are in complete appropriate seasonal uniform.
 - b. Asks questions to ensure Marines have been briefed on current mission/situation.
 - c. Briefs Marines on preventing hot- or cold-weather injuries.
- .3 _____ Platoon commander/platoon sergeant performs precombat checks for tank commander (TC).
- a. Ensures map is complete with current overlay.
 - b. Ensures CEOI is current.
 - c. Ensures leader's packet includes required graphic training aids (GTA), forms, tags, and cards.
 - d. Ensures TC has binoculars and night-vision goggles.
 - e. Ensures TC has a compass.
- .4 _____ Platoon commander/platoon sergeant performs precombat checks for vehicles (general).
- a. Loads according to load plan. (Load plan is posted in obvious place.)
 - b. Ensures crew bags (NBC) are present.
 - c. Ensures vehicles are topped off with fuel.
 - d. Ensures POL package products and small arms lubricants are loaded.
 - e. Ensures water cans are filled. Ensures meals ready-to-eat (MRE) rations are stowed.
 - f. Ensures weapons cleaning kits are present.
 - g. Checks for spare track blocks.
 - h. Ensures first-aid kits are complete.
 - i. Ensures operator's manuals with all changes and lubrication orders (LO) are present for radios, equipment, and weapons.
 - j. Ensures tools and tool kits are present.
 - k. Ensures prepare-to-fire checks are complete for main gun, coaxial machine gun, and turret-mounted guns.
- .5 _____ Platoon commander/platoon sergeant performs precombat checks on vehicles (hull).
- a. Performs maintenance in accordance with before-operations checks in appropriate -10 technical manual.
 - b. Ensures no deadline deficiencies exist.
- .6 _____ Platoon commander/platoon sergeant performs precombat checks on vehicles (turret).
- a. Ensures firing circuits are operational.
 - b. Ensures recoil system is correct and functional.
 - c. Ensures sights are clean, uncovered, and operational.
 - d. Ensures covers are off periscopes and weapons.
 - e. Ensures vision blocks are clear.

- f. Ensures computer is operational.
- g. Ensures traversing and elevation system is functional.
- .7 _____ Platoon commander/platoon sergeant performs precombat checks on miscellaneous equipment.
 - a. Inspects binoculars.
 - b. Inspects camouflage nets and supports.
 - c. Inspects compasses.
 - d. Inspects night-vision goggles (with spare batteries).
- .8 _____ Platoon commander/platoon sergeant performs precombat checks on communications equipment.
 - a. Ensures radios are operational.
 - b. Ensures speech-security equipment is functional.
 - c. Ensures proper frequencies are set.
 - d. Ensures matching units are operational.
 - e. Ensures antennas are tied down.
 - f. Ensures connectors are clean and serviceable.
 - g. Ensures vehicle intercom system is operational.
 - h. Ensures combat vehicle crewman (CVC) helmets are operational.
 - i. Ensures TA-312/TA-1 is present with batteries.
 - j. Ensures AN/GRA-39 is complete with batteries.
 - k. Ensures WD-1 is on board and serviceable.
- .9 _____ Platoon commander/platoon sergeant performs precombat checks on NBC equipment (individual).
 - a. Ensures protective clothing is complete (two sets).
 - b. Ensures protective mask is complete.
 - c. Ensures mask and hoods are serviceable.
 - d. Implements appropriate MOPP level.
 - e. Ensures nerve agent antidote is available to distribute.
- .10 _____ Platoon commander/platoon sergeant performs precombat checks on NBC equipment (vehicles).
 - a. Issues and stores M11 decontamination apparatus.
 - b. Ensures M11 decontamination apparatus is complete, properly stowed and serviceable.
 - c. Ensures there are two cans of DS2 per vehicle.
 - d. Stores operational chemical agent alarm.
 - e. Issues M299 refill kit for each chemical agent alarm.
- .11 _____ Platoon commander/platoon sergeant performs precombat checks on NBC defense equipment.
 - a. Issues one complete and serviceable M256 chemical agent detector kit per wing tank.
 - b. Issues AN/VDR-2 series radiac meters with spare batteries.

ENCLOSURE (1)

- c. Ensures platoon has a minimum of two IM-93/147 dosimeters.
 - d. Issues PP-157A radiac chargers.
 - e. Ensures NBC contamination marking kit is present and full.
 - f. Ensures M8 alarms (two per platoon) are serviceable.
- .12 _____ Platoon commander/platoon sergeant performs precombat checks on crew-served weapons.
- a. Ensures weapons are clean and functional.
Ensures tubes/barrels are clean.
 - b. Ensures spare barrels, cleaning tools, bolts, and ruptured cartridge extractors are present.
 - c. Ensures machine guns are properly mounted/stowed.
 - d. Verifies main gun is operational.

KEY INDICATORS:

CRITICAL STANDARDS

The platoon's equipment and personnel are checked for serviceability and accountability before specified movement time, and deficiencies are corrected.

TASK: 10C.1.4 PERFORM CONSOLIDATION AND REORGANIZATION ACTIVITIES

CONDITION(S): The platoon is conducting offensive or defensive tactical operations and has been ordered to hold its current position (objective or battle position). The Threat's attack has been defeated, or its defenses have been overrun, but it has the capability to counterattack.

STANDARDS: EVAL: Y; N; NE

- .1 _____ The platoon consolidates during offensive operations.
- a. The platoon eliminates any remaining pockets of Threat resistance per commander's orders, either through coordination with friendly dismounted infantry elements or by dismounting crewmen with small arms while being covered by tank weapons systems.
 - b. Platoon occupies position designated in operation order and moves to turret-down positions.
 - c. Platoon commander assigns sectors of fire to each tank commander.
 - d. Platoon commander coordinates with adjacent platoons to establish security and mutual support between platoons.
- .2 _____ The platoon reorganizes during offensive operations.
- a. Platoon commander redistributes personnel and oversees consolidation of KIAs.
 - b. Platoon commander informs company commander of the platoon's status.
 - c. Platoon commander reestablishes communications with units that are out of contact.
 - d. Platoon sergeant supervises essential maintenance.
 - e. Platoon sergeant compiles status reports on personnel, equipment, and supplies from each tank in the platoon and submits a consolidated report to platoon commander and company tank leader.

- f. Platoon sergeant directs cross-leveling of supplies and equipment within the platoon.
- g. Platoon sergeant oversees evacuation of casualties.
- h. Platoon sergeant coordinates movement of enemy prisoners of war (EPW) to the EPW collection point.
- i. Tank commanders reload machine guns and redistribute main gun ammunition to ready areas.
- j. Tank commanders move crewmen wounded in action (WIA) to covered position and provide first aid.
- k. Tank commanders report situation, casualties, and status of supplies and equipment to the platoon sergeant.
- l. Tank commanders conduct essential maintenance.

.3 _____ The platoon consolidates during defensive operations.

- a. Platoon eliminates remaining Threat resistance in the position it is designated to occupy.
- b. Platoon reestablishes security, repositioning OPs if withdrawn earlier.
- c. Platoon commander ensures positions are still mutually supporting, all sectors of fire are covered, and positions are readjusted to cover any gaps caused by disabled tanks.
- d. Platoon commander coordinates with adjacent units to ensure security and mutual support between platoons on either flank.
- e. Platoon replaces obstacles and early warning devices if Threat forces have withdrawn.
- f. Platoon continues to improve positions.

.4 _____ The platoon reorganizes during defensive operations.

- a. Platoon commander redistributes personnel as required by losses.
- b. WIAs are treated and evacuated as necessary by platoon members, overseen by the platoon sergeant, using available transportation.
- c. The platoon's remaining ammunition, supplies, and equipment are cross-leveled within the platoon, overseen by the platoon sergeant.
- d. Platoon sergeant consolidates platoon's ammunition, personnel and equipment status and submits resupply requests to the company tank leader.
- e. Tank commanders reload machine guns to capacity and move main gun ammunition from storage areas to ready areas.
- f. The platoon restores wire and radio communications within the platoon and to company, as necessary.
- g. The platoon performs emergency maintenance.
- h. Platoon commander renders a situation report (SITREP) to the company commander.

KEY INDICATORS:

CRITICAL STANDARDS

The platoon takes all steps necessary to secure its objective or battle position (consolidation) and prepares for continued fighting (reorganization) before the Threat attacks again or counterattacks the platoon.

ENCLOSURE (1)

TASK: 10C.1.5 EMPLOY ELECTRONIC COUNTER-COUNTERMEASURES

CONDITION(S): The platoon is conducting tactical operations in a tactical environment. The Threat has the capability to use electronic warfare (EW) to jam, direction find, and conduct imitative communications deception (ICD) against selected friendly frequencies.

STANDARDS: EVAL: Y; N; NE

- .1 ____ Platoon reduces potential for effective jamming or direction finding.
 - a. Communications equipment is properly tuned.
 - b. SOP is followed for communications during radio silence and emission control conditions.
 - c. Alternate communications means and routes are established (courier, wire).
 - d. Radio silence is observed when directed.
 - e. Terrain is used to mask the platoon's outgoing signals and to shield the platoon's receivers from incoming OPFOR jamming.
 - f. Lowest possible transmitter power settings are used.
 - g. Transmissions are kept as short as possible (20 seconds maximum) and code words used to convey complex messages quickly.
 - h. Encryption devices are used when available.
 - i. Radio is used only when absolutely necessary.
- .2 ____ The platoon recognizes jamming interference. (Antenna is disconnected to distinguish between internal and external interference.)
- .3 ____ The platoon takes antijamming actions.
 - a. Effectiveness of OPFOR jamming is not disclosed over the jammed frequency.
 - b. Transmitting power is increased.
 - c. Transmissions are repeated slowly and distinctly.
 - d. Locations of radios and antennas are changed.
- .4 ____ A meaoning, intrusion, jamming and interference (MIJI) report is completed and forwarded to the company headquarters within 10 minutes of the interference incident.
- .5 ____ The platoon guards against imitative communication deception (ICD) at all times.
 - a. Authentication procedures are followed.
 - b. Authorized brevity lists, prowords, and operations codes from the CEOI are used.
 - c. Authorized frequencies from the unit CEOI are used, and standardized call signs or CEOI callsigns are employed.
 - d. Net discipline is maintained by the platoon leader or net control station (NCS).
 - e. Radio or listening silence obeyed when imposed.

ENCLOSURE (1)

KEY INDICATORS:

CRITICAL STANDARDS

The platoon takes all steps necessary to deter effective jamming or direction finding, recognizes jamming interference, takes antijamming actions, reports interference, and prevents ICD on radio frequencies used by the platoon.

TASK: 10C.1.6 PRODUCE A PLATOON FIRE PLAN

CONDITION(S): The platoon is conducting defensive preparations in a platoon battle position or assembly area. The platoon commander has received an operation order or fragmentary order from the company commander, has issued the platoon operation order or fragmentary order, and has pointed out to each tank commander the engagement areas, TRPs, overlapping sectors of fire, alternate and supplementary firing positions, and indirect fire targets. The platoon has coordinated with adjacent platoons and finalizes the defensive plan. Tank commanders have occupied hull-down positions in their primary fighting positions. The Threat is expected to conduct an attack in the platoon's sector at any time after the NLT-time specified in the operation order.

STANDARDS: EVAL: Y; N; NE

- .1 _____ Each tank crew produces complete sector sketches for each primary, alternate, and supplementary firing position within each occupied and prepared battle position.
 - a. Tank's bumper number, ammunition (if other than HEAT-T), and firing position are identified in upper right corner.
 - b. The tank's sector of fire is bounded by double lines indicating its left and right limits.
 - c. Each target is indicated by word description, a standard map symbol, a military graphic symbol, a military abbreviation, or combinations of the above.
 - d. Range to each known target is indicated.
 - e. Range bands are indicated.
 - f. A legend is included.
- .2 _____ The platoon commander or another individual he designates collects copies of each tank's sector sketches, checks them for completeness and accuracy, and develops a platoon fire plan for each occupied or prepared platoon battle position.
 - a. The platoon's sector is indicated on the plan.
 - b. Individual tank positions are indicated.
 - c. OP locations are shown.
 - d. TRPs and engagement areas are indicated.
 - e. Obstacle locations and types are shown.
 - f. Indirect fire targets are indicated.
 - g. Final protective fires (FPF) depicted, if allocated.
 - h. Range lines are shown.
 - i. A legend/matrix is included listing targets in the platoon's sector and the tanks that can fire on each target, explains direct fire and indirect fire graphics in the sketch, and explains obstacles and barriers present in the platoon's sector.

ENCLOSURE (1)

- .3 ____ The platoon commander checks the completed fire plan and distributes it.
- a. Checks the plan for accuracy and completeness.
 - b. Distributes one copy to each TC and the company commander.
- .4 ____ The platoon repeats the process for other battle positions. (A platoon fire plan is produced for each occupied or prepared battle position the platoon is responsible for.)

KEY INDICATORS:

CRITICAL STANDARDS

The platoon produces complete sector sketches for each tank's primary, alternate, and supplementary fighting positions. The platoon produces a platoon fire plan containing all essential information for each occupied and prepared battle position within one hour of establishing the battle position.

TASK: 10C.1.7 EMPLOY COMMAND AND CONTROL MEASURES

CONDITION(S): The platoon has received an operation order and overlay from its company. The platoon is in continuous operations. Threat contact is possible.

STANDARDS: EVAL: Y; N; NE

- .1 ____ Leaders employ terrain index reference system (TIRS).
- a. Designate each TIRE point with one letter and two numbers (A21) in the upper right-hand quadrant of the tick mark.
 - b. Use TIRE as a tool to maneuver the element.
 - c. Use TIRE to communicate control measures.
- .2 ____ Leaders employ radio monitoring.
- a. Crews listen to platoon radio transmissions.
 - b. Tank commanders stay off the radio unless communication is necessary.
 - c. If part of a message was missed while monitoring, the receiving station requests sender to "say again" the communication missed upon end of transmission.
 - d. Platoon commander monitors the company command net.
 - e. Platoon commander operates on the tank platoon net.
 - f. Platoon sergeant monitors the tank platoon net.
 - g. Platoon sergeant operates on the company command net.
- .3 ____ Leaders assist or control attached/operational control (OPCON) combat support elements (if appropriate).
- a. Explain mission to element leader.
 - b. Control element, if necessary, by issuing orders to it during operations.
- .4 ____ Leaders control platoon maneuver and fires using graphic control measures.
- a. Conduct platoon fires and maneuver coordination in accordance with established control measures.

- b. Report locations is relation to the applicable control measures.
- .5 ____ Leaders control direct fire.
 - a. Issue fire commands.
 - b. Use references to TRPs and/or engagement areas.
 - c. Establish and change target priorities, as necessary.
- .6 ____ Leaders control indirect fires.
 - a. Use assigned forward observer (FO) to engage or shift from preplanned targets.
 - b. Employ fire support coordination measures to speed the responsiveness of fire support units.
 - c. Change target priorities, methods of engagement, shell/fuse combinations, and target effect criteria, as necessary.
 - d. Nominate mortars and/or artillery targets based on known or suspected Threat positions.
 - e. Coordinate for employment of CAS/CIFS, if available.

KEY INDICATORS:

CRITICAL STANDARDS

The platoon's use of command and control techniques facilitates the tactical plan and ensures the successful accomplishment of the mission.

10C.2 INTELLIGENCE AND ELECTRONIC WARFARE

TASK: 10C.2.1 EMPLOY CAMOUFLAGE AND COUNTERSURVEILLANCE MEASURES

CONDITION(S): The platoon is stationary or moving in a tactical environment, where natural cover and concealment are inadequate. Natural materials (shrubs, grasses, mud) or artificial materials (burlap, screens, nets) are available. The Threat is capable of ground or air surveillance, but Threat ground contact is not expected.

STANDARDS: EVAL: Y; N; NE

- .1 ____ At all times, the platoon minimizes the need to camouflage by wise positioning and by maintaining discipline.
 - a. Maximizes the use of natural concealment when positioning or moving the vehicles.
 - b. Enforces noise, light, and litter discipline.
- .2 ____ During tactical operations, the platoon effectively camouflages personnel and vehicles.
 - a. Breaks up turret and main gun appearance with natural foliage and camouflage nets.
 - b. Does not hinder optics, weapon systems operation, or present a fire hazard by proximity of nets or foliage to weapons or exhaust.
 - c. Does not present a larger or more visible target.
 - d. Ties down all antennas.

- e. Whitewashes vehicles when operating in snow.
 - f. Camouflages the faces, hands, helmet, and equipment of dismounted personnel.
- .3 ____ During actions at a halt, the platoon uses expedient measures to conceal itself.
- .4 ____ When camouflage netting and support systems are employed, the platoon correctly emplaces them.
- a. Nets do not touch excessively hot items which may cause them to catch fire.
 - b. Nets are supported by poles and tie downs.
 - c. Nets or supports do not hinder the operation of the vehicle.
 - d. The platoon's nets do not form a straight line or geometric patterns on the ground which would clue Threat aircraft or observers.
- .5 ____ If natural materials are used, the platoon correctly gathers, emplaces, and maintains them.
- a. The platoon matches the foliage to the background in which the platoon operates.
 - b. The platoon replaces natural foliage every 12 hours or when it changes positions.
- .6 ____ All the tanks in the platoon maintain camouflage.
- .7 ____ The platoon eliminates unit identifications on its vehicles and reduces bright or reflective vision signatures from its equipment during extended halts.
- a. All vehicle markings, such as unit or personnel identification and march serial numbers, are masked or removed when no longer needed.
 - b. All reflective surfaces on vehicles are covered.
 - c. Bright engineer tape is not used.
 - d. The area is free of personal items such as towels, washcloths, or underclothing which contrast with the natural surroundings.
 - e. Freshly dug earth from fighting positions is camouflaged or removed.
 - f. Trash, tarpaulins, gas cans, tent liners, and the like are hidden from Threat observation.
- .8 ____ The platoon limits necessary movement to existing roads and paths during extended halts.
- a. New footpaths between unit elements, to heads, and to mess areas are not created during extended halts.
 - b. Movement to and from main areas is minimized.
 - c. Tracks left by vehicles moving into defensive positions are obliterated or are continued beyond destination.
- .9 ____ The platoon continuously enforces noise and light discipline and minimizes thermal signatures.
- a. Maintains volume and squelch on radios at lowest setting consistent with operational requirements. Operators use CVC helmets or headsets whenever possible.
 - b. Restricts loud voices, vehicle start-ups, and weapon test fires.
 - c. Minimizes heating of vehicles and tents.
 - d. During evening hours, minimize use of lighting. Use of white light is restricted to light-tight vehicles and shelters. Flashlights are filtered. Passive night vision devices are utilized to maximum extent possible.

KEY INDICATORS:

CRITICAL STANDARDS

Camouflage vehicles and equipment so that they are: (1) hidden behind natural or artificial screens and not visible from air or ground; (2) blended into surroundings so that Threat observations are disrupted (shape, texture, and color are adapted to fit into background); (3) cannot be detected from 100 meters away. The platoon takes additional steps to minimize its detection by Threat observers during extended halts.

TASK: 10C.2.2 ESTABLISH AN OBSERVATION POST

CONDITION(S): The platoon is operating in a tactical environment and must halt movement in a position that does not provide adequate observation or early warning of Threat activities. The platoon has been assigned a sector of responsibility to watch for Threat activity. Threat contact is possible or expected.

STANDARDS: EVAL: Y; N; NE

- .1 ____ Platoon commander/platoon sergeant recons the area to site the OP.
 - a. Selects a position that provides good observation of sectors and provides early warning of Threat activities.
 - b. Selects multiple positions if one OP cannot cover the platoon's sector.
 - c. Ensures that positions have overlapping fields of view.
 - d. Ensures that positions provide good cover and concealment.
 - e. Ensures the positions are within small arms supporting range of the platoon.
 - f. Ensures that positions have covered and concealed routes back to the platoon's position.
- .2 ____ Platoon commander/platoon sergeant assigns at least two personnel per OP and briefs them prior to sending them out.
 - a. When, where and how to locate the OP.
 - b. When and how to report.
 - c. When and how to withdraw.
 - d. If and when to fire at a Threat target.
 - e. Challenge and password.
 - f. When they will be replaced.
- .3 ____ The OP personnel collect essential equipment.
 - a. Individual weapons or M16A1 rifles.
 - b. Flag set and TA-1/TA-312 telephone.
 - c. MOPP suits and protective masks.
 - d. Binoculars and night-vision goggles and scopes.
 - e. Map and compass.
 - f. Flashlights with filter.
 - g. Helmets and web gear with canteen, first aid pouch, and ammunition pouches.

ENCLOSURE (1)

- .4 _____ If the platoon is to be in position for less than six hours, it establishes a hasty OP.
 - a. Establishes communication between the platoon and its OPs by hooking the telephone into the hot loop wire or by using flags.
 - b. Camouflages position, vehicles, and equipment.
 - c. Camouflages withdrawal routes, as necessary.
 - d. Reinforces position using logs, rocks, and sandbags.
 - e. Continues to improve position.
- .5 _____ If the platoon is to be in position for more than six hours, it establishes a deliberate OP.
 - a. OP personnel draw additional equipment: shovel, mattock, and pick; M8 chemical agent alarm; and claymore mines, trip flares, colored star clusters, and smoke and fragmentation grenades.
 - b. The OP establishes communication with the platoon by hooking the telephone into the hot loop wire or by using flags.
 - c. The OP emplaces M8 chemical agent alarms by unit SOP.
 - d. OP personnel prepare two-man fighting positions, chest-deep with grenade sump.
 - e. OP personnel camouflage their positions, dirt mound to front, and overhead.
 - f. The OP improves its covered and concealed route to and from OP position and conceals hot loop wire.
 - g. Each OP emplaces claymore mines and trip flares to front and flanks.
 - h. Each OP improves its position.
- .6 _____ Both hasty and deliberate OP personnel develop an OP sketch card.
 - a. Depicts platoon's position.
 - b. Shows OP's position and patrol routes.
 - c. Shows sectors of observation and reference points.
 - d. Shows small arms fields of fire.
 - e. Depicts location of obstacles and booby traps.
 - f. Shows platoon's TRPs and engagement area (defense).
 - g. Shows indirect-fire targets (defense).
 - h. Depicts platoon's trigger point and break point (defense).
 - i. Outlines all dead space.
- .7 _____ The platoon operates the OP.
 - a. Searches assigned sectors continuously, using search techniques.
 - b. Conducts a communication check every 30 minutes or by unit SOP.
 - c. Switches observers within OP every 20 to 30 minutes; more often in extreme cold or wet conditions.
 - d. Sets up and inspects night-vision devices prior to darkness to ensure they are complete and operational.
 - e. Conducts surveillance using night-vision devices during hours of darkness.

- f. Uses senses to determine Threat activities: sight, sound, smell, touch (vibration), and common sense.
- g. Maintains noise, light, and litter discipline.
- h. Collects and reports tactical information by hot loop or uses appropriate flag signals to alert the platoon to enemy activities in sector.
- i. Challenges unrecognized personnel approaching the OP.
- j. Returns to the platoon's position only on order, when relieved, or to avoid capture.

KEY INDICATORS:

CRITICAL STANDARDS

The platoon establishes an OP which provides early warning of Threat activities within its assigned sector of responsibility.

TASK: 10C.2.3 PROCESS ENEMY PRISONERS OF WAR

CONDITION(S): The platoon is conducting continuous tactical operations. Threat personnel have surrendered or have been captured.

STANDARDS: EVAL: Y; N; NE

- .1 ____ Platoon commander establishes EPW holding area.
- .2 ____ Platoon commander/platoon sergeant reports the capture of EPWs to the company XO or tank leader.
 - a. Number of personnel captured is reported.
 - b. Date and time of capture are reported.
 - c. Place of capture is reported by grid coordinates.
 - d. Circumstances of capture are reported.
- .3 ____ The platoon "SEARCHES" each prisoner.
 - a. Removes all weapons and documents and processes captured material and equipment.
 - b. Thoroughly examines ID cards, protective masks, and other protective equipment, and returns them to the EPWs.
 - c. Gives each prisoner from whom personal property is taken a written receipt for the property.
 - d. Tags EPWs with date, time, place (grid coordinates), and circumstances of capture, and capturing unit.
- .4 ____ The platoon "SEGREGATES" EPWs within the holding area.
 - a. Segregates EPWs by nationality, sex, rank (field grade, company grade officers, NCOs, enlisted Marines, civilians), deserters, and ideology.
 - b. Turns wounded EPWs over to medical personnel for evacuation through medical channels.
- .5 ____ The platoon "SILENCES" prisoners.
 - a. Prevents EPW leaders from giving orders.

ENCLOSURE (1)

- b. Prevents EPWs from planning escape.
 - c. Records everything prisoners say, if possible.
 - d. Does not talk in front of EPWs except to issue orders and maintain discipline.
- .6 ____ The platoon "SPEEDS" the evacuation of prisoners to the company or battalion EPW collection or holding area, as given in the operation order or SOP.
- a. The platoon rapidly moves the EPWs to the rear according to unit SOP, or
 - b. The platoon leader requests special instructions for EFW disposition from the commander.
- .7 ____ The platoon "SAFEGAURDS" the EFWs.
- a. Removes EPWs from the dangers of the battlefield.
 - b. Prevents abuse to the EPWs.
 - c. Does not allow civilians to give the EFWs food or water.
 - d. Treats EFWs humanely.
- .8 ____ The platoon continues its mission.

KEY INDICATORS:

CRITICAL STANDARDS

The platoon utilizes the five "S's" in processing enemy prisoners of war (EPWs) for evacuation to the company's EFW holding area within six hours of capture.

TASK: 10C.2.4 PROCESS CAPTURED DOCUMENTS AND EQUIPMENT

CONDITION(S): The platoon is conducting continuous operations and has captured Threat equipment and documents as part of a tactical operation.

STANDARDS: EVAL: Y; N; NE

- .1 ____ The platoon secures captured Threat equipment and documents.
- .2 ____ Platoon commander/platoon sergeant reports the capture to the company XO or tank leader.
 - a. Reports that items have been captured.
 - b. Details types of documents and equipment captured in the report.
 - c. Reports the time and date of capture.
 - d. Reports place of capture in grid coordinates.
 - e. Reports circumstances of capture.
 - f. Platoon commander/platoon sergeant requests instructions for disposition of the captured items.
- .3 ____ The platoon tags captured documents and equipment.
- .4 ____ The platoon handles documents and equipment according to instructions or SOP.
 - a. Evacuates documents through the chain of command to battalion S2 by unit SOP.

ENCLOSURE (1)

- b. Destroys, secures, evacuates, or abandons the captured materiel and equipment in accordance with instructions received or unit SOP and the laws of war.

.5 ____ The platoon continues its mission.

KEY INDICATORS:

CRITICAL STANDARDS

The platoon reports the capture of, then secures, destroys, or evacuates all captured documents and equipment based on disposition instructions from the parent unit and is prepared to continue with the unit's mission.

10C.3 MANEUVER

TASK: 10C.3.1 PERFORM ASSEMBLY AREA ACTIVITIES

CONDITION(S): The platoon receives orders to occupy an assembly area as part of an operation. A quartering party has already been dispatched to the assembly area and guides are positioned at the release point (RP). The platoon has concluded its movement along the route given in the operation order and has arrived at the RP. Threat contact is not expected.

STANDARDS: EVAL: Y; N; NE

- .1 ____ The platoon arrives at the RP and moves into the assembly area.
 - a. Vehicles take directions from the guide stationed at the RP.
 - b. Vehicles move off the route of march without stopping or blocking traffic.
- .2 ____ The platoon occupies the assembly area.
 - a. Vehicles slow movement but do not stop or block traffic.
 - b. Vehicles take directions from guides and move into marked vehicle positions (using ground guides as necessary).
 - c. Weapon systems are oriented outward to cover sectors of responsibility.
 - d. Following proper cool-down procedures, the platoon shuts down engines simultaneously.
 - e. Platoon commander reports arrival of the platoon to the parent unit once all vehicles are set.
 - f. Quartering party briefs platoon leader on the organization of the assembly area.
- .3 ____ The platoon establishes local security.
 - a. Emplaces early warning devices for security.
 - b. Establishes dismounted OPs or listening posts (LP) outside of the perimeter area as directed.
- .4 ____ Platoon sergeant establishes priority of work to be performed in the assembly area and supervises its execution.
 - a. Establishes lateral contact with adjacent units.
 - b. Gunners and TCs develop fire sketches for small arms and main gun fires.

ENCLOSURE (1)

- c. Loaders establish hot loop including every platoon vehicle, all OPs, and the company command post.
 - d. The platoon camouflages vehicles and equipment.
- .5 ____ The platoon conforms to company-designated REDCON level and prepares for tactical operations.

KEY INDICATORS:

CRITICAL STANDARDS

The platoon enters the assembly area without stopping or blocking route of march and performs all assembly area activities per instructions and in accordance with work priorities.

TASK: 10C.3.2 EXECUTE A COIL FORMATION

CONDITION(S): The platoon is moving independently in any tactical formation in a tactical environment and must halt for an extended period of time. Terrain is suitable for off-route movement and provides cover and concealment for the platoon. Threat contact is not likely.

STANDARDS: EVAL: Y; N; NE

- .1 ____ Platoon commander hastily recons terrain off of the route of march.
- a. Selected location for the coil provides the platoon cover and concealment.
 - b. Location permits adequate trafficability.
 - c. Location affords close proximity to the route of march.
- .2 ____ Platoon commander orders the platoon to form a coil.
- a. Uses proper hand-and-arm signal, or
 - b. Uses proper voice commands on the FM radio.
 - c. Subordinate tank commanders acknowledge the platoon commander's signal or radio message.
- .3 ____ The platoon executes the coil using the clock method.
- a. The lead vehicle takes up a position along the direction of travel. This is the 12 o'clock position.
 - b. The second vehicle takes up either the 3 o'clock or 9 o'clock position based on the unit SOP.
 - c. The third vehicle takes up either the 9 o'clock or 3 o'clock position based on the second vehicle and unit SOP.
 - d. The fourth vehicle takes up the 6 o'clock position.
 - e. Each tank commander occupies covered and concealed positions to the extent allowed by METT-TSL.
 - f. Each tank commander orients weapon systems outward to provide the platoon 360-degree security.
 - g. The platoon establishes local security.
 - h. Depending on METT-TSL, vehicles are sufficiently dispersed in the area available.

KEY INDICATORS:

CRITICAL STANDARDS

The platoon executes the coil formation quickly, does not block the route of march, and establishes 360-degree observation and fields of fire.

TASK: 10C.3.3 EXECUTE A HERRINGBONE FORMATION

CONDITION(S): The platoon, moving either independently or with the company in a column or staggered column formation, is required to conduct either a scheduled or unscheduled halt for a short time. Terrain is suitable for off-route movement. Threat contact is not likely.

STANDARDS: EVAL: Y; N; NE

- .1 ____ Platoon commander acknowledges the order if received from the company commander.

Platoon commander orders the herringbone formation.

- .1 ____ Uses the proper hand-and-arm signal, or
.2 ____ Uses proper voice command on the FM radio.
.3 ____ TCs acknowledge the platoon commander's signal or radio message.

The platoon executes the herringbone formation without delay.

- .1 ____ All TCs move to alternate sides of the movement route and orient their tanks' hulls outward.
.2 ____ Each TC maintains dispersion and proper interval in accordance with METT-TSL, platoon's SOP, and platoon leader's guidance.
.3 ____ Each TC occupies covered and concealed positions.
.4 ____ Lead tank orients main gun toward the column's direction of travel.
.5 ____ Trail tank orients main gun opposite to the direction of travel.
.6 ____ Other tanks orient main gun toward the flank of the column corresponding to their direction of travel after exiting the route.
.7 ____ The platoon establishes local security.

If a scheduled halt, the platoon performs required maintenance and resupply actions.

If an unscheduled halt, the platoon performs required actions.

- .1 ____ Determines cause of halt.
.2 ____ Informs commander.
.3 ____ Develops course of action.
4 ____ Resumes movement as soon as possible.

ENCLOSURE (1)

KEY INDICATORS:

CRITICAL STANDARDS

The platoon executes the herringbone formation without delay, does not block the route of march, and provides 360-degree ground and air security.

TASK: 10C.3.4 EXECUTE A COLUMN FORMATION

CONDITION(S): The platoon is required to move along a designated route where speed is essential. The terrain is suitable for movement into a column formation. Less fire is required to the front of the formation than to the flanks, and close control of the platoon is essential. The platoon may be operating at night, during limited visibility, or in daylight. Threat contact is not expected.

STANDARDS: EVAL: Y; N; NE

- .1 ____ Platoon commander orders the column formation.
 - a. Uses the proper hand-and-arm signal, or
 - b. Uses the proper voice command on the FM radio.
 - c. Subordinate TCs acknowledge the platoon commander's signal or radio message.
- .2 ____ The platoon executes the column formation without delay.
 - a. The platoon commander positions himself where he can best control his element.
 - b. Lead vehicle's TC is thoroughly briefed on the route of march or is familiar with it.
 - c. All TCs ensure their vehicle maintains interval and speed in accordance with platoon leader's guidance or platoon SOP (open column: 100 m; closed column: 50 m; or dust interval).
 - d. The platoon orients weapon systems to provide 360-degree security. The last tank orients its gun tube to the rear if the platoon is the last in a company column or if the platoon is operating independently.

KEY INDICATORS:

CRITICAL STANDARDS

The platoon executes the column formation without delay and without stopping movement.

TASK: 10C.3.5 EXECUTE A STAGGERED COLUMN FORMATION

CONDITION(S): The platoon is moving or is required to conduct a movement along a designated route where flexibility, overwatch by the trail section, and improved all-around security are desired, but speed is not essential. The terrain will permit movement in a staggered column. Threat contact is not expected.

ENCLOSURE (1)

STANDARDS: EVAL: Y; N; NE

- .1 _____ Platoon commander identifies terrain and situation that require a staggered column formation.
- .2 _____ Platoon commander orders the staggered column formation.
 - a. Uses the proper hand-and-arm signal, or
 - b. Uses the proper voice command on the PN radio.
 - c. Subordinate TCs acknowledge the platoon commander's signal or radio message.
- .3 _____ The platoon executes the staggered column formation without delay.
 - a. The platoon commander positions himself where he can best control the platoon.
 - b. After lead vehicle, other vehicles fall in behind so that vehicles are staggered on alternating sides of the prescribed route.
 - c. Trail section provides overwatch to the lead section, as necessary.
 - d. Tanks maintain interval and speed in accordance with METT-TSL, platoon SOP, and platoon commander's guidance (traveling or overwatch).
 - e. The platoon orients weapon systems to provide 360-degree security. The last tank orients its gun tube to the rear if the platoon is the last in a company staggered column or if the platoon is operating independently.

KEY INDICATORS:

CRITICAL STANDARDS

The platoon executes a staggered column formation without delay and without stopping movement.

TASK: 10C.3.6 EXECUTE A WEDGE FORMATION

CONDITION(S): The platoon is moving in any tactical environment and is required to execute tactical cross-country movement while being overwatched by another unit. Excellent fields of fire to the front and flanks are required. The terrain will permit movement into the wedge formation. Threat contact is possible.

STANDARDS: EVAL: Y; N; NE

- .1 _____ Platoon commander identifies the terrain and situation that require a wedge formation. (Terrain offers sufficient lateral space, platoon is overwatched by another element, and excellent observation and fires to the front are required. Good observation and fires to the flanks and control are required.)
- .2 _____ Platoon commander orders the wedge formation.
 - a. Uses the proper hand-and-arm signal, or
 - b. Uses the proper voice command on the FM radio.
 - c. Subordinate TCs acknowledge the platoon commander's signal or radio message.
- .3 _____ The platoon executes the wedge formation without delay.
 - a. The platoon commander positions himself at either the 1 o'clock or 11 o'clock position where he can best control his platoon and according to his SOP.

- b. The platoon sergeant positions himself opposite the platoon leader at either the 11 o'clock or 1 o'clock position.
- c. The wingmen take up positions behind and to the outside of their respective section leader.
- d. Each TC maintains his tank's interval and speed in accordance with METT-TSL, platoon SOP, and platoon leader's guidance.
- e. Platoon orients weapon systems to provide security to the front and flanks.

KEY INDICATORS:

CRITICAL STANDARDS

The platoon executes the wedge formation without delay and without stopping movement.

TASK: 10C.3.7 EXECUTE A LINE FORMATION

CONDITION(S): The platoon is moving or is in a stationary formation and is required to assault a Threat position or cross open terrain as quickly as possible with maximum firepower to the front. The terrain will permit movement into a line formation. The platoon is overwatched by another element. Threat contact is possible, expected, or in progress.

STANDARDS: EVAL: Y; N; NE

- .1 ____ Platoon commander identifies the terrain and situation that require a line formation. (Terrain is open, maximum fire power forward is essential, and the platoon must assault a position, cross a danger area, or move on-line to occupy a defensive overwatch position.)

Platoon commander orders the line formation.

- .1 ____ Uses the proper hand-and-arm signal, or
- .2 ____ Uses the proper voice command on the PM radio.
- .3 ____ Subordinate TCs acknowledge the platoon commander's signal or radio message.

The platoon executes the line formation without delay.

- .1 ____ Platoon commander positions himself where he can best control his platoon.
- .2 ____ Platoon sergeant positions his tank to the left (or right) and abreast of the platoon leader per SOP.
- .3 ____ The wingmen take up positions to the outside of and abreast with their respective section leaders.
- .4 ____ Each TC maintains his vehicle's lateral dispersion and interval accordance with METT-TSL, platoon SOP, and platoon leader's guidance.
- .5 ____ The platoon orients weapon systems to provide security to the front.

KEY INDICATORS:

CRITICAL STANDARDS

The platoon executes the line formation without delay.

ENCLOSURE (1)

TASK: 10C.3.8 EXECUTE AN ECHELON FORMATION

CONDITION(S): The platoon is moving or is in a stationary formation and is required to execute tactical cross-country movement while screening an exposed flank as part of a company. The platoon may also use the echelon formation to bypass Threat forces as part of a contact drill where firepower to the front and to one flank is desired. Terrain permits movement into an echelon. Threat contact is possible or expected.

STANDARDS: EVAL: Y; N; NE

- .1 _____ Platoon commander identifies the terrain and situation that require an echelon formation. (The platoon is moving as part of a larger force for which it must screen one flank or is conducting a contact drill where it must bypass a Threat force while providing fires to the front and one flank.)
- .2 _____ Platoon commander orders the echelon formation.
 - a. Uses the proper hand-and-arm signal, or
 - b. Uses the proper voice command on the PM radio.
 - c. Subordinate TCs acknowledge the platoon commander's signal or radio message.
- .3 _____ The platoon executes the echelon formation without delay.
 - a. Platoon commander positions himself where he can best control his platoon. Normally this will be the lead tank but may be the second.
 - b. The second tank (platoon commander or his wingman) takes up a position, echeloned (left or right), behind the lead tank.
 - c. The platoon sergeant takes up a position, echeloned (left or right), behind the second tank.
 - d. The platoon sergeant's wingman takes up a position, echeloned (left or right), behind the platoon sergeant's tank.
 - e. Each TC maintains his vehicle's lateral dispersion and interval in accordance with METT-TSL, platoon SOP, and platoon commander's guidance.
 - f. The platoon orients weapon systems to provide fires to the front and in the direction of echelon (left or right).

KEY INDICATORS:

CRITICAL STANDARDS

The platoon executes the line formation without delay.

ENCLOSURE (1)

TASK: 10C.3.9 EXECUTE TRAVELING

CONDITION(S): The platoon is operating in a tactical environment where Threat contact is not likely and speed is essential; or the platoon is operating in a tactical environment and is overwatched by another unit where Threat contact is possible and speed is essential.

STANDARDS: EVAL: Y; N; NE

- .1 ____ Platoon commander chooses to use the traveling technique of movement based on METT-TSL.
 - a. Platoon commander selects and orders the best formation to support the technique of movement based on METT-TSL.
 - b. Subordinate TCs acknowledge the platoon commander's signal or radio message.
- .2 ____ The platoon executes the technique of movement and formation as ordered.
 - a. Platoon commander positions himself where he can best control the platoon for the formation ordered.
 - b. Each TC maintains or adjusts his vehicle's position, interval, and speed based on the formation and METT-TSL.
 - c. The platoon establishes all-around movement security if moving independently or orients in the direction(s) given in the operation order, fragmentary order, or SOP if moving as part of a larger force.
 - d. Each TC maintains his vehicle's orientation using the wingman concept.
 - e. The platoon moves continuously and as quickly as METT-TSL will allow.

KEY INDICATORS:

CRITICAL STANDARDS

The platoon moves as fast as the factors of METT-TSL will allow, as a unit, and in the proper formation.

TASK: 10C.3.10 EXECUTE TRAVELING OVERWATCH

CONDITION(S): The platoon is operating in a tactical environment where Threat contact is possible. The platoon may or may not be overwatched by another unit.

STANDARDS: EVAL: Y; N; NE

- .1 ____ Platoon commander chooses to use the traveling overwatch technique of movement based on METT-TSL.
 - a. Platoon commander selects and orders the best formation to support the technique of movement based on METT-TSL.
 - b. Subordinate TCs acknowledge the platoon commander's signal or radio message.
- .2 ____ Traveling and overwatch sections are designated by the platoon commander. (Platoon commander orders which section will lead and which will follow, if different from SOP.)
- .3 ____ The traveling section's senior leader (platoon commander or platoon sergeant) leads the movement.
 - a. Guides the direction on movement while controlling the speed of the lead section.
 - b. Ensures that the platoon uses the best covered and concealed routes.

ENCLOSURE (1)

- c. Gains information on the Threat situation.
- .4 ____ The overwatch section's senior leader (platoon commander or platoon sergeant) maintains continuous target acquisition efforts, continuously scans possible Threat positions.
- .5 ____ The traveling section conducts the move.
 - a. Moves continuously on a covered and concealed route.
 - b. Maintains or adjusts position, interval, and speed, based on formation, wingman concept, and METT-TSL.
 - c. Orients sectors of fire to the front and flanks.
- .6 ____ The overwatch section moves while providing continuous overwatch.
 - a. Moves at variable speeds and distances behind the traveling section, based on formation, wingman concept, and METT-TSL, to provide a mobile overwatch.
 - b. Pauses in hull-down positions to provide a stationary overwatch of the traveling section as necessary.
 - c. Continuously observes the traveling section's movement.
 - d. Continuously observes the terrain that dominates the traveling section's axis for possible Threat contact.
 - e. Keys on traveling section's movements and actions, and moves to ensure a constant overwatch is provided.
- .7 ____ The platoon adjusts to circumstances which prevent effective overwatch.
 - a. The overwatch section alerts the traveling section by code word on the PM radio.
 - b. Traveling section adjusts speed and direction of movement to allow overwatch section to reposition.
 - c. If necessary, and only if time and situation permit, the platoon commander changes techniques of movement to bounding overwatch to allow the overwatch section to catch up or reposition.

KEY INDICATORS:

CRITICAL STANDARDS

The platoon's lead section continues to move while the trailing section provides internal overwatch on the move or at temporary halts.

TASK: 10C.3.11 EXECUTE BOUNDING OVERWATCH

CONDITION(S): The platoon is operating in a tactical environment where Threat contact is probable. The platoon may or may not be overwatched by another unit.

STANDARDS: EVAL: Y; N; NE

- .1 ____ Platoon commander chooses to use the bounding overwatch technique of movement based on METT-TSL.
 - a. Platoon commander selects and orders the best bounding overwatch technique (alternate or successive bounds) based on METT-TSL.
 - b. Subordinate TCs acknowledge the platoon commander's signal or radio message.

ENCLOSURE (1)

- .2 ____ Platoon commander orders which section will bound first and which will follow, if different from SOP.
- .3 ____ The bounding section's senior leader (platoon commander or platoon sergeant) leads the movement.
 - a. Guides the direction of movement while controlling the speed of the lead section.
 - b. Ensures that the section uses the best covered and concealed routes.
 - c. Moves about 400-500 meters and then "sets" in covered and concealed positions and reports "set".
 - d. Gains information on the Threat situation.
- .4 ____ The overwatch section's senior leader (platoon commander or platoon sergeant) maintains continuous target acquisition efforts, continuously scans possible Threat positions.
- .5 ____ After the lead section reports "set" the stationary section begins movement.
 - a. Moves continuously using the best covered and concealed route.
 - b. Maintains or adjusts position, interval, and speed, based on formation, wingman concept, and METT-TSL.
 - c. Orients sectors of fire to the front and flanks.
 - d. Moves roughly even with lead section and sets (if using successive bounds).
 - e. Moves about 400-500 ahead of lead section and sets (if using alternate bounds).
 - f. Reports "set".
- .6 ____ The lead section provides continuous overwatch as the trail section conducts it's move.
- .7 ____ The lead section begins it's second movement after the trail section reports "set".
- .8 ____ The platoon adjusts to circumstances which prevent effective overwatch.
 - a. The overwatch section alerts the moving section by code word on the FM radio.
 - b. Moving section adjusts speed and direction of movement to allow overwatch section to regain overwatch capability.

KEY INDICATORS:

CRITICAL STANDARDS

The platoon's sections move alternately and the stationary section provides overwatch for the moving section.

TASK: 10C.3.12 CONDUCT A TACTICAL ROAD MARCH

CONDITION(S): The platoon has been given an operation order or fragmentary order, complete with graphics, to conduct a tactical road march as part of a company operation. Threat contact is not expected.

ENCLOSURE (1)

STANDARDS: EVAL: Y; N; NE

- .1 _____ Platoon commander performs tactical planning upon receiving the operation order or fragmentary order.
 - a. Determines time required to move the platoon from its present position to the start point (SP).
 - b. Subtracts this time from the SP time to determine time to move out (backward planning).
- .2 _____ The platoon commander issues the platoon's operation order or fragmentary order, including all information essential to the movement.
 - a. Move-out time and SP time.
 - b. Order of march and formation.
 - c. March speed, rate of march, catch-up speed, and interval.
 - d. Locations and actions to be taken at halts and critical points.
 - e. Times to clear SP, critical pints, and RP.
 - f. Conducts a time check.
- .3 _____ The platoon prepares for tactical operations. (Is at the required REDCON level to meet the move-out time.)
- .4 _____ The platoon begins to move at the move-out time in the direction of the SP.
 - a. Establishes all-around movement security.
 - b. Maintains proper formation and technique of movement.
 - c. Maintains proper interval (open or closed column) and proper march rate (within 5 kmph).
 - d. Maintains proper order of march.
 - e. Follows the prescribed route of march, without deviation.
 - f. Crosses SP within one minute of designated time without stopping or exceeding the catch-up speed specified in the operation order or fragmentary order.
- .5 _____ The platoon conducts the road march per operation order or fragmentary order and reacts to unforeseen circumstances with minimal delay.
 - a. TCs communicate within the platoon using hand-and-arm signals whenever possible.
 - b. The platoon commander reports all graphic control measures within one minute of crossing, as required by the company operation order or fragmentary order.
 - c. The platoon executes actions at a halt during scheduled or unscheduled halts.
 - d. The platoon executes actions at an existing obstacle, as necessary.
 - e. Broken down vehicles are reported, bypassed, or recovered, as applicable, without stopping the entire unit or delaying the move.
 - f. The platoon meets quartering party guides at the RP and passes through the RP without halting or blocking the route of march.

ENCLOSURE (1)

KEY INDICATORS:

CRITICAL STANDARDS

The platoon executes the road march as ordered within the time requirements specified in the operation order or fragmentary order.

TASK: 10C.3.13 MOVE IN A BUILT-UP AREA

CONDITION(S): The platoon is conducting a tactical movement as part of a company operation. The platoon is required to pass through or move into a built-up area. A Threat dismounted platoon is in hasty defensive positions in the built-up area. An infantry unit has been directed to lead the movement with the platoon providing support.

STANDARDS: EVAL: Y; N; NE

- .1 _____ Platoon commander, in coordination with the infantry unit leader(s), conducts a physical or map reconnaissance, based on METT-TSL, of the routes to be used by the team in the built-up area.
 - a. Identifies primary and supporting routes.
 - b. Identifies approach routes to the built-up area.
 - c. Identifies restrictive locations along the route that may provide ambush positions.
 - d. Identifies dominating structures along the route.
 - e. Identifies routes out of the built-up area once cleared.
- .2 _____ Coordinates locations within the built-up area and along the route of movement for rally points. (Upon reaching the edge of the built-up area, the platoon commander orders the platoon into a staggered column formation.)
- .3 _____ The platoon provides overwatch and direct-fire support for the dismounted infantry.
 - a. Executes bounding overwatch by sections on alternate sides of the street.
 - b. Orients main guns along main axis of advance and high-speed avenues of approach.
 - c. Orients machine guns to cover the three-dimensional battlefield of urban terrain (cellars, side streets, roofs, and windows).
 - d. Maintains visual contact with lead elements and dismounted infantry.
 - e. Executes contact drill and action drill, as necessary.
 - f. Platoon commander reports to the commander once the built-up area is cleared.

KEY INDICATORS:

CRITICAL STANDARDS

The platoon continuously supports the infantry unit with observation and tank fires as it clears the built-up area. The platoon does not become separated from its dismounted support during the movement and does not sustain any losses as a result of Threat action.

TASK: 10C.3.14 ASSIST A PASSAGE OF LINES

CONDITION(S): The platoon is stationary and in a hasty or deliberate defensive battle position. The platoon has received an operation order or fragmentary order to assist the passage of another force through its position. Threat contact is possible. The passing force is either to the rear of the platoon and will conduct a forward passage of lines or is fighting a defensive battle forward of the platoon and must conduct a rearward passage through the platoon and hand over the battle to it.

STANDARDS: EVAL: Y; N; NE

- .1 _____ Platoon commander requests information about the passing unit from the company commander, if it is not covered in the operation order or fragmentary order.
 - a. Composition by type and number of vehicles of passing unit.
 - b. Passage points and passage lanes (primary and alternate).
 - c. Recognition signals and guide activities.
 - d. Location of attack position (forward passage) or assembly area (rearward passage) to be occupied by the passing force.
 - e. CEOI information.
 - f. Moving unit arrival time at contact points.
 - g. Battle handover procedures (rearward passage only).
 - h. Threat situation.
 - i. Barriers, minefields, and obstacles.
- .2 _____ The platoon commander issues fragmentary order to the platoon, including information critical to passage.
 - a. Recognition signals.
 - b. CEOI information.
 - c. Attack positions or assembly areas.
 - d. Release points.
 - e. Threat situation.
 - f. Contact points and passage lanes.
- .3 _____ The platoon deploys to assist passage.
 - a. Establishes contact points and/or passage points if so directed by higher headquarters.
 - b. Establishes overwatch positions.
 - c. Reconnoiters and marks routes for passing unit.
 - d. Mans obstacles the platoon is responsible to execute.
- .4 _____ The platoon guides passing units.
 - a. Guides the passing unit along specified routes to designated location.
 - b. Reports completion of the passage.
 - c. Closes passage lanes through obstacles.

ENCLOSURE (1)

KEY INDICATORS:

CRITICAL STANDARDS

The platoon assists the passing force so that no personnel or equipment losses are inflicted due to fratricide and no breaches of security occur.

TASK: 10C.3.15 PERFORM A PASSAGE OF LINES

CONDITION(S): The platoon has received an operation order or fragmentary order, complete with graphics, to conduct a forward or rearward passage of lines as part of a company operation. The platoon leader has been ordered to perform as the liaison officer for the passing force unit or has been thoroughly briefed by the commander on the conduct of the passage. Threat contact during the passage is possible.

STANDARDS: EVAL: Y; N; NE

- .1 ____ The platoon commander, if selected as the passing force's liaison officer, moves to the contact point to make coordination.
 - a. The passing and stationary force liaison elements identify and authenticate each other at the contact point by using recognition signals (day or night) based on the CEOI or unit SOP, prior to the exchange of any information.
 - b. The passing and stationary force liaison elements secure the contact point by providing 360-degree security.
- .2 ____ The stationary force's liaison officer provides critical information.
 - a. Identification of unit to support the passage.
 - b. Threat situation to the front.
 - c. Friendly situation and location of units.
 - d. Stationary unit's mission and battle plans.
 - e. Location of stationary unit's trains and fire support elements.
 - f. Locations of contact points, passage lanes, passage points, RP, traffic control points, and guides.
 - g. Locations of OPs and patrol routes.
 - h. Obstacle locations and types.
 - i. Combat support (CS) and combat service support (CSS) to be provided and location of units.
 - j. Supporting direct and indirect fires available.
 - k. NBC conditions and contaminated areas, if known.
 - l. CEOI information and stationary unit's recognition signal(s) (day or night).
 - m. Additional procedures for passage.
- .3 ____ The passing force's liaison officer provides critical information.
 - a. Identification of the unit to pass.
 - b. Additional Threat information, as known.

ENCLOSURE (1)

- c. Friendly situation and location of units.
 - d. Passing unit's mission and battle plans.
 - e. Order of march of passing unit.
 - f. Type and number of vehicles to pass.
 - g. Priority of traffic on the passage lane.
 - h. Time the passage will begin and end.
 - i. Requests for supporting direct and indirect fires to cover the passage and the initial movement forward.
 - j. CEOI information and passing unit's recognition signal(s) (day or night).
- .4 _____ At the time designated in the order, the passing force's liaison officer moves to the contact point and makes contact with the assisting (stationary) unit's liaison officer.
- a. Exchanges recognition signals per coordination.
 - b. Confirms that the stationary unit is prepared to support the passage and that the passage lane is open, and coordinates any changes to information previously exchanged.
 - c. Confirms that the passing unit is prepared to execute the passage, to include time of impending passage, number and types of vehicles to pass, and confirms the recognition signals.
- .5 _____ On order or per operation order, the passing force exits the attack position (forward passage) or moves rearward to the passage lane (rearward passage) and begins the passage.
- a. Moves directly to the contact point.
 - b. Displays recognition signal on vehicles as per coordination.
 - c. Platoon commander contacts the liaison officer or guides and confirms number of vehicles in column, using hand signals.
 - d. Uses traveling technique of movement and column formation to pass through the contact point.
 - e. Does not stop or block contact point.
 - f. Platoon commander reports arriving at the contact point to the commander.
- .6 _____ The platoon conducts movement along the passage lane.
- a. Uses traveling technique of movement and column formation.
 - b. Does not stop, block, or deviate from the lane.
 - c. Takes directions from guides at all traffic control points.
 - d. Platoon commander reports passing of passage point, LD, RP, and additional graphic control measure along route to the commander.

KEY INDICATORS:

CRITICAL STANDARDS

If selected as the passing force's liaison officer, the platoon leader completes the coordination and is prepared to brief the commander on the conduct of the passage. The passage is conducted at the time specified in the order and results in the platoon's passage through the stationary unit with no compromise of security and no casualties inflicted upon it or other friendly forces by friendly fire.

ENCLOSURE (1)

TASK: 10C.3.16 CONDUCT REHEARSALS FOR A MISSION

CONDITION(S): The platoon is given an operation order to conduct an offensive or defensive mission as part of a company operation. After issuing the platoon operation order, the platoon has time in a secure assembly area or its battle position to conduct rehearsals. Threat contact is not expected.

STANDARDS: EVAL: Y; N; NE

- .1 ____ Platoon commander allocates time to rehearse.
- .2 ____ Platoon commander develops a rehearsal plan.
 - a. Specifies the time the rehearsal is to begin.
 - b. Lists specific techniques of movement, formations, and drills to be rehearsed.
 - c. Lists actions in critical areas and other operations to be rehearsed.
 - d. Shows location of the rehearsal.
 - e. Specifies time the rehearsal will end.
- .3 ____ Platoon commander supervises the construction of a terrain model for the area of operation.
 - a. Shows major terrain features (hills, roads, or streams).
 - b. Depicts obstacles (existing and reinforcing, if known).
 - c. Shows graphic control measures to be used during the operation.
 - d. Depicts locations of known or suspected Threat elements and all major avenues of approach into the sector.
 - e. Depicts locations of friendly support elements.
 - f. Has markers for each vehicle within the platoon and markers to represent each platoon within the company (and connectors, rocks, helmets, or the TCs themselves).
- .4 ____ Platoon commander conducts the rehearsal.
 - a. Orients Marines to the map and the terrain model.
 - b. Reviews the operation order.
 - c. Demonstrates, using the markers, the scheme of maneuver for the company operation and highlights how the platoon supports the mission.
 - d. Repeats the operation and concentrates on the platoon's actions, formations, techniques of movement, change of formation drills, reports, calls for fire, actions on contact, displacements, and special requirements during mission.
 - e. Has TCs demonstrate the operation by moving their own vehicle models or by having them act out their part and walk through the terrain model.
 - f. Rehearses contingency plans.
 - g. Repeats the rehearsals until all TCs are capable of leading the mission.
- .5 ____ Platoon commander incorporates changes to the plan.
- .6 ____ Platoon commander concludes rehearsal on time.
- .7 ____ Platoon commander reports to the commander the results of the rehearsal.

ENCLOSURE (1)

- a. Any changes to the platoon's plan.
- b. Any suggested changes to the company's plan,
based on information learned during the rehearsal.

KEY INDICATORS:

CRITICAL STANDARDS

The platoon conducts the rehearsal and all TCs are adequately prepared to lead the mission. Crews are rehearsed and prepared to execute the operation. Mistakes identified during the rehearsal are corrected.

TASK: 10C.3.17 EXECUTE ACTIONS ON CONTACT

CONDITION(S): The platoon is conducting offensive operations in a tactical environment, is moving, and encounters a moving or stationary Threat tank or motorized rifle platoon. The Threat force engages the platoon.

STANDARDS: EVAL: Y; N; NE

- .1 ____ The TC who first observes the Threat takes action.
 - a. Returns or initiates fires to destroy or suppress the enemy.
 - b. Employs on-board smoke, if appropriate.
 - c. Takes evasive actions to seek cover or concealment and to avoid missiles.
 - d. Alerts the platoon with a contact report.
- .2 ____ The remainder of the platoon, upon seeing the vehicle(s) engage and upon hearing the contact report, takes action.
 - a. Orients gun tubes to the cardinal direction given or in the direction the vehicle has engaged.
 - b. Returns or initiates fires using a fire pattern of frontal and a fire technique of simultaneous to destroy or suppress the Threat element.
 - c. Scans for additional Threat targets.
 - d. Employs on-board smoke and takes evasive action to avoid hostile fire or missiles.
- .3 ____ Platoon commander directs a platoon battle drill.
- .4 ____ Platoon commander informs the commander of the Threat contact.
- .5 ____ The platoon develops the situation through fire and movement to fix or destroy the Threat force.
 - a. Platoon commander/platoon sergeant requests indirect fires to suppress or destroy the Threat and screen the platoons movement.
 - b. If an action drill was given, the platoon uses bounding overwatch within the platoon to move out of a kill zone, repositions to gain an advantage over the Threat, brings the platoon on line, and assaults the Threat position if so ordered by the company commander.
 - c. If a contact drill was ordered, the platoon continues to suppress or destroy the Threat while on the move and bypasses the Threat. If stationary, it remains in overwatch position and provides a base of fire for the company's movement or assault or executes an action drill if the Threat is too strong or a bypass is not available.

ENCLOSURE (1)

- .6 _____ Platoon commander sends a complete spot report to the company commander.
- a. Reports when the platoon gains control of the situation at its level.
 - b. Reports if the Threat situation has changed enough that the platoon leader must update the contact report to provide detailed information about the Threat, so the commander may develop the situation.
 - c. Reports if the Threat has been destroyed.
 - d. Reports if the platoon needs assistance to destroy or suppress the Threat force.

KEY INDICATORS:

CRITICAL STANDARDS

The platoon returns fire, and the platoon commander orders a contact drill within 15 seconds. No more than one tank is lost to hostile fire.

TASK: 10C.3.18 PERFORM PLATOON FIRE AND MOVEMENT

CONDITION(S): The platoon is operating in a tactical environment as part of a company attack. The platoon has made contact with a Threat platoon in hasty defensive positions and is executing actions on intact. The platoon (1) returned fire and alerted all subordinate TCs, (2) executed a platoon battle drill, and (3) informed the commander with a contact report.

STANDARDS: EVAL: Y: N: NE

- .1 _____ Platoon commander or platoon sergeant calls for indirect fires.
- a. Requests fires to suppress or destroy the Threat platoon, or
 - b. To screen the platoon's movement.
- .2 _____ If an action drill was given as the platoon battle drill, the platoon commander uses bounding overwatch and direct fires to close on the Threat platoon.
- a. Platoon moves out of the kill zone and seeks better cover and concealment.
 - b. Platoon commander repositions the platoon to gain an advantage over the Threat platoon and maximize opportunities for flank shots against Threat tanks.
 - c. Platoon commander brings the platoon on line in a defensible position to provide a base of fire for the company's fire and movement or hasty attack.
 - d. Platoon assaults the Threat force, if so ordered by the company commander.
- .3 _____ If a contact drill was given, the platoon commander continues to move the platoon in its original direction and speed.
- a. Platoon commander directs the platoon to continue to suppress or destroy the Threat while on the move and bypasses the Threat force.
 - b. Platoon commander moves the platoon to an overwatch position and provides a base of fire for the company's fire and movement or hasty attack.
 - c. Platoon commander directs an action drill if the Threat is too strong or if a bypass is not available.
- .4 _____ The platoon moves according to the platoon commander's order.

ENCLOSURE (1)

- a. Uses the wingman concept to execute the move.
 - b. Uses the proper formation, technique of movement, or battle drill.
 - c. Orients weapon systems in the direction of contact and fires to fix or destroy the Threat force.
 - d. Uses cover and concealment to conduct movement.
 - e. Collects tactical information on the Threat force.
- .5 _____ Platoon commander informs the commander of the Threat force in detail.

KEY INDICATORS:

CRITICAL, STANDARDS

The platoon completes step four of actions on contact, developing the situation through fire and movement to fix or destroy the Threat. The platoon sustains losses of no more than one tank as a result of Threat action.

TASK: 10C.3.19 PERFORM RECONNAISSANCE BY FIRE

CONDITION(S): The platoon is operating in a tactical environment as part of a company attack where Threat contact is expected. The commander gives the platoon permission to develop the situation through reconnaissance by fire to flush the Threat out of a suspected position. The Threat consists of no more than a platoon in hasty defensive positions.

STANDARDS: EVAL: Y; N; NE

- .1 _____ Platoon commander identifies the expected location(s) of Threat contact.
- a. Targets dominating terrain overwatching choke points.
 - b. Targets towns or villages that dominate the surrounding area.
 - c. Targets uncleared wooded areas.
- .2 _____ Platoon commander identifies overwatch position(s).
- a. Identifies direct-fire capability on the expected Threat positions.
 - b. Identifies covered and concealed firing positions.
- .3 _____ Platoon commander issues a fragmentary order to the platoon to occupy the overwatch position and to prepare to conduct a reconnaissance by fire.
- .4 _____ Platoon commander/platoon sergeant utilizes indirect fires.
- .5 _____ If indirect fires are not available or the indirect fires do not flush the Threat, platoon commander orders the platoon to conduct a reconnaissance by fire.
- a. The platoon fires short bursts of machine gun fire into and around the expected position.
 - b. The platoon uses the observed fire technique (one tank per section fires; the other tank observes).
 - c. Observing tanks fire to destroy the targets immediately if the Threat is flushed.
 - d. The platoon executes actions on contact.

ENCLOSURE (1)

- e. Platoon commander ceases fire and issues a spot report of negative Threat contact to the commander if no Threat activities are observed.

KEY INDICATORS:

CRITICAL STANDARDS

The platoon flushes the Threat from its position or determines that there is no Threat in the position with minimal expenditure of ammunition and time. No friendly losses are incurred.

TASK: 10C.3.20 PERFORM AN ATTACK BY FIRE

CONDITION(S): The platoon is operating in a tactical environment as part of a company attack or counterattack which has made contact with a Threat force no larger than a platoon and completed actions on contact or stopped the Threat advance. Based on METT-TSL, an assault of the Threat position by the platoon is not desired, and the commander orders the platoon or company to attack the Threat position by fire only, with or without other platoons or companies conducting an assault. The tank platoon may be the element that made initial contact with the Threat and is already set in an overwatch position or may be a follow-on platoon ordered forward to support the attack by fire mission. The attack by fire may be conducted during a company-directed obstacle breach where the platoon has been designated as the support force.

STANDARDS: EVAL: Y; N; NE

- .1 ____ The platoon prepares to perform the attack by fire.
 - a. If the platoon is not already in an effective overwatch position, the platoon commander orders the platoon to occupy an overwatch position.
 - b. The platoon occupies the overwatch position and scans for Threat forces.
- .2 ____ Platoon commander orders the attack by fire by using the alternating fires technique to provide a continuous and consistent rate of fire on the Threat position.
 - a. The platoon uses main gun fire to suppress and destroy visible targets.
 - b. The platoon uses machine gun fire to suppress dismounted troops and suspected Threat locations.
 - c. Platoon commander calls for and adjusts indirect fires onto the Threat elements.
- .3 ____ The platoon sustains the attack by fire until all Threat elements are destroyed or suppressed or the order to lift fires is received.
 - a. Each vehicle moves to alternate firing positions, as necessary.
 - b. The platoon increases and decreases the rate of fire based on METT-TSL.
 - c. Platoon commander redirects, adjusts, or concentrates fires on Threat forces, displacing, moving to alternate positions, or moving in as reinforcements.
 - d. Platoon commander orders a cease-fire once the Threat is destroyed.
 - e. Platoon commander sends a spot report to the commander.
 - f. The platoon continues with the unit's mission as ordered.

ENCLOSURE (1)

KEY INDICATORS:

CRITICAL STANDARDS

The platoon attacks by fire and destroys or suppresses the Threat elements. The attack by fire is conducted without assaulting the Threat position and results in no friendly losses.

TASK: 10C.3.21 ASSAULT AN ENEMY POSITION

CONDITION(S): The platoon is operating in a tactical environment as part of a company attack or counterattack which has made contact with a Threat platoon in hasty defensive positions and has completed actions on contact. The commander orders the platoon to assault the Threat position as part of a company hasty or deliberate attack. A base of fire element is positioned to support the assault. The platoon may have made initial contact with the Threat and already be in its last covered and concealed position, or it may be a follow-on platoon that has been ordered forward to assault the position. The assault may be conducted in concert with a company obstacle breach where the platoon has been designated as the assault-force.

STANDARDS: EVAL: Y; N; NE

- .1 ____ Platoon commander plans the assault and directs the platoon's movement to the assault position.
 - a. Platoon commander issues a fragmentary order to the platoon.
 - b. Platoon commander determines the last covered and concealed position that the platoon can occupy before beginning its assault on the Threat position.
 - c. Platoon commander determines the best covered and concealed route to this position.
- .2 ____ Once the platoon reaches the last covered and concealed position, all tank crews prepare for the assault.
 - a. All tanks come on line while remaining in covered and concealed positions.
 - b. All tanks scan the Threat position to determine Threat size and type, location of mines and obstacles, and route of the assault to the objective.
 - c. The platoon conducts last minute checks of weapon systems, vehicles, and equipment.
 - d. Each TC reports to the platoon commander when prepared to assault.
 - e. Each tank remains in hide position until ordered to assault.
- .3 ____ Platoon commander collects and reports tactical information on the Threat situation at the objective.
 - a. Determines if the objective will be defensible or undefensible by his platoon after the assault.
 - b. Determines the size and type of the Threat force and locations of mines and obstacles, and selects the best route for the element to assault into the flanks of the Threat's defense whenever possible.
 - c. Makes an estimate of the situation to determine additional courses of action required prior to the assault.
 - d. Informs the commander of the situation with a complete spot report and requests supporting direct and indirect fires be massed on known or suspected Threat locations immediately prior to the assault.
- .4 ____ Platoon commander immediately orders the element to assault upon receiving the order from the company commander.

ENCLOSURE (1)

- a. The platoon assaults in a line formation to allow maximum firepower to the front.
 - b. The platoon maintains forward momentum along the assault route(s), in conjunction with other company elements.
 - c. The platoon employs all weapon systems to defeat the Threat in detail and destroys or suppresses all resistance on the objective.
 - d. Platoon commander requests the lift/shift of supporting direct and indirect fires as necessary.
 - e. The platoon moves to hull-down positions on the objective to prevent cresting or skylining of vehicles if the objective is defensible.
 - f. The platoon sweeps through the objective to occupy defensible terrain beyond it if objective is not defensible.
 - g. Platoon commander initiates indirect fires to suppress known or suspected Threat forces on or within range of the objective.
- .5 _____ Platoon commander/platoon sergeant coordinates with supporting and adjacent units as the platoon approaches the objective.
- a. Coordinates with the base of fire element(s) to lift or shift direct fires in front of the platoon's movement.
 - b. Coordinates with adjacent element(s) and dismounted infantry to destroy specific targets, bunkers, machine gun nests, or pockets of Threat resistance.
 - c. Platoon commander lifts and shifts indirect fires beyond the objective.
- .6 _____ The platoon completes actions on the objective.
- a. The platoon consolidates the objective (if defensible) or the next defensible terrain beyond the objective to secure the position and prepares for a counterattack.
 - b. Platoon commander reports to the commander once the position is secured.
 - c. The platoon conducts reorganization activities.

KEY INDICATORS:

CRITICAL STANDARDS

The platoon assaults the Threat position, destroys all Threat resistance, and secures the position as part of the company hasty or deliberate attack or obstacle breach. The platoon sustains losses of no more than one tank as a result of hostile fire.

TASK: 10C.3.22 OCCUPY A PLATOON BATTLE POSITION

CONDITION(S): The platoon is operating as part of a company defensive operation and has been given an operation order to move to and occupy a battle position. The terrain can vary from rolling hills to parched, flat desert, but must offer definable avenues of approach and permit a concentration of fires; soil must be trafficable. Engineer assets are available. Sufficient time is available to conduct a deliberate occupation. The commander specified the time and location for coordination between adjacent platoons. Threat contact is not likely prior to the NLT-time specified in the operation order or operation plan.

ENCLOSURE (1)

STANDARDS: EVAL: Y; N; NE

- .1 ____ The platoon moves to the rear or flanks of the assigned BP.
 - a. Moves into a hide position behind the BP, forms a coil or herringbone, and conducts a simultaneous shutdown.
 - b. The platoon sergeant, TCs, and security personnel dismount their vehicles, move to the BP, and report to the platoon leader.
 - c. The platoon commander establishes local security by emplacing the OPs.
- .2 ____ The platoon commander leads the platoon in a reconnaissance of the BP. The platoon leader points out terrain that corresponds to the platoon's and company's graphic control measures and briefs the scheme of maneuver.
 - a. Platoon commander shows location of company BP, company target reference points (TRPs), and engagement areas.
 - b. Platoon commander shows limits of platoon BP and platoon's sector of fire.
 - c. Platoon commander points out locations of artillery preplots.
 - d. Platoon commander identifies primary, alternate, and supplementary firing positions and sectors of fire.
 - e. Platoon commander points out covered and concealed routes between primary, alternate, and supplementary firing positions.
 - f. Platoon commander points out covered and concealed routes in and out of the primary BP to the subsequent BP.
 - g. Platoon commander shows locations for OPs to provide observation of the avenues of approach into the platoon's portion of the company sector.
 - h. Platoon commander indicates locations of existing obstacles and positions for reinforcing obstacles.
 - i. Platoon commander briefs TCs on tentative plan.
- .3 ____ Platoon commander makes decisions and completes the plan.
- .4 ____ The platoon occupies the BP.
 - a. Uses hand and arm signals and starts vehicles simultaneously.
 - b. Moves forward to occupy turret-down positions and scans sectors of fire.
 - c. Moves forward to hull-down position.
 - d. Prepares sector sketches and firing positions.
 - e. Vehicles move to hide positions individually upon completion of range cards or sector sketches, and engines are shut down.
 - f. Platoon commander consolidates range cards and readjusts tanks as necessary.
 - g. Platoon commander reports established to company commander.
 - h. Platoon commander submits platoon fire plan to commander.
- .5 ____ The platoon improves the position.
 - a. Camouflages vehicles and equipment.
 - b. Clears fields of fire, as necessary.
 - c. Establishes a platoon hot loop.

ENCLOSURE (1)

- d. Improves the OP positions.
 - e. Employs chemical agent alarms based on METT-TSL and unit SOP.
 - f. Emplaces obstacles.
 - g. Rehearses displacement, contingencies, and crew drills.
 - h. Assists in survivability effort.
- .6 ____ Platoon commander inspects each vehicle's position.
- a. Ensures maximum use of cover and concealment.
 - b. Ensures maximum observation and fields of fire.
 - c. Ensures that camouflage blends into the background and foreground.
- .7 ____ Platoon commander inspects sector sketches and supervises preparation of the BP.
- a. Ensures that intervisibility and dead space problems are minimized by overlapping fields of observation and fires, and that TRPs, artillery preplots, obstacles, and engagement areas are covered by observation and fires.
 - b. Ensures that TRPs are marked for easy reference by platoon.
 - c. Ensures that firing positions are shifted, as necessary, to cover dead space.
- .8 ____ Platoon commander develops up an obstacle plan.
- a. The planned obstacle(s) denies dead space to the Threat.
 - b. The planned obstacle(s) funnels and turns the Threat into sectors of fire to create flank shots.
 - c. The planned obstacle(s) slows Threat movement.
 - d. The planned obstacle(s) denies the Threat covered and concealed firing positions within the engagement area.
 - e. The planned obstacle(s) can be feasibly emplaced by the platoon in its current status.
- .9 ____ The platoon continues to prepare the defense in depth.
- a. The platoon prepares or reconnoiters subsequent battle positions, as specified in the order.
 - b. Completes obstacle emplacement.
- .10 ____ The platoon commander links up with the adjacent platoon commander to conduct coordination of the defense.
- .11 ____ The platoon commander exchanges required information with flank units.
- a. Points out routes into and out of their battle positions and routes back to subsequent battle position or assembly area, if applicable.
 - b. Compares indirect fire targets and adds those targets from the adjacent platoon to plan, as necessary.
 - c. Points out locations of their primary, alternate, and supplementary battle and fighting positions and locations of flank vehicles.
 - d. Points out locations of OPs, routes of patrols, and dead space between platoons and works out how to cover it.
 - e. Exchanges CEOI information.

- f. Ensures overlapping fields of observation and direct fire exist between platoons.
 - g. Exchanges information regarding the locations and types of obstacles employed in respective sectors of fire.
- .12 _____ Platoon commander or company commander resolves conflicts between platoons.
 - a. Remaining within the guidance and intent of the commander, the platoon commander modifies his plan to resolve conflicts with the adjacent platoon's plan.
 - b. Any conflict not resolved by the platoon commanders is brought to the company commander's attention.
- .13 _____ Platoon commander returns to the platoon and disseminates any changes to the defensive plan resulting from the coordination.
- .14 _____ The platoon incorporates changes to the plan.
 - a. Vehicle fighting positions, sector limits, positions of OPs, patrol routes, and obstacle locations are altered, as necessary, to incorporate the changes to the defensive plan resulting from the coordination.
 - b. Rehearsals are conducted that incorporate any changes to the scheme of maneuver, as necessary.

KEY INDICATORS:

CRITICAL STANDARDS

The platoon moves to the assigned BP, completes the deliberate occupation, and reports established at or before the "defend NLT" time given in the operation order. Coordination with adjacent platoons is conducted, conflicts are resolved, and any changes to the platoon's plan resulting from the coordination are disseminated.

TASK: 10C.3.23 DISPLACE TO A SUBSEQUENT BATTLE POSITION

CONDITION(S): The platoon, in a tactical environment, has occupied a platoon BP as part of a company defense, and the operation order identifies a subsequent BP for the platoon to displace to. The platoon may or may not have reconnoitered or prepared the subsequent BP. A Threat force has advanced to the company's "break point," or the commander orders the platoon to displace due to a change in mission. There may or may not be wounded personnel or disabled equipment that must be taken care of. The platoon's move may or may not be overwatched by another unit.

STANDARDS: EVAL: Y; N; NE

- .1 _____ Platoon commander acknowledges the commander's order to displace, and begins preparing for the move.
 - a. Authenticates the order if it is a change from the operation order or if there is doubt about its authenticity.
 - b. Based on METT-TSL and platoon SOP, platoon commander determines which section within the platoon will displace first. (This is only necessary if the platoon's move is not overwatched by another unit.)
 - c. Platoon commander directs that wounded and dead crew members be evacuated by different vehicles.
 - d. Platoon commander directs that inoperative vehicles within the platoon are recovered, evacuated, or destroyed to prevent Threat capture.

- e. Platoon commander issues a fragmentary order to the platoon to displace by section or simultaneously.

.2 ____ The platoon begins its displacement.

- a. If the platoon's displacement is overwatched by another platoon, all TCs acknowledge the platoon commander's order to displace. If the platoon's move is not overwatched, platoon sergeant acknowledges the order to either begin his section's displacement or overwatch as the platoon commander's section begins its move.
- b. If the displacement is overwatched, each tank in the platoon simultaneously backs down into individual hide positions. If the move is not overwatched, the section to move first backs down to a hide position before turning to leave the BP.
- c. The platoon, if the move is overwatched, or the moving section, if the move is not overwatched, orients gun tubes on last known Threat contact.
- d. The platoon, or the moving section, begins displacing along covered and concealed routes to subsequent BP using traveling technique of movement.

.3 ____ If the displacement is not overwatched, the section that remains on the BP overwatches the moving section.

- a. Overwatch section continues to engage the Threat until the other section has backed off the BP.
- b. Once the first section is clear of the BP, the overwatch section backs down to a hide position before turning to leave the BP.
- c. Overwatch orients gun tubes on last known Threat contact.
- d. Overwatch section begins displacing along covered and concealed routes to subsequent BP using the traveling technique of movement within the section.
- e. Based on METT-TSL, overwatch section employs smoke generators to screen movement.

.4 ____ If the displacement is not overwatched by another platoon, and once both sections are on the move, the platoon uses traveling overwatch, with the first section to displace now becoming the overwatch section.

- a. Overwatch section takes temporary halts, as necessary, to cover the trails section, without blocking or halting the trail section's movement.
- b. Trail (traveling) section continues to move without passing the lead (overwatch) section.
- c. Platoon commander and platoon sergeant perform fire distribution and control, as necessary, to cover the platoon's movement.
- d. Platoon commander/platoon sergeant, once the last section is clear of the BP and based on METT-TSL, calls for indirect fires to screen movement and suppress assaulting Threat forces.

.5 ____ The lead (overwatch) section approaches and enters the subsequent BP from the flanks or rear and begins its occupation.

- a. If the BP has been prepared or reconnoitered prior to occupation, the section immediately moves to its designated turret-down positions and scans sector for advancing Threat forces.
- b. On order of its section leader, the lead section moves to a hull-down position and overwatches the trail section.
- c. If the BP has not been prepared or reconnoitered, the lead section conducts a hasty occupation of the BP and identifies primary firing positions for the trail section.
- d. Platoon commander/platoon sergeant with the lead section performs fire distribution and control to cover the trail section.

- .6 _____ The trail section continues to move and approaches the subsequent BP from the flanks or rear.
- a. If the BP has been prepared or reconnoitered, the trail section immediately moves to its designated turret-down positions.
 - b. If the BP has not been prepared or reconnoitered, the trail section takes directions from the section leader on the BP to move to his left or right and occupy hide positions behind selected primary firing positions.
 - c. The trail section occupies turret-down positions or remains in hide positions, based on Threat situation to the front.
 - d. The trail section scans sector for advancing Threat forces.
- .7 _____ If the BP has not been prepared or reconnoitered prior to the occupation, the platoon leader directs a hasty occupation.
- a. Platoon commander orders the platoon into turret-down, optics-up defilade or hull-down positions, depending upon METT-TSL.
 - b. Platoon commander identifies and points out TRPs or EA.
 - c. Platoon commander designates primary and supplementary firing positions and sectors of fire.
 - d. Platoon commander designates covered and concealed displacement routes in and out of the BP to subsequent BPs.
- .8 _____ The platoon adjusts positions, as necessary, to occupy the primary firing positions designated by the platoon leader.
- a. TCs select alternate firing positions.
 - b. TCs select covered and concealed routes between primary, alternate, and supplementary firing positions.
 - c. Platoon sergeant signals the platoon commander when his section is ready.
- .9 _____ The platoon continues its defense.
- a. Platoon commander immediately issues a platoon fire command to engage Threat forces in its sector when engagement criteria are met.
 - b. If there is no Threat contact, the platoon commander orders the platoon to turret-down (or hide positions when OPs are posted) and continues to improve the position by executing the additional steps of a deliberate occupation.

KEY INDICATORS:

CRITICAL STANDARDS

The platoon executes the displacement, occupies the subsequent BP, and is prepared to fight or to provide covering fires for the remainder of the company. All wounded personnel are transported to the subsequent position. All disabled equipment is recovered or destroyed. No losses are incurred as a result of the displacement.

TASK: 10C.3.24 REACT TO AN ENEMY DISMOUNTED ATTACK

CONDITION(S): The platoon is operating in a tactical environment as part of a company and is occupying an assembly area, conducting resupply, or defending a BP, where local security has been established. Threat contact is "not likely" or "possible" when the platoon is attacked by a dismounted Threat force of platoon size.

STANDARDS: EVAL: Y; N; NE

- .1 ____ The TC or OP that identifies the dismounted Threat force beginning its attack on the platoon's position engages the Threat.
 - a. Returns or opens fire on the Threat.
 - b. Alerts the platoon through signal or FM radio.
- .2 ____ The platoon immediately takes steps to repulse the Threat.
 - a. Platoon goes to REDCON 1.
 - b. Platoon mans all vehicles and weapon stations.
 - c. Platoon executes actions on contact.
- .3 ____ Platoon commander informs the commander.
- .4 ____ Platoon commander or platoon sergeant recalls OPs as situation dictates.
- .5 ____ Based on METT-TSL, the platoon commander determines and orders a course of action for the platoon. The platoon executes the platoon commander's directed course of action.
 - a. Fights from present position, passed on having good fields of fire and good firing positions (defensive BP), or
 - b. Moves and forms a perimeter around essential equipment and supplies and repulses attack (resupply), or
 - c. Breaks off the fight and departs the area to reform at a designated rally point (assembly area, resupply), or
 - d. Moves to ground that provides better fields of fire and cover, while using the stand-off capability of the tank weapon systems to destroy the Threat force in detail (defense, assembly area, resupply).
- .6 ____ Platoon commander controls the platoon's fires.
- .7 ____ Platoon commander directs consolidation.
- .8 ____ Platoon commander keeps the commander informed of the situation.
- .9 ____ The Platoon commander requests movement instructions from the company commander and repositions the platoon in accordance with the commander's order, as necessary.
 - a. Platoon moves back to its original position and consolidates, or
 - b. Platoon moves to a new location and links back up with the company, or
 - c. Platoon remains in the new position.
- .10 ____ The platoon conducts reorganization activities, as necessary.
 - a. Evacuates wounded and killed crew members separately by vehicles within the platoon or by supporting vehicles from the company.
 - b. Evacuates, recovers, or destroys disabled vehicles and equipment to prevent Threat capture in accordance with the commander's order or SOP.

ENCLOSURE (1)

- c. Processes captured Threat forces and equipment in accordance with the commander's order or SOP.

.11 ____ The platoon continues its mission.

KEY INDICATORS:

CRITICAL STANDARDS

The platoon disengages from, repulse., or destroys the Threat and is prepared to continue with the unit's mission. No more than one tank or tank crew is lost as a result of the dismounted attack.

TASK: 10C.3.25 EXECUTE A PLATOON DEFENSIVE MISSION

CONDITION(S): The platoon has completed its occupation of a BP as part of a company defense. The Platoon commander receives a spot report from the commander, an adjacent platoon, one of the platoon's members, or its OP alerting him to, or personally observes, an advancing Threat tank or motorized rifle company.

STANDARDS: EVAL: Y; N; NE

- .1 ____ The platoon commander informs the commander of, or acknowledges, the spot report, as applicable.
 - a. If the report came from within the platoon, the platoon commander immediately verifies the information and sends it as a spot report to the company commander.
 - b. If the report came from the commander, the platoon commander acknowledges the report.
- .2 ____ The platoon commander analyzes the spot report.
 - a. Determines the size of the Threat.
 - b. Plots the location of the Threat force on his map.
 - c. Determines direction of the Threat forces movement and its speed.
 - d. Determines the avenues of approach the Threat may use to enter the platoon's sector and company engagement area (EA).
 - e. Determines the approximate time the Threat will hit the platoon's trigger point.
- .3 ____ The platoon commander disseminates the situation report.
- .4 ____ The platoon commander takes immediate action to prepare the platoon to engage the Threat.
 - a. Directs the platoon to remain in hide positions until the OP identifies smoke, dust columns, or sounds of the Threat approaching.
 - b. When notified by the OP, the platoon commander orders the platoon using hand and arm signals or hot loop to start up simultaneously and move to turret-down positions.
 - c. Platoon commander orders OPs to withdraw back to and mount their tanks.
- .5 ____ The platoon moves into turret-down positions, scans its sector, prepares to engage, and reports.
 - a. Platoon moves simultaneously into turret-down positions.
 - b. TCs, gunners, and loaders scan for Threat targets.
 - c. TCs alert the platoon when they are the first to identify Threat targets, giving size, direction, and range to the Threat, as a minimum.

ENCLOSURE (1)

- .6 ____ The platoon commander issues a preparatory platoon fire command.
- .7 ____ Each tank crew prepares to engage.
 - a. TCs lay main guns for direction.
 - b. TCs immediately issue fire commands to crews, specifying "at my command."
 - c. Loaders load specified ammunition and prepare specified weapons.
 - d. TC orient gunners on proper targets.
 - e. TCs report when ready to engage.
- .8 ____ Platoon commander informs the commander of the Threat sighted and requests indirect fires.
 - a. Platoon commander sends a complete spot report to the commander.
 - b. Platoon commander requests indirect fires on the Threat force as it closes in accordance with the defensive fire plan in the operation order.
- .9 ____ The platoon executes fires when the Threat crosses the trigger point.
 - a. Platoon commander orders the platoon into hull-down positions and orders "fire" when the operation order's engagement criteria are met.
 - b. The platoon immediately moves into hull-down positions simultaneously and fires on order.
 - c. The platoon engages targets in its sector using the specified fire technique and pattern.
 - d. Individual tanks move to alternate firing positions when TCs determine accurate antitank fires are being received.
 - e. The platoon commander and platoon sergeant coordinate their sections' move to alternate positions so only one vehicle per section moves at a time.
 - f. Platoon commander issues additional fire commands as necessary to destroy all Threat forces in the EA, while controlling overkill and ammunition expenditure.
 - g. Platoon commander directs all or part of the platoon to move to supplementary firing positions, as necessary, to destroy Threat moving through a different sector of fire or avenue of approach.
- .10 ____ When the Threat has been destroyed or halted, the platoon continues to defend from its present location.
 - a. Platoon commander directs the platoon back into turret-down positions.
 - b. The platoon moves to turret-down positions, and TCs and gunners scan for additional Threat targets.
 - c. Platoon commander sends a complete spot report to the company commander.
- .11 ____ If the Threat force advances in sufficient strength to meet the company operation order's disengagement criteria, the platoon displaces to its subsequent battle position (as applicable to the company's scheme of maneuver).
 - a. Platoon commander sends a spot report to the commander that includes the number and types of vehicles that are crossing the "break point" and requests permission to displace to its subsequent BP.
 - b. Requests final protective fires, if scheduled.
 - c. Takes directions to continue to fight without displacement, displace without overwatching fires, or displace with overwatch by another unit, as ordered by the commander.

- .12 ____ If no follow-on Threat forces are identified, the platoon continues to defend.
- a. The platoon commander directs each TC to back down to turret-down, optics-up position, and shut down engines.
 - b. The platoon moves to turret-down positions.
 - c. The platoon commander issues a simultaneous shutdown signal, either visually or by radio, so the platoon can listen for advancing Threat.

KEY INDICATORS:

CRITICAL STANDARDS

The platoon executes the defensive mission and is able to destroy or halt the Threat force or begin displacement to a subsequent BP before being overrun or bypassed by the Threat force in its sector of fire. No more than one tank or tank crew is lost as a result of hostile fire.

TASK: 10C.3.26 ASSIST A RELIEF II PLACE

CONDITION(S): The platoon is conducting defensive or offensive tactical operations in a tactical environment as part of a company. The company has been ordered to conduct a relief in place as either the relieving or relieved unit. The incoming and outgoing company commanders have conducted coordination for the relief. The platoon commander has been given an operation order or fragmentary order to assist the relief in place by relieving or being relieved by his counterpart platoon from the other company. The relief may be conducted either to maximize security or to maximize the speed of completion. Threat contact is possible, but not expected.

STANDARDS: EVAL: Y; N; NE

- .1 ____ The relieving platoon moves to its preplanned assembly area.
- .2 ____ The relieving platoon changes frequencies on all platoon radios.
- .3 ____ The relieved platoon guide links up with and coordinates with the relieving platoon.
 - a. Relieved unit guide meet: the relieving platoon in the relieving unit assembly area.
 - b. Relieved unit representative guides the relieving platoon to the relieved platoon's primary battle position along the route designated in the operation order or fragmentary order.
- .4 ____ If the relief is being conducted during daylight hours and speed of completion is not critical, the relieving platoon occupies the relieved position's hide positions.
 - a. Relieving platoon occupies hide positions behind the relieved platoon's primary fighting positions.
 - b. The relieved platoon begins to withdraw to its subsequent mission in accordance with its operation order or fragmentary order.
 - c. As each relieved platoon vehicle withdraws, the relieving platoon's vehicles individually occupy the relieved platoon's primary fighting positions.
- .5 ____ If the relief is being conducted in daylight with speed of completion as a major concern, the relieving platoon occupies the relieved platoon's alternate fighting positions.
 - a. Each relieving platoon vehicle occupies the alternate fighting position of its counterpart.

- b. The relieved platoon concurrently withdraws from its primary fighting positions and moves according to its operation order or fragmentary order.
- .6 _____ If the relief is being conducted during limited visibility, the relieving platoon moves into the relieved platoon's primary positions.
- a. The relieving platoon moves up to the relieved platoon's primary fighting positions.
 - b. Once all relieving platoon vehicles are in place, the relieved platoon withdraws simultaneously and moves to its subsequent position in accordance with its operation order or fragmentary order.
 - c. Once all relieved unit vehicles have cleared, the relieving unit occupies the vacated individual fighting positions.
- .7 _____ The relieved platoon exchanges required information and materiel with the relieving unit.
- a. Relieving unit receives relieved unit's sketch cards and platoon fire plans (as appropriate).
 - b. Relieved platoon commander transfers obstacle target folders and hasty protective minefield forms to the relieving platoon leader.
 - c. Relieving and relieved platoon commanders exchange information on Threat situation.
 - d. Relieved unit transfers or exchanges excess ammunition; wire lines; petroleum, oils, and lubricants (POL); chemical alarms; early warning devices; and other materiel to the relieving unit.
- .8 _____ Once the relief in place is completed or on order, the relieving platoon reestablishes communications.
- a. Conducts internal radio checks or tests the hot loop once completed.
 - b. Conducts radio checks with the company and internally on its own assigned frequency, as required by the operation order or fragmentary order.
 - c. Platoon commander reports completion of the relief to the company commander.

KEY INDICATORS:

CRITICAL STANDARDS

The relief is concluded by the time of change of responsibility specified in the operation order or fragmentary order, does not compromise the operation to Threat observers or intelligence collectors either visually or by radio traffic, provides for continuous observation of the platoon's sector of fire (defensive reliefs), and results in no friendly casualties as a result of fratricide.

TASK: 10C.3.27 CONDUCT HASTY OCCUPATION OF A BATTLE POSITION

CONDITION(S): The platoon is conducting offensive or defensive operations in a tactical environment and has received an operation order or fragmentary order to defend a platoon battle position (BP). Insufficient time exists to conduct the steps of a deliberate occupation before the Threat is expected to attack. The platoon commander has completed all troop-leading procedures and is en route to the battle position. Threat contact is not expected before the "defend-NLT" time specified in the operation order.

ENCLOSURE (1)

STANDARDS: EVAL: Y; N; NE

- .1 ____ The platoon arrives at the BP.
 - a. Enters the BP from the flank or rear.
 - b. Keeps all weapons oriented in the direction of last known or expected Threat contact.
- .2 ____ The platoon moves into turret-down positions.
- .3 ____ Platoon commander designates the defensive control measures.
 - a. Points out each tank's primary firing position.
 - b. Points out the limits of the company EA.
 - c. Points out TRPs.
 - d. Indicates sectors of fire.
 - e. Designates routes out of the BP to subsequent BP or assembly area, if applicable.
- .4 ____ The platoon moves into its primary fighting positions.
 - a. Simultaneously, each tank moves into a hull-down position on the platoon commander's order.
 - b. Platoon commander reports establishment of the BP to the company commander.
- .5 ____ Each TC ensures his tank can place effective direct fires into the appropriate sector(s) of fire from the hull-down position.
- .6 ____ Each tank moves to a turret-down position and continuously scans its sector of fire.
 - a. Each TC moves his tank back to turret-down which affords survivability but still permits the gunner to scan the sector (optics up).
 - b. TCs and gunners continuously scan the sector for Threat targets and alert the platoon to any Threat contact.
- .7 ____ The platoon continues to improve the position.

KEY INDICATORS:

CRITICAL STANDARDS

The platoon completes all steps of the hasty occupation, occupies the correct BP, orients on the proper portion of the company EA or sector of fire, ensures the survivability of the platoon's fighting positions, and is prepared to defend by the time specified in the company operation order or fragmentary order.

10C.4 MOBILITY, COUNTERMOBILITY, AND SURVIVABILITY

TASK: 10C.4.1 TAKE ACTIONS AT AN OBSTACLE

ENCLOSURE (1)

CONDITION(S): The platoon is operating in a tactical environment as part of a company offensive operation and observes or detonates mines forming an obstacle across its path. The obstacle can be either natural (such as mud or marshy terrain, unfordable creek, or washout) or man-made (such as minefield, blown bridge, abatis, tank ditch or wall) and may be either nonreinforced by other types of obstacles (such as concertina wire, mines, booby traps, tank ditch). Threat contact may or may not have been concurrently made.

STANDARDS: EVAL: Y; N; NE

- .1 ____ Platoon personnel report obstacle immediately upon recognizing it.
- .2 ____ If Threat contact is made, the platoon commander initiates the appropriate battle drill or assaults the Threat.
 - a. Directs indirect fire drill if Threat artillery impacts on the platoon.
 - b. Directs air attack drill if platoon is engaged by Threat aircraft.
 - c. If the Threat engages the platoon with antitank weapons, the platoon commander directs a contact drill and orders the platoon to assault through the obstacle to the next defensible terrain or platoon commander backs the platoon out of the obstacle depending on the factors of METT-TSL.
- .3 ____ If under Threat direct fires, the platoon employs smoke to obscure itself.
- .4 ____ If under Threat direct fires, the platoon commander or platoon sergeant calls for indirect fires.
 - a. Requests high explosive (HE) targeted on known or suspected Threat locations.
 - b. Requests smoke forward and to the flanks of the platoon to obscure it from the Threat.
- .5 ____ The platoon commander directs a bypass or a move to a covered and concealed position.
 - a. If a bypass is readily found, the platoon commander orders the platoon through the bypass and continues the original mission.
 - b. If a bypass is not readily found, the platoon commander directs the platoon to the nearest covered and concealed position on the friendly side of the obstacle.
 - c. If no covered and concealed position is available, the platoon backs up out of range of the obstacle.
 - d. If no covered and concealed position is available, the platoon backs up out of range of Threat weapons.
- .6 ____ The platoon establishes an overwatch position and reports.
 - a. Platoon commander establishes an overwatch position at the last covered and concealed position on the friendly side of the obstacle.
 - b. Platoon commander sends a complete spot report to the commander and awaits further orders.
 - c. Wounded and killed crew members are evacuated.
 - d. Damaged vehicles are recovered or evacuated.

KEY INDICATORS:

CRITICAL STANDARDS

The platoon identifies the obstacle and reacts to it before the entire platoon is trapped or disabled by it. No more than one tank is lost as a result of contact with the obstacle. The platoon commander selects the correct course of action to minimize the platoon's vulnerability to both the obstacle and any Threat forces in overwatch. The platoon neutralizes the obstacle only as part of a company operation.

ENCLOSURE (1)

TASK: 10C.4.2 EXECUTE A PREPARED OBSTACLE

CONDITION(S): The platoon is operating as part of any company defensive operation and has been designated to take control of a prepared obstacle along a passage lane. Once the passage of lines is complete, the platoon closes the obstacle, thus completing the unit's obstacle plan. The platoon may or may not be the unit that emplaced the obstacle. The platoon has the target turnover package. A contact point vehicle from the platoon is forward of the obstacle. Threat forces may or may not be advancing toward the obstacle.

STANDARDS: EVAL: Y; N; NE

- .1 ____ Platoon commander or platoon sergeant prepares to execute the obstacle.
 - a. Inspects the target turnover package to ensure its completeness and that it is for the correct obstacle.
 - b. Directs the platoon to secure the obstacle.
 - c. Identifies and positions the target personnel who are to execute the target based on the method of execution and type of obstacle.
- .2 ____ The target personnel prepare to execute the obstacle.
 - a. Position themselves using cover and concealment near the obstacle.
 - b. Inspect the obstacle and ensure all equipment is available to execute the target.
 - c. Establish communications with the platoon and the contact point vehicle using the platoon's hot loop or visual signals.
 - d. Prepare the target for detonation once the passage of lines has begun.
 - e. Inform the platoon commander that all friendly units have completed the passage and request permission to close the obstacle once the contact point vehicle returns along the passage lane to the obstacle.
- .3 ____ Platoon commander reports completion of passage to and requests permission from the company commander to execute the obstacle.
 - a. Platoon commander informs the commander of the situation.
 - b. On the commander's orders, platoon commander directs the target personnel to execute the target.
- .4 ____ The target personnel execute the target.
 - a. Inspect the obstacle to ensure that it is closed.
 - b. Inform the platoon commander of the status of the obstacle.
- .5 ____ If the target personnel failed to close the obstacle, they alert the platoon commander and, based on METT-TSL, request permission to:
 - a. Attempt to close the obstacle by other means, or
 - b. Have another target device or obstacle brought forward to complete the job, or
 - c. Abandon the target and return to the unit's position, due to heavy Threat pressure.
- .6 ____ Platoon commander informs the commander.
- .7 ____ Target personnel and contact point vehicle return.

ENCLOSURE (1)

CRITICAL STANDARDS

The platoon executes the obstacle only after all units have completed their rearward passage of lines and prevents Threat forces from capturing the obstacle while still open.

TASK: 10C.4.3 CONSTRUCT A HASTY OBSTACLE

CONDITION(S): The platoon is conducting defensive or assembly area operations in a tactical environment, is stationary, and has identified the need to construct a hasty obstacle across or along a probable Threat avenue of approach. The obstacle may either reinforce other obstacles or stand alone. The company commander has authorized the construction of the obstacle. Sufficient time, manpower, and materials are available to the platoon. The obstacle selected may consist of wire and pickets from the platoon's basic load, felled or pushed over trees along a wooded trail, rocks or battlefield debris blocking an avenue of approach, or other material available to the platoon leader. Threat contact is not expected until after the "defend-NLT" time specified in the operation order or operation plan.

STANDARDS: EVAL: Y; N; NE

- .1 ____ The platoon commander determines the location for the proposed obstacle.
 - a. Platoon commander conducts a reconnaissance to determine the most effective location for the obstacle.
 - b. Platoon commander bases the decision on siting the obstacle on likely Threat avenues of approach.
 - c. Ensures the proposed location can be continuously overwatched by elements of the platoon.
 - d. Ensures the proposed obstacle site ties into existing obstacles.
- .2 ____ The platoon commander coordinates the obstacle.
 - a. Ensures obstacle complements other defensive measures.
 - b. Ensures obstacle will not hamper the platoon's or companies schemes of maneuver.
- .3 ____ Platoon commander reports initiation of the obstacle construction.
- .4 ____ The platoon emplaces the obstacle.
 - a. The obstacle is emplaced by the platoon, to the specifications and at the location directed by the platoon commander.
 - b. Work continues until the obstacle is sufficient to block the type of Threat expected along the avenue.
- .5 ____ The platoon commander reports completion of the obstacle.
- .6 ____ The platoon continuously overwatches the obstacle.

ENCLOSURE (1)

KEY INDICATORS:

CRITICAL STANDARDS

The platoon emplaces a hasty obstacle that is observed and covered by fire at all times, tied in with existing man-made or natural obstacles, complements other defensive measures, and is effective against the type of Threat expected along the avenue it blocks.

TASK: 10C.4.4 EMLACE A HASTY PROTECTIVE MINEFIELD

CONDITION(S): The platoon is conducting defensive or assembly area operations in a tactical environment, has identified the need for close-in protection, and has received permission from the company commander to emplace a hasty protective minefield. The platoon has sufficient antitank and antipersonnel mines, manpower, and time to emplace the minefield. Threat contact is not expected until after the "defend-NLT" time specified in the order.

STANDARDS: EVAL: Y; N; NE

- .1 ____ The platoon commander determines the location for the proposed minefield.
 - a. Conducts a reconnaissance to determine most effective location.
 - b. Bases decision on siting the minefield on likely Threat avenues of approach.
 - c. Ensures the proposed position can be overwatched continuously by elements of the platoon.
 - d. Ensures the proposed obstacle ties into existing obstacles.
 - c. Ensures the proposed obstacle will be effective against the type of Threat expected along the avenue it blocks.
- .2 ____ The platoon commander coordinates mine emplacement.
- .3 ____ The platoon commander reports initiation of mine laying operations.
- .4 ____ The platoon installs mines at the location the platoon leader has selected and records their locations.
 - a. Emplaces only metallic mines.
 - b. Emplaces no booby traps.
 - c. Emplaces antitank mines on likely mounted avenues of approach (roads, bridge entrances and exits, and fording entrances and exits).
 - d. Emplaces antipersonnel mines on likely dismounted avenues of approach and to protect AT mines from detection.
 - e. Record the location of each mine.
- .5 ____ The platoon arms the mines.
- .6 ____ Platoon commander reports minefield completion.
- .7 ____ The platoon continuously overwatches the minefield.
- .8 ____ The platoon takes proper actions to transfer, remove, or abandon the minefield.
 - a. If the minefield is removed the minefield records are destroyed.

ENCLOSURE (1)

- b. If the minefield is abandoned or left unattended, the platoon forwards the form to the company commander.

KEY INDICATORS:

CRITICAL STANDARDS

The platoon emplaces a hasty protective minefield that is observed and covered by fire at all times, concealed from Threat observation, is erected in an irregular pattern, is employed in depth, ties in with existing obstacles, is recorded, and will be effective against the type of Threat expected along the avenue of approach it blocks.

10C.5 AIR DEFENSE

TASK: 10C.5.1 TAKE PASSIVE AIR DEFENSE MEASURES

CONDITION(S): The platoon is tactically deployed. Hostile aircraft have been operating in the general area. Weapon control status is hold. The platoon may be either stationary or moving.

STANDARDS: EVAL: Y; N; NE

- .1 ____ The platoon uses passive air defense measures in a tactical position.
 - a. Uses all available resources (camouflage, cover, and concealment) to hide the element and limit its vulnerability.
 - b. Covers or shades shiny items, particularly vision blocks and optics.
 - c. Establishes and rehearses air attack alarms and actions.
 - d. Disperses vehicles to reduce vulnerability to air attack.
 - e. Mans OP: (daytime and nighttime) to provide warning of approaching aircraft.
 - f. Visually identifies Threat aircraft.
 - g. Reports any aircraft action to higher headquarters.
- .2 ____ The platoon uses passive air defense measures when moving.
 - a. Platoon commander establishes vehicle order of march.
 - b. Maintains vehicle interval specified in the order.
 - c. Staggers vehicles as necessary to avoid linear patterns.
 - d. Platoon commander assigns air guards to sectors of search that cover 360 degrees and maintains coverage until movement is completed.
 - e. Visually identifies Threat aircraft.
 - f. Reports all aircraft actions to higher headquarters.

ENCLOSURE (1)

KEY INDICATORS:

CRITICAL STANDARDS

The platoon constantly uses dispersion, camouflage, and concealment to avoid detection by Threat aircraft.

TASK: 10C.5.2 TAKE ACTIVE AIR DEFENSE MEASURES AGAINST HOSTILE AIRCRAFT

CONDITION(S): The platoon is conducting tactical operations in a tactical environment. Warning of aircraft in the area has been received. Unknown or hostile aircraft has been detected by scouts. The platoon may or may not be under attack by the Threat aircraft and may be either stationary or moving. One air guard per tank has been assigned.

STANDARDS: EVAL: Y; N; NE

- .1 _____ The platoon, while stationary, takes appropriate active air defense measures against Threat aircraft not attacking.
- a. Air guards search assigned sectors for aircraft, detect the aircraft within their sectors, and immediately alert the platoon.
 - b. Air guards give air attack alarm as specified in SOP.
 - c. The platoon moves to occupy positions that afford overhead concealment, if required.
 - d. Platoon commander identifies and reports presence of aircraft in the area to higher headquarters.
 - e. The platoon commander issues a fire command directed all appropriate weapons under his control to engage the hostile aircraft.
 - f. The platoon engages high performance aircraft with all available small arms (rifles and machine guns), aiming in accordance with type of aircraft and its course. Threat attack helicopters are engaged with main guns in addition to small arms.
 - g. The platoon reloads weapons following engagement.
 - h. Platoon commander sends a spot report of the engagement to the company commander.
- .2 _____ The platoon, while moving, takes appropriate active air defense measures against hostile aircraft not attacking.
- a. Air guards give air attack alarm as specified in SOP.
 - b. The platoon disperses vehicles laterally and in depth, continues to move to the nearest covered and concealed position, and halts.
 - c. If covered and concealed positions are not available, the platoon continues to disperse but moves slowly to keep down dust signatures. All personnel prepare to engage the aircraft.
 - d. Each tank commander visually identifies Threat aircraft.
 - e. Platoon commander reports any aircraft action to higher headquarters.
 - f. Platoon commander issues a platoon fire command.
 - g. The platoon engages any hostile aircraft with all available small arms and engages attack helicopters with main gun.
 - h. The platoon reloads weapons following engagement of aircraft.

ENCLOSURE (1)

- .3 _____ The platoon, if stationary, takes all appropriate active air defense measures against hostile aircraft attacking it.
- a. Air guards visually identify attacking aircraft.
 - b. Platoon commander sends a spot report of any hostile air activity to the company commander.
 - c. Air guards give air attack alarm as specified in SOP, and platoon commander issues a platoon fire command.
 - d. All available personnel immediately engage attacking, high-performance aircraft with all small arms and attack helicopters with the main gun.
 - e. The platoon reloads weapons following engagement of aircraft.
 - f. Personnel assigned OPs continue to scan their assigned sectors for additional aircraft.
- .4 _____ The platoon, while moving, takes all appropriate active air defense measures against hostile aircraft attacking it.
- a. Platoon commander or air guards alert vehicle commanders of impending attack.
 - b. If moving in column, the platoon disperses vehicles alternately to shoulders of the road (off road, if possible). Moves to covered and concealed positions if terrain permits.
 - c. Maintains vehicle intervals or increase intervals or dispersion and uses evasive driving techniques.
 - d. Personnel dismount and take up firing positions.
 - e. Personnel prepare to fire on orders of senior individual present or automatically return fire (in accordance with engagement procedures) if aircraft is attacking.
 - f. Engages high performance aircraft with all available small arms. Engages attack helicopters with main guns.
 - g. Reloads weapons following the attack.
 - h. Platoon commander reports the attack to higher headquarters.
- .5 _____ The platoon reorganizes after air attack has ended.
- a. Maintains air watch.
 - b. Treats any casualties.
 - c. Assesses damage to equipment and supplies.
 - d. Gives report to higher headquarters.
 - e. Continues mission.

KEY INDICATORS:

CRITICAL STANDARDS

The platoon destroys Threat aircraft or disrupts its attack. The platoon maintains active defense until aircraft is destroyed or flies out of effective range. No friendly losses are incurred.

ENCLOSURE (1)

10C.6 COMBAT SERVICE SUPPORT

TASK: 10C.6.1 PERFORM RESUPPLY OPERATIONS

CONDITION(S): The platoon is in continuous operations and has been directed to receive supplies. Threat contact is not expected for the duration of the resupply operation.

STANDARDS: EVAL: Y; N; NE

- .1 _____ Platoon commander reports personnel status and requests replacements.
 - a. Reports personnel strength and losses in accordance with unit SOP.
 - b. Reassigns remaining personnel to ensure key positions are filled and critical weapon systems are manned. Assigns replacements by the same criteria.
- .2 _____ Platoon commander reports vehicle, equipment, fuel, and ammunition status.
 - a. Reports vehicle and equipment strength, status, and battle damage assessment in accordance with unit SOP.
 - b. Requests maintenance, recovery, and evacuation support from higher headquarters, as necessary.
 - c. Reports fuel and ammunition status in accordance with unit SOP.
 - d. Request resupply of Classes I, III, and V, as required.
- .3 _____ The platoon is resupplied using tailgate method.
 - a. Platoon sergeant coordinates with tank leader for linkup with logistics package (LOGPAC).
 - b. Platoon sergeant meets LOGPAC at designated point and leads it to first vehicle to be resupplied.
 - c. Platoon sergeant halts LOGPAC in a concealed position to the rear of the vehicle.
 - d. Vehicle is resupplied.
 - e. The platoon provides local security for LOGPAC during resupply.
 - f. Completes resupply and guides LOGPAC to next vehicle position.
 - g. Platoon sergeant monitors progress of resupply operation.
 - h. Platoon sergeant leads LOGPAC to linkup point or another point as designated by the tank leader.
 - i. Platoon sergeant coordinates with tank leader for future requirements.
 - j. Platoon commander keeps parent unit informed on resupply operation.
- .4 _____ The platoon resupplies using service station method.
 - a. Platoon sergeant coordinates with tank leader for location of LOGPAC.
 - b. If platoon does not move together, platoon commander and the platoon sergeant determine which platoon vehicles will be resupplied first and when they will move.
 - c. If platoon moves together, platoon commander determines order of movement to resupply location.
 - d. The platoon vehicles move to resupply location.
 - e. Each vehicle resupplies and returns to its original position.

ENCLOSURE (1)

- f. Platoon sergeant coordinates with tank leader for future requirements.
- g. Platoon commander keeps parent unit informed on resupply operation.

KEY INDICATORS:

CRITICAL STANDARDS

The platoon's basic load of critical supplies is replenished while security is maintained at a level consistent with METT-TSL.

TASK: 10C.6.2 PREPARE AND EVACUATE CASUALTIES

CONDITION(S): The platoon is in continuous operations, in a tactical environment, is conducting any tactical operation, and has sustained casualties. Threat contact is not expected.

STANDARDS: EVAL: Y; N; NE

- .1 ____ The platoon performs medical treatment.
 - a. Identifies serious casualties requiring evacuation.
 - b. Administers the correct lifesaving measures.
- .2 ____ The platoon reports casualties.
- .3 ____ The platoon assists in evacuation of casualties.
 - a. Prepares casualties for evacuation by air or ground transportation to aid station or clearing station.
 - b. Requests helicopter or ground evacuation of casualties.
 - c. Selects and marks the best available covered and concealed landing zone (LZ) (air evac only).
 - d. Extracts casualties from vehicles or dangerous situation without causing further injury.
 - e. Moves casualties by best available means to LZ or ground pickup point and continues treatment.
 - f. Assists the flight or ambulance crew with casualty loading.
 - g. Retains classified documents (CEOI, maps, orders, overlays) previously controlled by casualty.
 - h. Maintains security of landing site or pickup point including coordinating any suppressive fires required.
- .4 ____ Platoon evacuates contaminated casualties.
 - a. Decontamination is initiated prior to loading.
 - b. If decontamination is impossible, the hazards en route are minimized by covering casualties.
- .5 ____ Platoon evacuates EPW casualties.
 - a. EPW casualties are evacuated by the same standards as for US casualties.
 - b. Security of EPW casualties is continually maintained.

ENCLOSURE (1)

KEY INDICATORS:

CRITICAL STANDARDS

The platoon provides or assists in medical treatment and evacuation of casualties without causing further injuries, before continuing operations.

TASK: 10C.6.3 PERFORM MAINTENANCE OPERATIONS

CONDITION(S): The platoon is in continuous tactical operations. Vehicles or equipment is damaged, must be recovered, or is due for scheduled services. Threat contact is not expected.

STANDARDS: EVAL: Y; N; NE

- .1 ____ The platoon reports equipment deficiencies.
 - a. Vehicle commanders update platoon sergeant on equipment status.
 - b. Platoon sergeant reports status to platoon leader.
 - c. Platoon sergeant reports status to logistical coordinator for his element (company tank leader or supply NCO).
- .2 ____ The platoon conducts maintenance of its equipment.
 - a. Performs operator maintenance and emergency repairs on assigned vehicles, weapons, and equipment, whenever the tactical situation permits.
 - b. Effects emergency repairs as far forward as possible.
 - c. Platoon sergeant informs organizational maintenance personnel of deficiencies as soon as possible.
 - d. Platoon sergeant coordinates for technical or upper echelon maintenance support.
- .3 ____ The platoon recovers a tank by similar vehicle.
 - a. Restores vehicle to state of mobility.
 - b. Ensures no further damage is caused to the vehicle as a result of the recovery process.
 - c. Provides security by dismounted crew personnel and remaining platoon vehicles.
 - d. Tows vehicle to maintenance collection point or designated location.
 - e. Takes all safety precautions to prevent injury to crews as a result of recovery process.
- .4 ____ Platoon destroys vehicles and equipment, with commander's permission, that it cannot recover or evacuate.
 - a. Upon receiving permission to destroy, crew off-loads operational ammunition, weapons, personal gear, classified materials, and critical components to operable vehicle(s).
 - b. Changes frequencies on radios, as needed.
 - c. Destroys the vehicle or equipment in accordance with the appropriate TM.
- .5 ____ The platoon performs scheduled maintenance.

ENCLOSURE (1)

KEY INDICATORS:

CRITICAL STANDARDS

The platoon's equipment deficiencies are corrected or reported; inoperative vehicles or equipment is recovered or destroyed.

TASK: 10C.6.4 PERFORM FIELD SANITATION OPERATIONS

CONDITION(S): The platoon is conducting combat operations in a tactical environment and may be either stationary or mobile. The platoon has formed a field sanitation team from within its ranks and has adequate supplies on hand to perform its mission. Threat contact is not expected.

STANDARDS: EVAL: Y; N; NE

- .1 ____ During combat operations, the platoon ensures potable water is available and utilized.
 - a. Platoon personnel consume only potable water as designated by the field sanitation team.
 - b. The platoon maintains its prescribed load of water purification materials in accordance with the unit SOP.
 - c. As necessary, platoon personnel purify unpotable water.
- .2 ____ When stationary, the platoon establishes heads and hand washing facilities.
 - a. Heads and urinals are constructed at least 35 meters from water sources and 100 meter from mess areas.
 - b. Hand-washing facilities are provided at heads.
 - c. A soakage pit is provided under the hand-washing facility to prevent accumulation of standing water.
- .3 ____ During mobile operations, the platoon uses catholes when time is not available to construct heads.
- .4 ____ When consuming prepared rations, the platoon takes adequate measures to avoid food spoilage, ensures cleanliness of utensils, and controls pests.
 - a. Food is protected from extreme temperatures, moisture, and pests, and is consumed promptly after delivery.
 - b. Cooking utensils and mess kits are cleaned and disinfected before and after use, and a mess kit washing facility is established or clean, disposable mess gear from sealed packages is utilized.
 - c. Garbage and waste are buried, incinerated, or evacuated from the platoon area in sealed bags or containers promptly.
 - d. Feeding locations are selected to minimize insect and rodent hazards. Protective measures against pests, to include wearing netting and insect repellent, spraying, dusting, poisoning, and trapping, as necessary, are employed.

ENCLOSURE (1)

KEY INDICATORS:

CRITICAL STANDARDS

The platoon and its field sanitation team take all steps necessary to ensure sanitation standards are established, maintained, and enforced. No platoon members are lost to illness or disease as a direct result of failure to maintain adequate field sanitation.

10C.7 NBC

TASK: 10C.7.1 REACT TO CHEMICAL ATTACK

CONDITION(S): The platoon is subjected to a chemical attack without warning.

STANDARDS: EVAL: Y; N; NE

.1 ____ The platoon reacts to a chemical attack.

- a. The platoon performs appropriate first aid on chemical casualties:
 - 1) Nerve: Give nerve antidote injection. Artificial respiration may be necessary.
 - 2) Blister: None.
 - 3) Blood: Inhale amyl nitrite. Artificial respiration may be necessary.
- b. Leaders supervise the platoon's response to the chemical attack and determine the status of the casualties.
- c. The platoon commander forwards NBC 1 report to battalion headquarters IAW unit SOP.

.2 ____ The platoon detects chemical agent.

- a. Marines attach chemical-agent paper to overgarments and to supplies.
- b. The chemical-agent detector kit is used when the platoon is under chemical attack, when a chemical attack is likely, or when the presence of a chemical agent is suspected.
- c. Designated personnel perform periodic monitoring using the chemical-agent detector kits.
- d. The platoon performs continuous monitoring using chemical alarms and sends the results to higher headquarters.
- e. Leaders ensure at least two Marines (one primary and one alternate) are assigned to and can use each chemical agent detector kit and chemical alarm.
- f. Positive tests using chemical-agent paper are verified using the chemical detector kit.

.3 ____ The platoon minimizes additional contamination.

- a. Leaders order crossing of a known contaminated area only when the area cannot be bypassed. When possible, planes are cleared through contaminated areas.
- b. When possible, Marines avoid handling contaminated materiel.
- c. Vital sustaining items, such as water, spare clothing, protective mask filters, and food, are carried inside vehicles.
- d. The platoon monitors the communication net to stay informed on the contamination threat in the unit's area.

ENCLOSURE (1)

.4 _____ The unit unmask.

- a. Before unmasking, the area is checked using the chemical-agent detector kit, when possible.
- b. Unmasking is performed only when the chemical agent is identified as nonpersistent and decontamination is no longer needed.
- c. Only the commander or senior leader present announces, "All clear."
- d. The leader announces, "All clear," only after all unmasking procedures have been completed.
- e. No Marine unmask until he hears "All clear" from his commander or the senior leader present.

.5 _____ Marines perform basic skills decontamination.

- a. Marines use towelettes to wipe down hood, mask, weapons, gloves, and helmets.
- b. Marines use sticks or other objects to remove globs of liquid chemical contamination on overgarments.
- c. The platoon completes basic skill decontamination within 15 minutes.

.6 _____ The platoon performs partial decontamination. Partial decontamination allows the unit to perform the assigned mission without additional chemical casualties.

- a. Contaminated clothing and equipment are partly decontaminated as soon as possible.
- b. Essential items are decontaminated first--driver's area, gunner's sight, individual weapon.

.7 _____ The platoon decontaminates individual equipment.

- a. Any gross contamination is removed using sticks, rags, or other objects, then those sticks, rags, and objects are buried.
- b. Boots are decontaminated with the personal decontamination kit, washed with soapy water, and rinsed.
- c. Metal equipment is decontaminated using DS2, soapy water, or the personal decontamination kit.
- d. Individual weapons are decontaminated with the personal decontamination kit, disassembled, washed in soapy water, rinsed, dried, oiled, reassembled, and test fired.
- e. Load-bearing equipment is decontaminated.
 - 1) Light contamination: Decontaminated using personal decontamination kit.
 - 2) Heavy contamination: Decontaminated at a personnel decontamination station or buried there and replaced with new 782 gear.

.8 _____ The platoon decontaminates unit equipment.

- a. As soon as possible, the platoon decontaminates unit equipment to continue the mission and avoid further casualties.
- b. Vehicles and crew-served weapons are decontaminated.
 - 1) Areas essential to the vehicle or weapon operation are decontaminated using the M11 portable decontaminating apparatus and, when necessary, field-expedient measures such as mud or rags.
 - 2) Light contamination is removed by airing.

- 3) Heavier decontamination is removed using DS2, soapy water, solvents, or slurry.
 - 4) Contaminated wood surfaces and tires are decontaminated with STB slurry.
 - 5) No DS2 is used on gunner sights.
- c. Ammunition is decontaminated.
- 1) Ammunition is decontaminated with soapy water, wiped with organic solvent, thoroughly dried, and aerated.
 - 2) Ammunition corroded from contact with chemical agents is disposed of, mainly if the brass cannot be cleaned.
 - 3) STB is not used on ammunition contaminated with mustard-type blister agents.
- d. Optical instruments are decontaminated using the M258-series kit or by blotting with rags and then wiping with an organic solvent. Optical instruments are air-dried (lens cleaning solvent is used only on lenses) OR if available, hot air is used.
- e. Communications equipment is decontaminated using hot air, when available, or by airing or weathering.
- f. Food and water is decontaminated.
- 1) Packaged rations are decontaminated with soap and water or DS2.
 - 2) Food is decontaminated only by Marines who know decontamination procedures.
 - 3) Decontaminated food is inspected and approved by medical personnel before being eaten.
 - 4) Water in closed containers is consumed after outside of containers is decontaminated using 5Th slurry or DS2.
 - 5) Contaminated water is not consumed and Marines do not try to purify it.
- g. Designated personnel verify decontamination is complete using chemical detector kits. Any remaining contamination is decontaminated again.
- .9 _____ The platoon continues the mission and maintains security.
- a. The platoon maintains security during decontamination.
 - b. Loader machine guns are manned during decontamination based on the tactical situation.
 - c. Leaders rotate personnel between decontaminating, continuing the mission, and maintaining security, as needed.
 - d. The platoon commander adjusts the MOPP level to the NBC threat or IAW the order of the company commander.
 - e. The platoon commander and platoon sergeant coordinate for the resupply of chemical defensive equipment.
 - f. The platoon resumes the mission.

KEY INDICATORS:

CRITICAL STANDARDS

The platoon quickly reestablishes security; casualties are treated; chemical detection monitoring commences; unmasking procedures are conducted; partial decontamination is conducted; and, the platoon resumes its mission.

ENCLOSURE (1)

TASK: 10C.7.2 REACT TO A NUCLEAR ATTACK

CONDITION(S): The platoon is subjected to a nuclear attack without warning.

STANDARDS: EVAL: Y; N; NE

- .1 ____ The platoon reacts to an unwarned nuclear attack.
 - a. Leaders supervise unit's response to nuclear attack and determine status of casualties.
 - b. The platoon commander sends and NBC 1 report to battalion headquarters IAW unit SOP.
- .2 ____ The unit takes action following nuclear detonation.
 - a. Marines check for injuries and give first aid.
 - b. Marines monitor each other for initial symptoms of radiation poisoning.
 - c. Leaders report unit personnel and equipment status to immediate superiors.
 - d. Unit places radios back into operation and monitors nets.
 - e. Vehicles and other equipment are returned to full combat-ready status.
 - f. Designated Marines begin continuous monitoring with radiacmeters.
 - g. Leaders reestablish security.
 - h. Leaders check dosimetry device readings.
 - i. When there is no longer a radiation hazard, only the senior leader present announces, "All clear."
- .3 ____ The platoon detects radiation.
 - a. Marines shout, "Fallout!" upon detecting radiation or hearing the command FALLOUT.
 - b. All Marines are aware of the radiation hazard.
 - c. Leaders collect readings on radiacmeters and dosimeters from Marines and report readings to the platoon commander.
 - d. All Marines with dosimeters and leaders know acceptable radiation levels.
 - e. Leaders ensure at least two Marines (one primary and one alternate) are assigned to and can use each radiacmeter and radiac set.
 - f. The unit performs periodic or continuous monitoring IAW unit SOP.
 - g. The unit begins continuous monitoring with radiacmeters when a nuclear burst is reported or radiation of 1 cGy per hour is detected by periodic monitoring.
 - h. Stationary units stop continuous monitoring with radiacmeters when the dose rate falls below 1 cGy per hour.
 - i. Moving units perform continuous monitoring until movement is completed.
 - j. Radiation levels are checked whenever the unit moves into a new area and before Marines dismount.
- .4 ____ The platoon takes actions to reduce exposure to further radiation.
 - a. Floors of vehicles are covered with a layer of sandbags.

- b. At least 24 hours of uncontaminated food and water for each Marine is kept on hand.
- c. The platoon will bypass the area unless the mission requires the contaminated area to be traversed.
- d. When crossing contaminated areas, leaders--
 - 1) Pick the route that allows the fastest travel consistent with the mission.
 - 2) Ensure doors, windows, and hatches on vehicles are closed, consistent with security requirements.
 - 3) Go as fast as possible through the area while maintaining safety and security.
 - 4) Employ column formation when possible (to avoid throwing dust onto trailing vehicles) and increase the interval between vehicles.
- e. Marines drink and eat only from approved sources.
- f. Marines wear a handkerchief or scarf over their noses and mouths to avoid inhaling contaminated dust.
- g. Leaders monitor radiation levels for each squad and try to reduce exposure to higher radiation dose levels.
- h. Marines wear rubber overshoes (not chemical overboots) outside of vehicles in contaminated areas. Overshoes are stored outside vehicles before Marines enter vehicles.
- i. Marines should avoid handling contaminated materiel.
- j. The platoon monitors the communications nets to stay informed on the contamination threat in the unit's area.

.5 ____ The platoon decontaminates.

- a. Unit performs partial decontamination by washing and brushing off fallout.
- b. Essential items are decontaminated first--driver's area, gunner's sight, individual weapon.
- c. Leaders supervise partial decontamination, ensuring unit can perform its assigned mission without exposure to excessive radiation.

.6 ____ The platoon continues the mission.

KEY INDICATORS:

CRITICAL STANDARDS

Within 2 seconds, dismounted personnel drop to prone positions and close their eyes. Within 2 seconds, mounted personnel drop down inside the vehicle and brace themselves for the blast wave. Within 30 seconds after the blast and shock waves, security is established. Within 5 minutes, radiological monitoring is started.

ENCLOSURE (1)

TASK: 10C.7.3. PREPARE FOR A CHEMICAL ATTACK

CONDITION(S): The platoon has received a warning to prepare for a chemical attack.

STANDARDS: EVAL: Y; N; NE

- .1 ____ Platoon commander issues warning order.
 - a. Orders Marines to put on chemical protective overgarments, overboots, mask with hood, and gloves (MOPP 4).
 - b. Marines use the buddy-team method to don and check proper wear of protective suit.
 - c. Individual Marines cover their equipment and weapons using ponchos, foliage, plastic, or any material that is expendable or readily decontaminated.
 - d. Marines attach M9 paper to overgarments and to supplies.
- .2 ____ Vehicle Crews prepare their vehicles.
 - a. Store, in the vehicle, water, rations, and equipment not being used.
 - b. The gunner places a poncho or tarpaulin over the launcher (dependent on the tactical situation).
- .3 ____ The platoon commander ensures that designated personnel conduct monitoring.
 - a. Periodically with a chemical-agent detector kit.
 - b. Continuously monitoring with a chemical alarm.
 - c. Results are sent to the battalion commander.
- .4 ____ Platoon commander inspects to ensure that the platoon is prepared for a chemical attack.
 - a. Decontamination equipment is available and serviceable.
 - b. Platoon personnel and equipment are prepared for a chemical attack.
 - c. The platoon is capable of operating in MOPP 4 for six hours.

KEY INDICATORS:

CRITICAL STANDARDS

Within eight minutes, MOPP gear is donned using the buddy-team method. The platoon's chemical-agent detector kit and chemical alarm are put into operation. Weapons and equipment are prepared, as required.

TASK: 10C.7.4 PREPARE FOR A NUCLEAR ATTACK

CONDITION(S): The platoon receives a STRIKWARN message or warning and prepares for a nuclear attack.

STANDARDS: EVAL: Y; N; NE

- .1 ____ The platoon prepares for a nuclear attack.
 - a. The platoon commander instructs all personnel to prepare for a nuclear blast.
 - b. Vehicles are positioned so that the front of the vehicles are toward the expected direction of the blast.

- .2 ____ Drivers and gunners prepare vehicles.
 - a. Remove and stow daysight and nightsights in vehicle.
 - b. Make sure the vehicles are dug in or in trenches or in cuts in roadways.
- .3 ____ Platoon members prepare vehicles and equipment.
 - a. Place one or more layers of sandbags on top of each vehicle and around launcher (offers additional protection from gamma radiation).
 - b. Wet down the sandbags (enhances neutron radiation shielding and protects sandbags from thermal damage).
 - c. Disconnect and stow all radios and antennas. (In the offense, one radio is left on.)
 - d. Stow all water and rations inside the vehicles.
 - e. Tie down all loose equipment inside the vehicles. (This prevents equipment from being thrown about by the blast.)
- .4 ____ Marines prepare themselves.
 - a. Position themselves as low as possible within the fighting positions.
 - b. Wear their helmets with chin strap secured.
 - c. Brace themselves for the blast.
- .5 ____ The platoon commander inspects to ensure that the platoon is prepared for nuclear attack.
 - a. Vehicles are ready.
 - b. Equipment is secured.
 - c. Marines are prepared.

KEY INDICATORS:

CRITICAL STANDARD8

Within the time specified in the STRIKWARN message, platoon vehicles and equipment are prepared and personnel assume covered positions.

ENCLOSURE (1)

X-C-67

SECTION 10D
SCOUT PLATOON

ENCLOSURE (1)

<u>TABLE OF CONTENTS</u>		<u>PAGE</u>
<u>MPS 10D.1 - COMMAND, CONTROL, AND COMMUNICATIONS</u>		
TASK 10D.1.1	PERFORM PRECOMBAT CHECKS	X-D-1
TASK 10D.1.2	PERFORM TACTICAL PLANNING	X-D-2
TASK 10D.1.3	PERFORM REHEARSALS	X-D-5
TASK 10D.1.4	EMPLOY COMMAND AND CONTROL MEASURES	X-D-5
TASK 10D.1.5	EMPLOY OPERATIONS SECURITY (OPSEC)	X-D-7
TASK 10D.1.6	PREPARE FOR TACTICAL OPERATIONS	X-D-9
<u>MPS 10D.2 - INTELLIGENCE AND ELECTRONIC WARFARE</u>		
TASK 10D.2.1	PROCESS ENEMY PRISONERS OF WAR	X-D-10
TASK 10D.2.2	PROCESS CAPTURED DOCUMENTS AND EQUIPMENT	X-D-11
TASK 10D.2.3	ESTABLISH AN OBSERVATION POST (OP)	X-D-12
<u>MPS 10D.3 - MANEUVER</u>		
TASK 10D.3.1	PERFORM A TACTICAL ROAD MARCH	X-D-14
TASK 10D.3.2	OCCUPY AN ASSEMBLY AREA	X-D-15
TASK 10D.3.3	PERFORM A PASSAGE OF LINES	X-D-17
TASK 10D.3.4	ASSIST A PASSAGE OF LINES	X-D-18
TASK 10D.3.5	ASSIST A LINEUP	X-D-19
TASK 10D.3.6	CONDUCT TACTICAL MOVEMENT	X-D-21
TASK 10D.3.7	PERFORM A ROUTE RECONNAISSANCE	X-D-22
TASK 10D.3.8	PERFORM A ZONE RECONNAISSANCE	X-D-24
TASK 10D.3.9	PERFORM AN AREA RECONNAISSANCE	X-D-25
TASK 10D.3.10	RECONNOITER AN OBSTACLE AND A BYPASS	X-D-27
TASK 10D.3.11	EXECUTE ACTIONS ON CONTACT	X-D-28
TASK 10D.3.12	SUPPORT A HASTY ATTACK	X-D-29
TASK 10D.3.13	CONDUCT A SCREEN	X-D-30
TASK 10D.3.14	CONDUCT A RELIEF IN PLACE	X-D-31
<u>MPS 10D.4 - MOBILITY AND COUNTERMOBILITY</u>		
TASK 10D.4.1	EMPLACE/RETRIEVE A HASTY PROTECTIVE MINEFIELD	X-D-32
TASK 10D.4.2	PERFORM DEMOLITION GUARD FORCE OPERATIONS	X-D-33

	PAGE
<u>MPS 10D.5 - AIR DEFENSE</u>	
TASK 10D.5.1	X-D-34
USE PASSIVE AIR DEFENSE MEASURES	
TASK 10D.5.2	X-D-35
TAKE ACTIVE AIR DEFENSE	
MEASURES AGAINST HOSTILE AIRCRAFT	
<u>MPS 10D.6 - COMBAT SERVICE SUPPORT</u>	
TASK 10D.6.1	X-D-36
PERFORM RESUPPLY OPERATIONS	
TASK 10D.6.2	X-D-38
PREPARE/EVACUATE CASUALTIES	
TASK 10D.6.3	X-D-39
PERFORM PLATOON MAINTENANCE OPERATIONS	
TASK 10D.6.4	X-D-39
PERFORM FIELD SANITATION OPERATIONS	
<u>MPS 10D.7 - NBC</u>	
TASK 10D.7.1	X-D-40
REACT TO CHEMICAL ATTACK	
TASK 10D.7.2	X-D-43
REACT TO A NUCLEAR ATTACK	
TASK 10D.7.3	X-D-45
PREPARE FOR A CHEMICAL ATTACK	
TASK 10D.7.4	X-D-46
PREPARE FOR A NUCLEAR ATTACK	

10D.1 COMMAND, CONTROL, AND COMMUNICATIONS

TASK: 10D.1.1 PERFORM PRECOMBAT CHECKS

CONDITION(S): The platoon has received a warning order for an upcoming mission. The warning order specified earliest time for movement and the location of the operation order. The platoon has sufficient time for thorough preparation.

STANDARDS: EVAL: Y; N; NE

- .1 ____ Platoon commander/platoon sergeant prepares for upcoming mission.
 - a. Directs precombat checks be performed.
 - b. Coordinates for technical assistance, if required.
 - c. Supervises the precombat checks.
 - d. Identifies and reports uncorrected deficiencies to higher echelon maintenance personnel.
- .2 ____ Platoon sergeant/section leader performs precombat checks for personnel.
 - a. Ensures Marines are in complete appropriate seasonal uniform.
 - b. Asks questions to ensure Marines have been briefed on current mission/situation.
 - c. Briefs Marines on preventive hot/cold-weather injuries.
- .3 ____ Platoon sergeant/section leader performs precombat checks for vehicle commander.
 - a. Map is complete with current overlay.
 - b. CEOI is current.
 - c. Vehicle commander has binoculars and night-vision goggles.
 - d. Vehicle commander has a compass.
- .4 ____ Platoon sergeant/section leader performs precombat checks for vehicles (general).
 - a. Loads according to load plan.
 - b. Ensures vehicles are topped off with fuel.
 - c. Ensures POL package products and small arms lubricants are loaded.
 - d. Ensures water cans are filled.
 - e. Ensures MREs are stowed.
 - f. Ensures weapons cleaning kits are present.
 - g. Ensures first-aid kits are complete.
 - h. Ensures operator's manuals with all changes and LO are present for radios, equipment, weapons.
 - i. Ensures critical tools and tool kits are present.
 - j. Ensures prepare-to-fire checks are complete.
- .5 ____ Platoon sergeant/section leader performs precombat checks on vehicles.
 - a. Performs maintenance IAW before-operations checks in appropriate -10 manual.

ENCLOSURE (1)

- b. Ensures no deadline deficiencies exist.
- .6 _____ Platoon sergeant/section leader performs precombat checks on miscellaneous equipment.
- a. Inspects binoculars.
 - b. Inspects camouflage nets and supports.
 - c. Inspects compasses.
 - d. Inspects night-vision goggles (with spare batteries).
- .7 _____ Platoon sergeant/section leader performs precombat checks on communication equipment.
- a. Ensures radios are operational.
 - b. Ensures speech security equipment is functional.
 - c. Ensures proper frequencies are set.
 - d. Ensures matching units are operational.
 - e. Ensures antennas are tied down.
 - f. Ensures connectors are clean and serviceable.
 - g. Ensures TA-312/TA-1 is present with batteries.
 - h. Ensures AN/GRA-39 is complete with batteries.
 - i. Ensures WD-1 is on board and serviceable.
 - j. Ensures AN/PRC-77 is complete with assembly pack.
- .8 _____ Platoon sergeant/section leader performs precombat checks on NBC equipment.
- a. Ensures protective clothing is complete.
 - b. Ensures protective mask is complete.
 - c. Ensures mask and hoods are serviceable.
 - d. Ensures nerve agent antidote is available to distribute.
- .9 _____ Platoon sergeant/section leader performs precombat checks on crew-served weapons.
- a. Ensures weapons are clean and functional.
 - b. Ensures tubes/barrels are clean.
 - c. Ensures spare barrels, cleaning tools, bolts, and ruptured cartridge extractors are present.
 - d. Ensures machine guns are properly mounted/stowed.
 - e. Ensures machine guns are properly mounted to include lock and pins.

KEY INDICATORS:

CRITICAL STANDARDS

The platoon's equipment and personnel are checked for serviceability and accountability before specified movement time, and deficiencies are corrected.

ENCLOSURE (1)

TASK: 10D.1.2 PERFORM TACTICAL PLANNING

CONDITION(S): The platoon has received at least a warning order and may have received an operations order on an upcoming task.

STANDARDS: EVAL: Y; N; NE

- .1 ____ Leaders receive mission.
 - a. Identify the specific tasks located in paragraphs 2 and 3, and Annex B of the operation order.
 - b. Identify the implied tasks to accomplish the mission paying particular attention to EEIs, TAIs and NAIs.
 - c. Identify the essential tasks from the list of specific and implied tasks.
 - d. Put the essential tasks in the form of a restated mission that includes who, what, when, where, and why.
- .2 ____ Leaders issue a warning order.
 - a. Issue a warning order immediately after determining the platoon mission.
 - b. Ensure warning order is brief.
 - c. Start the message by saying "Warning Order."
 - d. List addressees.
 - e. Tell subordinates the nature of the operation so they can immediately start preparing.
 - f. Tell subordinates the time the operation is to begin.
 - g. Tell subordinates the earliest time they must be ready to move out.
 - h. Tell subordinates if there are any changes in task organization and what the changes are so they can be executed quickly.
 - i. Tell subordinates the time and place the complete order (if any) will be given.
 - j. Make sure subordinate elements acknowledge receipt of the warning order.
- .3 ____ Leaders make a tentative plan.
 - a. Develop a tentative plan based on METT-TSL.
 - b. Develop alternative courses of action based on the tentative plan.
 - c. Compare alternative courses of action.
 - d. Select the best course of action.
- .4 ____ Leaders initiate necessary movement.
 - a. Coordinate movement route.
 - b. Coordinate necessary transportation.
- .5 ____ Leaders perform leader's reconnaissance.
 - a. Conduct a reconnaissance.
 - b. Analyze the five military aspects of terrain.
 - c. Determine route of movement.

ENCLOSURE (1)

- d. Determine formation and technique of movement and areas where the technique or formation may change.
- e. Determine likely Threat positions and kill zones.
- f. Determine likely routes around Threat positions.
- g. Determine likely locations for sector/zone observation.
- h. Determine likely overwatch positions.
- i. Determine likely artillery targets.
- j. Verify map reconnaissance, if possible.

.6 ____ Leaders complete the plan.

- a. Make final adjustments.
- b. Put the plan in the five-paragraph order.
- c. Prepare an operations overlay which graphically depicts the final plan.

.7 ____ Leaders issue the order.

- a. Ensure the complete orders group is present.
- b. Issue overlays.
- c. Give subordinates time to post overlays.
- d. Check subordinates' overlays to ensure they are posted correctly.
- e. Brief the entire order in sequence covering all details.
- f. Fix responsibility for all activities.
- g. Ensure everyone understands the mission and concept of operations; check through backbriefs.

.8 ____ Leaders supervise and refine the order.

- a. Refine the plan as the situation changes.
- b. Leader is located where the most critical events or activities are to take place.

KEY INDICATORS:

CRITICAL STANDARDS

Leaders utilize troop leading steps to plan tactical missions, brief troops, and platoon plan supports commander's plan and intent. All platoon members are able to briefback and explain platoon plan when directed.

ENCLOSURE (1)

TASK: 10D.1.3 PERFORM REHEARSALS

CONDITION(S): Time is available before execution of a task to conduct a rehearsal sufficient time-distance relationship from the Threat exists so the element will not make Threat contact before completing the rehearsal. Sufficient space is available.

STANDARDS: EVAL: Y; N; NE

- .1 ____ Platoon commander issues warning order.
 - a. Plans rehearsal of all tasks required by mission.
 - b. Plans rehearsal of all contingencies.
- .2 ____ Platoon sergeant forms platoon at designated rehearsal site.
 - a. Issues rehearsal order.
 - b. Explains new or unfamiliar tactics/techniques.
- .3 ____ Platoon conducts rehearsal.
 - a. Rehearses tasks so platoon understands and is capable of executing tasks.
 - b. Platoon commander conducts AAR to point out mistakes as well as tasks accomplished to standard.
 - c. Vehicle commanders ensure necessary retraining of individual tasks.
 - d. Platoon commander/platoon sergeant ensures necessary retraining of platoon tasks.
 - e. Repeats rehearsal until all tasks and missions are accomplished to standards.
- .4 ____ Platoon commander reports results of rehearsal to commander.
 - a. Prepared for mission.
 - b. Requires more time for rehearsals.

KEY INDICATORS:

CRITICAL STANDARDS

The rehearsal should replicate, as closely as possible, the upcoming task. All members of the platoon thoroughly understand their duties during the conduct of the task. Platoon commander checks vehicle commander knowledge through briefbacks.

TASK: 10D.1.4 EMPLOY COMMAND AND CONTROL MEASURES

CONDITION(S): The platoon has received an operation order and overlay from battalion. The platoon is in continuous operations.

STANDARDS: EVAL: Y; N; NE

- .1 ____ Leaders employ terrain index reference system (TIRS).
 - a. Designate each TIRS point with one letter and two numbers in upper right-hand quadrant of the tick mark.
 - b. Use TIRS as a tool to maneuver the element.

- c. Use TIRS to communicate control measures.
- .2 ____ Leaders employ radio listening silence.
- a. Scouts listen to platoon radio transmission.
 - b. Vehicle commanders stay off the radio unless communication is necessary.
 - c. If part of a message was missed while eaves-dropping, the receiving station requests sender to "say again" the communication missed upon end of transmission.
- .3 ____ Leaders assist or control attached/OPCON combat support elements.
- a. Explain mission to element leader.
 - b. Control element, if necessary, by issuing orders to it during operations.
- .4 ____ Leaders control platoon maneuver and fields of observation using graphic control measures.
- a. Ensure platoon fields of observation and maneuver are coordinated IAW established control measures.
 - b. Report locations in relation to the applicable control measures.
- .5 ____ Leaders control fields of observation and direct fire.
- a. Issue fire commands.
 - b. Use reference to TRPs and/or engagement areas.
 - c. Establish and change target priorities, as necessary.
- .6 ____ Leaders control indirect fires.
- a. Use assigned forward observer to engage or shift from preplanned targets.
 - b. Employ fire support coordination measures to speed the responsiveness of fire support units.
 - c. Change target priorities, methods of engagement, shell/fuze combinations and target effect criteria, as necessary.
 - d. Nominate mortars and/or artillery targets based on known or suspected Threat positions.
 - e. Coordinate for employment of CAS/CIFS, if available.
- .7 ____ Platoon effectively communicates with higher and adjacent headquarters.
- a. Leaders plan and maintain multiple means of communications.
 - b. Leaders reestablish communications if communications breakdown.

KEY INDICATORS:

CRITICAL STANDARDS

The platoon's use of command and control techniques facilitates the tactical plan and ensures the successful accomplishment of the mission.

ENCLOSURE (1)

TASK: 10D.1.5 EMPLOY OPERATIONS SECURITY (OPSEC)

CONDITION(S): The platoon conducts its missions in an active theater of operations against the Threat. Threat intelligence collectors may consist of agents, patrols, long-range reconnaissance elements, refugees, terrorists, special operations elements, and indigenous signal collectors.

STANDARDS: EVAL: Y; N; NE

- .1 ____ Platoon employs physical security measures.
 - a. Selects and mans positions which detect and report Threat intrusion or observation of position or area.
 - b. Prevents civilian access to position or area.
 - c. Established primary and alternate means of communications between positions.
 - d. Conducts random security patrols to detect unauthorized personnel before they penetrate the platoon position or area.
 - e. Establishes a reaction force that maintains communications with it's higher headquarters.
 - f. Reacts with force to destroy or repel Threat intrusions.
- .2 ____ Platoon employs information security measures to protect vulnerable information.
 - a. Controls information on a need-to-know basis.
 - b. Does not permit fraternization with civilians.
 - c. Enforces civil-military curfew.
 - d. Does not brief personnel on upcoming operations until they have a need-to-know or, if preparations are of some duration, briefs them and places them in isolation.
 - e. Conducts alert, deployment preparation, and loading procedures to minimize detection.
 - f. Warns personnel not to reveal the details of upcoming operations in their personal mail.
 - g. Uncontrolled maps do not contain friendly order of battle data.
 - h. Combat personnel do not carry details of military activities in personal material such as letters, notes, drawings, sketches, or photographs.
 - i. Limits classified document holdings to those necessary to accomplish the mission.
 - j. Minimizes reproduction of classified material.
- .3 ____ Platoon employs signal security measures.
 - a. Uses authentication procedures outlined in unit CEOI and/or systems during all communications.
 - b. Changes call signs and radio frequencies as directed by CEOI.
 - c. Does not use names of persons, equipment, units, and locations over nonsecure communications.
 - d. Avoids unnecessary transmissions.
 - e. Encrypts sensitive information which must be transmitted by electrical means, using an authorized cryptosystem.
 - f. Reports COMSEC discrepancies to the net control station.

ENCLOSURE (1)

- .4 _____ Platoon reduces potential for effective jamming/direction finding when the Threat has integrated electronic warfare and firepower.
 - a. Camouflages and conceals communications equipment from Threat line-of-sight.
 - b. Follows SOP for communications during radio silence and emission control conditions.
 - c. Establishes alternate means and alternate routes for communications.
 - d. Observes radio silence when directed.
 - e. Uses directional antennas where possible/practical.
 - f. Uses lowest possible power setting to communicate with desired stations.
 - g. Keeps transmissions as short as possible.
- .5 _____ Platoon takes anti-jamming actions (initiates the following procedures).
 - a. Disconnects the RF cable to confirm jamming.
 - b. Increases power.
 - c. Repeats transmission, speaking slowly and distinctly.
 - d. Changes location of radio/antenna.
 - e. Does not disclose the effectiveness of the jamming over the jammed frequency.
 - f. Changes frequency.
- .6 _____ Platoon prevents imitative communication deception (ICD). Uses the following techniques or procedures at all times to prevent ICD.
 - a. Correct authentication procedures.
 - b. Authorized brevity lists, prosigns, prowords and operations codes.
 - c. Call signs and frequencies.
 - d. Net discipline.
 - e. Radio listening silence when imposed.
- .7 _____ Platoon employs countersurveillance measures.
 - a. Masks or removes all vehicle marking, such as unit or personnel identification and march serial numbers.
 - b. Covers all reflective surfaces with nonreflective material such as cloth, mud, or camouflage stick to prevent glare.
 - c. Does not use bright engineer tape.
 - d. Avoids large concentration of vehicles.
 - e. Uses buildings and terrain features in camouflaging vehicles.
 - f. Does not strip trees, nor cut too much foliage within vicinity of camouflaged positions.
 - g. Uses camouflage nets and erects them correctly.
 - h. Uses cut foliage from local areas.
 - i. Ensures the area is free of trash and litter and other material such as gas cans, tent liners, and tarps.

ENCLOSURE (1)

- j. Ensures the area is free of personal items such as wash cloths, towels, and underclothing, which contrast with the natural surroundings.
- k. Camouflages freshly dug earth from positions.
- l. Ensures vehicles are at least 50 meters apart (METT-TSL dependent).
- m. Minimizes movement to and from main areas.
- n. Uses existing tracks/roads for movement of vehicles.
- o. Obliterates tracks left by vehicles moving into position, or continues tracks beyond destination.
- p. Minimizes shadows and moves with the shadows when they shift.
- q. Minimizes shadows characteristic of particular equipment by proper positioning and use of camouflage.
- r. Where no shade is present, parks vehicles to avoid facing sun where possible.
- s. Changes deployment action patterns to preclude Threat from predicting future operations or determining locations of concealed units.
- t. Camouflages antennas using natural vegetation.
- u. Keeps antenna height at the lowest level without reducing or hampering communications.
- v. Turns volume and squelch to lowest setting consistent with operational requirements.
- w. Observes noise discipline.
- x. Employs smoke if authorized/directed by higher headquarters.

KEY INDICATORS:

CRITICAL STANDARDS

The platoon performs its missions without security breaches.

TASK: 10D.1.6 PREPARE FOR TACTICAL OPERATIONS

CONDITION(S): The platoon is operating in a tactical environment and has been given an order to conduct a tactical operation at a given time.

STANDARDS: EVAL: Y; N; NE

- .1 ____ Platoon sergeant establishes the priority of work for the platoon, as per METT-TSL.
- a. Guard and security.
 - b. Maintenance.
 - c. Resupply of Class III and Class V.
 - d. Weapons cleaning.
 - e. Class I.
 - f. Sleep plan.

- .2 _____ Platoon assumes or upgrades readiness condition (REDCON) status ordered by the battalion commander to accomplish specified tasks, but does not decrease its REDCON level below that ordered by the commander.
- a. REDCON 4 (minimum security). One man guard, one man local security, remainder of platoon conducts required preparations, and platoon is prepared to move within one hour of notification.
 - b. REDCON 3 (reduced security). Fifty percent of platoon conducts security, remainder of platoon conducts required preparations, and the platoon is prepared to move within 30 minutes of notification.
 - c. REDCON 2 (stand-to). All equipment stowed (except hot loop and NBC alarms), vehicles and weapons manned (OPs still out), precombat inspections completed, operation order or fragmentary order and graphics issued, and all maintenance and resupply completed. All vehicles started together on order from platoon leader or platoon sergeant, stand-to reports submitted to platoon by each vehicle (over hot loop), and platoon leader enters battalion radio net and sends platoon's stand-to report by unit SOP. The platoon is prepared to move within 15 minutes of notification.
 - d. REDCON 1 (full alert). All personnel mounted on vehicles (OPs in), hot loop and NBC alarms taken in, and platoon is prepared to execute mission immediately.

KEY INDICATORS:

CRITICAL STANDARDS

The platoon is prepared to conduct the operation at the time stated in the operation order.

10D.2 INTELLIGENCE AND ELECTRONIC WARFARE

TASK: 10D.2.1 PROCESS ENEMY PRISONERS OF WAR

CONDITION(S): The platoon is in continuous operations. Threat personnel have surrendered or have been captured.

STANDARDS: EVAL: Y; N; NE

- .1 _____ Platoon searches captured prisoners of war.
- a. Removes all weapons and documents.
 - b. Returns personal items of no military intelligence value.
 - c. Prisoners from whom personal property is taken are given a written receipt for the property.
 - d. Tags each prisoner of war and each item removed from him with necessary information.
 - e. Leaves the prisoner's of war helmet, protective mask, and gear to protect him from the immediate dangers of the battlefield.
- .2 _____ Platoon segregates captured prisoners of war.
- a. Segregates prisoner's of war by rank, sex, deserters, civilians, and nationality.
 - b. Turns wounded prisoner's of war over to medical personnel for evacuation through medical channels.
- .3 _____ Platoon maintains silence among prisoners.

- a. Prevents prisoner of war leaders from giving orders.
 - b. Prevents prisoners of war from planning escape.
 - c. Does not talk in front of prisoners of war except to issue orders and maintain discipline.
- .4 ____ Platoon speeds prisoners/information to the rear.
- a. Platoon commander/platoon sergeant/section leader notifies parent unit that prisoners of war have been captured.
 - b. Platoon commander evaluates information gained from prisoners of war for immediate tactical significance.
 - c. Passes information to higher commander or command post.
 - d. Rapidly removes prisoners of war to the rear.
- .5 ____ Platoon safeguards prisoners from harm.
- a. Remove prisoners of war from immediate dangers of the battlefield.
 - b. Does not allow anyone to abuse prisoners of war.
 - c. Treats prisoners of war humanely.

KEY INDICATORS:

CRITICAL STANDARDS

The platoon utilizes the five "S's" in processing Threat prisoners of war who are evacuated to the next higher PW holding areas within six hours of capture.

TASK: 10D.2.2 PROCESS CAPTURED DOCUMENTS AND EQUIPMENT

CONDITION(S): The platoon is in continuous operations. Threat equipment and documents have been captured.

STANDARDS: EVAL: Y; N; NE

- .1 ____ Platoon tags documents and captured equipment with necessary information.
- a. Type of equipment.
 - b. Date and time of capture.
 - c. Place of capture.
 - d. Capturing unit.
 - e. Circumstances of capture.
 - f. Prisoner's name.
- .2 ____ Platoon reports capture of documents/equipment to higher headquarters.
- a. Reports type of document/equipment.
 - b. Reports date and time of capture.

ENCLOSURE (1)

- c. Reports place of capture.
- .3 _____ Platoon disposes of captured equipment.
 - a. Destroys, secures, evacuates, or abandons the captured equipment in accordance with the disposition instructions.
 - b. Evacuates documents to designated personnel/higher headquarters.

KEY INDICATORS:

CRITICAL STANDARDS

The platoon destroys, secures, marks, and evacuates all captured documents and equipment based on disposition instructions from the parent unit.

TASK: 10D.2.3 ESTABLISH AN OBSERVATION POST (OP)

CONDITION(S): The platoon is operating in a tactical environment. The platoon has been assigned a sector of responsibility to watch for Threat activity. Threat contact is possible or expected.

STANDARDS: EVAL: Y; N; NE

- .1 _____ Platoon commander/platoon sergeant/section leader reconnoiters the area to site the OP.
 - a. Selects a position that provides good observation of sectors and provides early warning of Threat activities.
 - b. Selects multiple positions if one OP cannot cover the platoon's sector.
 - c. Ensures that positions have overlapping fields of view.
 - d. Ensures that positions provide good cover and concealment.
 - e. Ensures that positions are within small arms supporting range of the platoon.
 - f. Ensures that positions have covered and concealed routes back to the platoon's position.
- .2 _____ Platoon commander/platoon sergeant/section leader assigns at least two personnel per OP and briefs them prior to sending them out.
 - a. When, where and how to locate the OP.
 - b. When and how to report.
 - c. When and how to withdraw.
 - d. If and when to fire at a Threat target.
 - e. Challenge and password.
 - f. When they will be replaced.
- .3 _____ The OP personnel collect essential equipment.
 - a. Individual weapons.
 - b. TAI/TA312 telephone.
 - c. MOPP suits and protective masks.

ENCLOSURE (1)

- d. Binoculars and night-vision goggles and scopes.
 - e. Map and compass.
 - f. Flashlights with filter.
 - g. Helmets and web gear with canteen, first aid pouch, and ammunition pouches.
- .4 _____ If the platoon is to be in position for less than six hours, it establishes a hasty OP.
- a. Establishes communication between the platoon and its OP's by hooking the telephone into the hot loop wire.
 - b. Camouflages position, vehicles, and equipment.
 - c. Camouflages withdrawal routes, as necessary.
 - d. Reinforces position using logs, rocks, and sandbags.
 - e. Continues to improve position.
- .5 _____ If the platoon is to be in position for more than six hours, it establishes a deliberate OP.
- a. OP personnel draw additional equipment: shovel, mattock, and pick; M8 chemical agent alarms; and claymore mines, trip flares, colored star clusters, and smoke and fragmentation grenades.
 - b. The OP establishes communication with the platoon by hooking the telephone into the hot loop wire.
 - c. The OP emplaces M8 chemical agent alarms by unit SOP.
 - d. OP personnel prepare a two-man fighting position, chest deep with grenade sump.
 - e. OP personnel camouflage their positions, dirt mound to front, and overhead.
 - f. The OP improves its covered and concealed route to and from OP position and conceals hot loop wire.
 - g. Each OP emplaces claymore mines and trip flares to front and flanks.
 - h. Each OP improves its position.
- .6 _____ Both hasty and deliberate OP personnel develop an OP sketch card.
- a. Depict platoon's position.
 - b. Show OP's position and patrol routes.
 - c. Show sectors of observation and reference points.
 - d. Show small arms fields of fire.
 - e. Depict location of obstacles and booby traps.
 - f. Show platoon's TRP's.
 - g. Show indirect-fire targets.
 - h. Outline all dead space.
- .7 _____ The platoon operates the OP.
- a. Searches assigned sectors continuously, using search techniques.
 - b. Conducts a communication check every 30 minutes or by unit SOP.

ENCLOSURE (1)

- c. Switches observers within OP every 20 to 30 minutes; more often in extreme cold or wet conditions.
- d. Sets up and inspects night-vision devices prior to darkness to ensure they are complete and operational.
- e. Conducts surveillance using night-vision devices during hours of darkness.
- f. Uses senses to determine Threat activities: sight, sound, smell, touch (vibrations), and common sense.
- g. Maintains noise, light, and litter discipline.
- h. Collects and reports tactical information by hot loop to alert the platoon to Threat activities in sector.
- i. Challenges unrecognized personnel approaching the OP.
- j. Returns to the platoon's position only on order, when relieved, or to avoid capture.

KEY INDICATORS:

CRITICAL STANDARDS

The platoon establishes OP's which provide early warning of Threat activities within its assigned sector of responsibility.

10D.3 MANEUVER

TASK: 10D.3.1 PERFORM A TACTICAL ROAD MARCH

CONDITION(S): The platoon must move from one location to another along a designated route either as a platoon or as separate squads. Threat contact is not likely.

STANDARDS: EVAL: Y; N; NE

- .1 ____ Platoon commander plans the mission IAW troop leading procedures.
 - a. If not already specified, determine speed and interval.
 - b. Chooses appropriate formation, either column or staggered column or movement by squads.
- .2 ____ Platoon/squads reconnoiters route to the SP.
 - a. Determines suitability of the route.
 - b. Determines travel time to the SP.
- .3 ____ Platoon/squads crosses SP/LD.
 - a. Departs the assembly area at the appropriate time to cross the SP at the +/- time specified in the operation order.
 - b. Crosses the SP at the speed, interval, and formation specified in the operation order.
- .4 ____ Platoon/squads maintains security during movement.
 - a. Maintains 360-degree air guards.

ENCLOSURE (1)

- b. Maintains all-around local security through crew sectors of observation and weapon's orientation.
 - c. Maintains contact with lead, flank, or rear security elements of larger march unit (if appropriate).
- .5 _____ Platoon/squads performs actions at scheduled halt.
- a. Clears the route by assuming a coil or herringbone.
 - b. Establishes all-around security.
 - c. Accomplishes the actions planned for in the operation order/movement plan.
 - d. Performs maintenance as time permits.
 - e. Places dismounted OP's on key terrain surrounding the platoon position.
- .6 _____ Platoon/squads performs actions at unscheduled halts.
- a. Clears the route by assuming a coil or herringbone.
 - b. Immediately seeks the cause of the halt.
 - c. Platoon leader determines a course of action.
 - d. Platoon leader reports to battalion, if appropriate.
 - e. Continues movement.
- .7 _____ Platoon/squads clears the RP.
- a. Arrives at the designated BP and continues movement.
 - b. Completes movement in accordance with operation order.

KEY INDICATORS:

CRITICAL STANDARDS

The platoon/squads reaches its destination without personnel or equipment loss, or breaches of security, and within specified times.

TASK: 10D.3.2 OCCUPY AN ASSEMBLY AREA

CONDITION(S): The platoon has been ordered to move to an assembly area. Threat contact is possible up to platoon level.

STANDARDS: EVAL: Y; N; NE

- .1 _____ Platoon commander plans occupation of the assembly area.
- a. Conducts a map reconnaissance and assigns tentative vehicle locations.
 - b. Develops a tentative plan for defense of the assembly area.
 - c. Identifies and briefs the quartering party on the tentative occupation plan.
- .2 _____ Platoon performs quartering party duties.
- a. Conducts a reconnaissance of the assembly area.

ENCLOSURE (1)

- b. Checks concealment from air and ground observation.
- c. Checks cover from direct fire.
- d. Checks for good drainage on the surface that supports vehicles.
- e. Checks for good exits, entrances, and adequate internal roads or trails.
- f. Checks for space for dispersion of vehicles, personnel, and equipment.
- g. Checks a suitable landing site nearby for a helicopter (if necessary).
- h. Marks or removes obstacles, mines, or booby traps.
- i. Marks entrances and exits of assembly area.
- j. Marks vehicle locations.
- k. Reports status to platoon commander or to leader of quartering party.
- l. Moves to RP to perform guide duties.
- m. Guides vehicles to designated areas.

.3 ____ Platoon occupies the assembly area.

- a. Meets guides and moves to designated vehicle locations.
- b. Moves into assembly area without slowing or halting on route of march.
- c. Establishes communications within the platoon and higher headquarters.

.4 ____ Platoon establishes security.

- a. Designates vehicle positions on the perimeter of the assembly area that permit observation and fires on all mounted/dismounted avenues of approach into the assembly area.
- b. Emplaces mines and early warning devices for protection.
- c. Establishes dismounted OP's/LP's outside the perimeter of the assembly area.
- d. Conducts mounted/dismounted security patrols at random intervals in and around the assembly area.

.5 ____ Platoon prepares to depart the assembly area.

- a. All platoon personnel are at REDCON 1 at the time specified in the operation order.
- b. Secures and properly stows tools, equipment, and personal effects.
- c. Communicates with all platoon vehicles and higher headquarters.
- d. Vehicle commanders confirm that all personnel and equipment are mounted and ready to move, consistent with the established readiness condition.
- a. Opens the platoon net correctly and requires proper authentication.
- f. Performs short count to start vehicles (if permitted by operation order or SOP).
- g. Enters the higher headquarters net correctly and uses proper authentication.
- h. Provides higher headquarters with a status of operational/nonoperational vehicles.
- i. Recovers any mines or early warning devices emplaced.

.6 ____ Platoon departs the assembly area.

ENCLOSURE (1)

- a. Takes steps to reduce signs of the unit's presence in the area prior to departure.
- b. Vehicles depart the area without bunching up along designated route.

KEY INDICATORS:

CRITICAL STANDARDS

Conducts quartering party activities, occupies assembly area, establishes security that provides early warning, and departs IAW the platoon leader's plan.

TASK: 10D.3.3 PERFORM A PASSAGE OF LINES

CONDITION(S): The platoon is required to pass through a stationary force. Threat contact is not expected.

STANDARDS: EVAL: Y; N; NE

- .1 _____ Platoon commander/platoon sergeant coordinates the passage.
 - a. Sends a representative to the contact point to meet with stationary unit representative.
 - b. Coordinates composition by type and number of vehicles of passing unit.
 - c. Coordinates passage points and passage lanes (primary and alternate).
 - d. Coordinates recognition signals and guide activities.
 - e. Coordinates attack positions or assembly areas.
 - f. Coordinates CEOI information.
 - g. Coordinates moving unit arrival time at contact points.
 - h. Coordinates procedures for the stationary force to provide combat support/combat service support.
 - i. Coordinates release points.
 - j. Coordinates procedure for handover of the battle or Threat contact.
 - k. Coordinates Threat situation.
 - l. Coordinates friendly situation.
 - m. Coordinates barriers/minefields/obstacles.
- .2 _____ Platoon executes the passage.
 - a. Platoon commander issues fragmentary order containing pertinent information for passage execution.
 - b. Arrives at the contact point at the time specified and displays the proper recognition signals.
 - c. Picks up guides and moves through passage lanes without halting.
 - d. Employs stationary force indirect fires (as necessary).
 - e. Uses stationary force service support assets (as necessary).

ENCLOSURE (1)

- f. Completes the passage by the time specified in the battalion operation order.
- g. Reports completion of passage to next battalion.

KEY INDICATORS:

CRITICAL STANDARDS

Coordination is made IAW the unit plan and SOP. The platoon conducts the passage without loss due to fratricide. The platoon is able to start execution of its next mission without delay.

TASK: 10D.3.4 ASSIST A PASSAGE OF LINES

CONDITION(S): The platoon is required to assist the passage of another force through its position. Threat contact is not expected.

STANDARDS: EVAL: Y; N; NE

- .1 ____ Platoon commander plans to assist passage of another unit with passing unit or battalion.
 - a. Coordinates composition by type and number of vehicles of passing unit.
 - b. Coordinates passage points and passage lanes (primary and alternate).
 - c. Coordinates recognition signals and guide activities.
 - d. Coordinates attack positions or assembly areas.
 - e. Coordinates CEOI information.
 - f. Coordinates moving unit arrival time at contact points.
 - g. Coordinates procedures for the stationary force to provide combat support/combat support service.
 - h. Coordinates release points.
 - i. Coordinates procedure for handover of the battle or Threat contact.
 - j. Coordinates Threat situation.
 - k. Coordinates friendly situation.
 - l. Coordinates barriers/minefields/obstacles.
 - m. Issues fragmentary order containing pertinent information to the platoon.
 - n. Locates his vehicle where he can best control his platoon.
- .2 ____ Platoon deploys to assist passage.
 - a. Establishes contact points if not directed by battalion; establishes passage points.
 - b. Establishes overwatch positions.
 - c. Reconnoiters and marks routes for passing unit.
 - d. Mans reserve targets on obligated routes.
- .3 ____ Platoon guides passing units.

ENCLOSURE (1)

- a. Guides the gassing unit along specified routes to designated location.
- b. Reports completion of the passage.
- c. Closes passage lanes through obstacles.

KEY INDICATORS:

CRITICAL STANDARDS

Coordination is made IAW the unit plan and SOP. The platoon assists the passing unit so that no loss occurs to personnel or equipment during the passage.

TASK: 10D.3.5 ASSIST A LINKUP

CONDITION(S): The platoon is operating as part of the battalion and the battalion has been ordered to linkup with a stationary force. The scout platoon has been ordered to assist the battalion by acting as the coordinating unit for the battalion. Platoon-size elements are operating in the area. Friendly and enemy units have indirect fire capability.

STANDARDS: EVAL Y; N; NE

- .1 ____ Platoon commander plans to assist link-up.
 - a. Plans for face to face meeting with stationary unit commander or designated representative, if possible.
 - 1) Establishes time and place for meeting.
 - 2) Establishes information to be exchanged during meeting.
 - 3) Briefs battalion commander on situation and receives approval for meeting and information exchange.
 - b. If face to face meeting not possible makes contact with stationary force via radio.
 - c. Understands command relationship between the forces performing the linkup.
- .2 ____ Platoon commander meets/coordinates with stationary unit commander or representative.
 - a. Exchanges information.
 - 1) Enemy and Friendly situations.
 - 2) Schemes of maneuver.
 - 3) Control measures.
 - 4) Locations and types of obstacles.
 - 5) Fire support plan.
 - 6) Air defense control measures.
 - 7) Recognition signals.
 - 8) CEOI information.
 - b. Platoon commander establishes a linkup point with the stationary force commander or designated representative.

ENCLOSURE (1)

- 1) The platoon recons the route from it's parent battalion location to designated linkup point.
 - 2) Platoon commander ensures stationary force has occupied the linkup point before the time stated in the order.
 - 3) Platoon commander ensures that correct recognition signals are used.
- .3 _____ The Platoon returns to it's parent battalion and briefs the battalion commander/staff on the linkup.
- a. Route to the linkup point.
 - b. Physical characteristics of the linkup point.
 - c. Relays information exchanged with stationary force.
- .4 _____ The platoon leads the battalion to the linkup point.
- .5 _____ The platoon facilitates the linkup.
- a. The battalion halts a safe distance from the linkup point in a covered and concealed position (linkup rally point), and establishes local security.
 - b. The battalion commander establishes communications with the stationary unit, if not under radio-listening silence.
 - c. The battalion commander issues final instructions and contingency plans to the platoon leader.
- .6 _____ The platoon performs the initial linkup.
- a. The platoon departs the battalion position.
 - b. The platoon maintains communications with the battalion.
 - c. The platoon commander verifies the linkup point and positions the security element in covered and concealed positions that overwatch the linkup point.
 - d. The platoon commander signals the stationary unit.
 - e. The platoon commander does not block the security element's fires while approaching the linkup point.
 - f. The platoon commander links up with the members from the stationary unit and exchanges oral authentication by the time stated in the order.
 - g. The platoon commander conducts final coordination with the stationary unit.
- .7 _____ The battalion links up.
- a. The platoon commander guides the stationary unit contact team to the battalion.
 - b. The stationary unit contact team then guides the moving unit to the linkup point to complete the linkup.
 - c. The stationary unit contact team alerts its main body before guiding the moving unit to the linkup point.
 - d. The stationary unit's guides direct the moving unit into its assigned section of the defensive perimeter.
 - e. The moving unit commander coordinates with the stationary unit commander and assigns tasks and sectors to his companies based on the coordination.
- .8 _____ The linking units continue the mission under the guidance of the commander designated by high headquarters.

KEY INDICATORS:

CRITICAL STANDARDS

The units link up at the time and place specified in the order and receives no casualties from friendly fire. The main body is not surprised by the enemy.

TASK: 10D.3.6 CONDUCT TACTICAL MOVEMENT

CONDITION(S): The platoon must move from one location to another either as a platoon or as sections. Threat contact is possible.

STANDARDS: EVAL: Y; N; NE

- .1 ____ Platoon/section moves on designated axis/route.
 - a. Moves in designated formation and IAW designated techniques of movement.
 - b. Reports control measures.
 - c. Maintains mutual support and security.
- .2 ____ Platoon/section executes traveling (Threat contact is not likely).
 - a. Platoon commander/section leader chooses appropriate formation, either column, staggered column, or vee.
 - b. Platoon commander/section leader initiates movement for traveling.
 - c. Maintains orientation along the designated route or axis.
 - d. Maintains continuous movement.
 - e. Maintains interval and dispersion between vehicles as terrain and weather permit.
 - f. Vehicles disperse to prevent destruction in the event of an unexpected air or ground attack.
 - g. Individual vehicles use terrain-driving techniques to reduce exposure.
 - h. Maintains visual contact between lead and trail element.
 - i. Maintains section integrity for vehicles.
 - j. Maintains visual contact between the sections for the duration of the movement.
 - k. Vehicle commanders maintain areas of responsibility for observation and fire to ensure 360-degree security.
- .3 ____ Platoon/section executes traveling overwatch (Threat contact is possible).
 - a. Platoon commander/section leader chooses appropriate formation, either column, staggered column, or vee.
 - b. Platoon commander/section leader initiates movement for traveling overwatch.
 - c. Maintains orientation along the designated route or axis.
 - d. Maintains contact between the sections for the duration of the movement.
 - e. Individual vehicles use terrain-driving techniques to reduce exposure.

ENCLOSURE (1)

- f. Lead element moves continuously.
 - g. Trail element moves at variable speeds and may halt periodically on terrain features to overwatch the movement of the lead element.
 - h. Maintains visual contact between lead and trail element. Lead element may be required to slow down if contact with trail element is lost.
 - i. Trail element maintains enough distance behind lead element so that Threat fires directed at the lead element will not prevent trail element from firing and maneuvering in support.
 - j. Maintains section integrity.
 - k. Vehicle commanders maintain 360-degree security for their vehicles.
- .4 _____ Platoon/section executes bounding overwatch (Threat contact is expected).
- a. Maintains orientation along the designated route or axis.
 - b. Maintains visual contact between bounding and overwatch elements whenever possible, depending on terrain.
 - c. Uses terrain-driving techniques.
 - d. Vehicle commanders maintain all-around security.
 - e. Platoon commander/section leader establishes positioning of sections.
 - f. Platoon commander/section leader selects the appropriate formation based on METT-TSL.
 - g. Platoon commander/section leader ensures immediate direct-fire support for the bounding element by the overwatch element.

KEY INDICATORS:

CRITICAL STANDARDS

The tactical movement used must provide for the security and speed of the scout platoon/section based on the tactical situation and the commander's guidance. The execution of each tactical movement must be completed IAW unit SOP and factors of METT-TSL.

TASK: 10D.3.7 PERFORM A ROUTE RECONNAISSANCE

CONDITION(S): The platoon is ordered to conduct a route reconnaissance. Threat forces are establishing hasty defensive positions, and the platoon will be operating in an area occupied by elements from forward security forces.

STANDARDS: EVAL: Y; N; NE

- .1 _____ Platoon deploys.
- a. Uses appropriate formation.
 - b. Uses techniques of movement specified in operation order.
- .2 _____ Platoon conducts reconnaissance.
- a. Uses maximum reconnaissance force forward.
 - b. Orient: on the reconnaissance objective.

ENCLOSURE (1)

- c. Reports all information rapidly and accurately.
- d. Retains freedom to maneuver.
- e. Gains and maintains enemy contact.
- f. Develops the situation rapidly.

Platoon collects information about the route and adjacent terrain.

- a. Determines trafficability along the route.
- b. Locates and evaluates all bridges along the route.
- c. Locates and evaluates fords and/or crossing sites near bridges.
- d. Evaluates road surface of the route to include width.
- e. Locates mines, obstacles, and barriers along the route.
- f. Locates and evaluates all underpasses and tunnels.
- g. Identifies and evaluates all restrictive curves and steep grades along the route.
- h. Identifies and evaluates all other restrictive passages.
- i. Locates and evaluates bypasses of all restrictive passages.
- j. Completes and confirms map reconnaissance by visual inspection of the route and adjacent terrain.
- k. Reconnoiters terrain that dominates along the route.
- l. Reconnoiters all built-up areas along the route.
- m. Reconnoiters all routes effecting reconnaissance.
- n. Determines existence and extent of NBC contamination along the route, if required.

.3 _____ Platoon identifies Threat forces that can influence the route.

- a. Determines Threat location to six-digit grid.
- b. Determines Threat strength.
- c. Determines Threat composition.
- d. Determines Threat activity.
- e. Locates Threat supporting units/weapons.
- f. Identifies possible avenues of approach.
- g. Accurately reports situation (SALUTE).

.4 _____ Platoon commander/platoon sergeant prepares a route classification overlay.

- a. Shows beginning and end coordinates of the route.
- b. Shows the trace of the route.
- c. Shows all restrictions to traffic flow (include bypass capability and classification data on all restrictive passages).
- d. Shows all sharp curves and series of curves.
- e. Shows level grade railroad crossings.

ENCLOSURE (1)

- f. Shows length and width of constrictions.
- g. Shows percentage of slope on steep grades.
- h. Shows overall capability of the route.
- i. Reports terrain information by submitting route classification overlay.
- j. Reports terrain information by submitting obstacle, bypass, and ford reports.

KEY INDICATORS:

CRITICAL STANDARDS

The platoon must collect and report information on dominant and key terrain and Threat forces (squad size or greater), and reconnoiter the assigned route and lateral routes. It must report all route information and retain freedom to maneuver.

TASK: 10D.3.8 PERFORM A ZONE RECONNAISSANCE

CONDITION(S): The platoon is ordered to conduct a zone reconnaissance. Threat forces are establishing hasty defensive positions, and the platoon will be operating in an area occupied by elements from forward security forces.

STANDARDS: EVAL: Y; N; NE

- .1 ____ Platoon deploys in appropriate formation and uses techniques of movement specified in element operation order.
 - a. Uses appropriate formation, either vee, or spilt vee.
 - b. Uses appropriate organization.
 - c. Uses techniques of movement specified in operation order.
- .2 ____ Platoon conducts reconnaissance.
 - a. Uses maximum reconnaissance forward.
 - b. Orients on the reconnaissance objective.
 - c. Reports rapidly and accurately.
 - d. Retains freedom to maneuver.
 - e. Develops the situation rapidly.
 - f. Gains and maintains enemy contact.
- .3 ____ Platoon collects and records terrain information.
 - a. Determines trafficability of any major route.
 - b. Determines cross-country trafficability of all terrain within the zone.
 - c. Gathers intervisibility information.
 - d. Locates and evaluates all bridges within the zone.
 - e. Locates and evaluates fords and/or crossing sites near all bridges within the zone.

ENCLOSURE (1)

- f. Locates mines, obstacles, and barriers along the route.
 - g. Locates and evaluates all underpasses and tunnels.
 - h. Determines existence and extent of NBC contamination along the route, if required.
 - i. Locates a bypass around built-up areas, obstacles and contaminated areas.
- .4 _____ Platoon identifies Threat forces that can influence within the zone.
 - a. Determines Threat location to six-digit grid.
 - b. Determines Threat strength.
 - c. Determines Threat composition.
 - d. Determines Threat activity.
 - e. Locates Threat supporting units/weapons.
 - f. Identifies possible avenues of approach.
 - g. Accurately reports situation (SALUTE).
- .5 _____ Platoon commander reports terrain information.
 - a. Submits route classification overlay if required.
 - b. Submits obstacle, bypass, and ford reports.

KEY INDICATORS:

CRITICAL STANDARDS

The platoon must collect and report information on dominant and key terrain and Threat forces (squad or larger) within the zone. The platoon will orient on the reconnaissance objective, retain freedom to maneuver, and gain and maintain contact if Threat is present.

TASK: 10D.3.9 PERFORM AN AREA RECONNAISSANCE

CONDITION(S): The platoon is ordered to conduct an area reconnaissance. Threat forces are establishing hasty defensive positions, and the platoon will be operating in an area occupied by elements from forward security forces.

STANDARDS: EVAL: Y; N; NE

- .1 _____ Platoon deploys in appropriate formation and techniques of movement specified on operation order.
 - a. Uses appropriate formation, either vee or split vee.
 - b. Uses technique of movement specified in operation order.
- .2 _____ Platoon conducts the reconnaissance.
 - a. Uses maximum reconnaissance forward.
 - b. Orients on the reconnaissance objective.
 - c. Reports rapidly and accurately.
 - d. Retains freedom to maneuver.

- d. Develops the situation rapidly.
- f. Gains and maintains enemy contact.

.3 _____ Platoon collects and records terrain information.

- a. Determines trafficability of all major routes.
- b. Determines cross-country trafficability of all terrain within the area.
- c. Locates and evaluates all bridges within the area.
- d. Locates suitable fording or crossing sites near all bridges within the area.
- e. Locates and evaluates all tunnels and underpasses.
- f. Locates mines, obstacles, and barriers in the area.
- g. Locates a bypass around built-up areas, obstacles, and contaminated areas.
- h. Locates landing or drop zones.
- i. Reconnoiters terrain that dominates the area, if required.
- j. Determines the existence and extent of NBC contamination within area, if required.

.4 _____ PLatoon identifies Threat forces within the area.

- a. Determines Threat locations to a six-digit grid.
- b. Determines Threat strength.
- c. Determines Threat composition.
- d. Determines Threat activity.
- e. Locates Threat supporting units/weapons.
- f. Identifies possible avenues of approach.
- g. Accurately reports situation (SALUTE).

.5 _____ PLatoon reports information to battalion.

- a. Submits overlay of area (if required).
- b. Submits obstacle, bypass, and ford reports.

KEY INDICATORS:

CRITICAL STANDARDS

The platoon must collect and report information on Threat forces (squad or larger), orient on the reconnaissance objective, retain freedom to maneuver, and gain and maintain contact with the Threat, if present.

ENCLOSURE (1)

TASK: 10D.3.10 RECONNOITER AN OBSTACLE AND A BYPASS

CONDITION(S): The platoon is conducting reconnaissance operations and encounters an obstacle which impedes movement. Threat contact is possible.

STANDARDS: EVAL: Y; N; NE

- .1 ____ Platoon reports and overwatches obstacle.
 - a. Scouts discovering obstacle deploy in an overwatch position and report.
 - b. Platoon commander reports obstacle to battalion (SALUTE).
 - c. An element moves to a position overwatching the obstacle.
 - d. Employs indirect fires to suppress known or suspected Threat positions (if the use of indirect fire is prudent).
- .2 ____ Platoon establishes security and locates a bypass.
 - a. Locates bypass on either side of obstacle.
 - b. Moves to far (Threat) side of obstacle and establishes forward OP's.
 - c. Develops bypass report while moving to establish OP.
 - d. One section moves to obstacle and conducts local security.
 - e. Remaining section moves to the flanks to provide flank security.
- .3 Platoon sergeant reconnoiters the obstacle and prepares reports.
 - a. Moves to the near side of the obstacle.
 - b. Reconnoiters obstacle for trip wires, mines, and other booby traps.
 - c. Determines if the obstacle can be breached or cleared with organic assets.
 - d. Receives bypass reports from section leaders.
 - e. Reports results of reconnaissance to platoon commander.
- .4 ____ Platoon commander reports results and submits recommendations to battalion.
 - a. Sends report via designated means.
 - b. Sends recommendation to use bypass around obstacle, no assistance required, or
 - c. Sends recommendation there is no bypass around obstacle, assistance required, or
 - d. Sends recommendation there is a difficult bypass around obstacle, assistance required.
- .5 ____ Platoon prepares to continue mission.
 - a. Sections pick up local security at obstacle and return to forward OP.
 - b. Platoon bypasses obstacle and prepares to resume mission.
 - c. If bypass is not possible, platoon provides overwatch and local security of obstacle until arrival of breaching force.

ENCLOSURE (1)

KEY INDICATORS:

CRITICAL STANDARDS

The platoon must perform a reconnaissance of the obstacle, locate any bypasses and provide the necessary information to the commander in the obstacle report IAW unit SOP.

TASK: 10D.3.11 EXECUTE ACTIONS ON CONTACT

CONDITION(S): The platoon is moving and encounters a Threat force of platoon size which is in hasty defensive positions. The Threat platoon is composed of tanks or personnel carriers or a combination of both. The platoon/section may or may not be engaged by the Threat.

STANDARDS: EVAL: Y; N; NE

- .1 ____ Element deploys and reports (SALUTE).
 - a. Scouts who are engaged return fire and find hide positions.
 - b. All scouts that see or are engaged by Threat elements send an accurate spot report to the platoon leader.
- .2 ____ Element develops the situation.
 - a. Platoon commander moves to a position where he can best observe the situation.
 - b. Section in contact gathers information about Threat position and equipment.
 - c. Section not in contact moves to flanks of Threat position to further refine information about the Threat.
 - d. Platoon commander correctly reports activity of Threat IAW SALUTE format.
 - e. Platoon commander makes an assessment of Threat activity within his sector.
 - f. Platoon commander determines covered and concealed approaches into the flank of the Threat position(s) through reports from the sections.
- .3 ____ Platoon commander chooses a course of action.
 - a. Section leaders recommend a course of action.
 - b. Platoon commander considers higher command's intent.
 - c. Platoon commander considers critical tasks of primary mission.
 - d. Platoon commander chooses from courses of action available at his level.
- .4 ____ Platoon commander recommends a course of action requiring support. (Course of action is beyond Platoon's capability.)

KEY INDICATORS:

CRITICAL STANDARDS

The platoon must fix the Threat forces, recommend a course of action to the commander while retaining sufficient combat power and freedom to maneuver to successfully continue the mission. No more than one vehicle/crew may be lost to Threat fire.

ENCLOSURE (1)

TASK: 10D.3.12 SUPPORT A HASTY ATTACK

CONDITION(S): The platoon has identified a Threat tank or motorized rifle platoon in hasty defensive positions, has performed its action on contact, and is ordered to support a hasty attack.

STANDARDS: EVAL: Y; N; NE

- .1 ____ Platoon reconnoiters the Threat.
 - a. Confirms the size, type of equipment, and disposition of the Threat.
 - b. Confirms the position and orientation of Threat weapon systems and barriers.
 - c. Locates the flanks of the Threat.
 - d. Determines if the Threat is supported by nearby units.
 - e. Correctly reports activity of Threat forces IAW SALUTE format.
- .2 ____ Platoon/section assists maneuver elements.
 - a. Locates last covered and concealed position for the maneuver element, short of the Threat position.
 - b. Assists/guides maneuver element into assault position.
 - c. Screens Threat flank of maneuver element during conduct of the assault.
- .3 ____ Platoon performs consolidation activities.
 - a. Once assault is complete, moves to Threat location to process captured personnel, documents, and equipment.
 - b. Once assault is complete, assumes positions forward and to the flanks of maneuver element to provide early warning of Threat counterattack.
 - c. Sends status report to battalion.
- .4 ____ Platoon performs reorganization activities (as necessary).
 - a. Reassigns personnel to fill key positions and mans key weapon systems.
 - b. Redistributes ammunition and equipment.
 - c. Treats and evacuates casualties.
 - d. Performs battle damage assessment.
 - e. Reports status to battalion.

KEY INDICATORS:

CRITICAL STANDARDS

The platoon guides the maneuver element into position and, if necessary, becomes the base of fire and provides indirect fire support onto the Threat. No more than one crew is lost to Threat direct fire.

ENCLOSURE (1)

TASK: 10D.3.13 CONDUCT A SCREEN

CONDITION(S): The platoon is ordered to screen the battalion.
Threat situation is unknown but may be up to company/team in size.

STANDARDS: EVAL: Y; N; NE

- .1 ____ Platoon deploys to screen location.
 - a. Uses appropriate formation, either vee or split vee.
 - b. Uses technique of movement specified in operation order.
- .2 ____ Platoon establishes screen.
 - a. Reconnoiters/selects specific locations.
 - b. Reports actual OP locations to battalion.
 - c. Establishes local security.
 - d. Improves positions.
 - e. Coordinates observation/fields of fire by making contact with adjacent OPs.
 - f. Confirms indirect fire plan.
 - g. Emplaces hasty obstacles (if applicable).
 - h. Platoon sergeant reconnoiters subsequent screen lines.
- .3 ____ Platoon conducts screening operations.
 - a. Maintains continuous surveillance of all named areas of interest or avenues of approach into sector.
 - b. Provides early warning of Threat approach.
 - c. Conducts irregularly scheduled mounted or dismounted patrols between OPs to cover dead space.
- .4 ____ Platoon detects all Threat elements entering the platoon sector.
 - a. Identifies, reports, and maintains contact with reconnaissance patrols.
 - b. In coordination with other combat element, destroys reconnaissance patrols (if required).
 - c. Maintains contact with the Threat until ordered to break contact.
 - d. Impedes and harasses the Threat by controlled use of artillery fires.
- .5 ____ Platoon displaces to a subsequent screen line.
 - a. Platoon commander requests permission to displace.
 - b. Displaces most threatened OPs first.
 - c. Continues to adjust indirect fires.
 - d. Maintains contact with advancing Threat elements.
 - e. Reports when set on subsequent screen line.
 - f. Platoon commander keeps battalion informed.

ENCLOSURE (1)

KEY INDICATORS:

CRITICAL STANDARDS

The screen must be established so that early warning of Threat activity is provided to the parent unit, and if Threat contact is made, no more than one crew is lost to Threat direct fire.

TASK: 10D.3.14 CONDUCT A RELIEF IN PLACE

CONDITION(S): The platoon is in continuous operations. It has been ordered to relieve or be relieved by another element. Threat contact is not likely.

STANDARDS: EVAL: Y; N; NE

- .1 ____ Platoon commander coordinates for the relief.
 - a. Determines assembly areas for element before or after relief.
 - b. Determines sequence of vehicle relief.
 - c. Determines what equipment, if any, will be switched.
 - d. Enforces effective camouflage.
 - e. Enforces minimal radio communications.
 - f. Enforces light and noise discipline.
 - g. Participates in parent unit's deception plan.
 - h. Coordinates actions if Threat contact is made during the relief.
 - i. Coordinates for assumption or turn-over of combat support assets.
- .2 ____ Platoon prepares for the relief.
 - a. Prepares equipment for quick removal or for swap with incoming/outgoing element.
 - b. Prepares necessary sector sketches, minefield records, and prestocked supplies for transfer to incoming element.
 - c. Makes a reconnaissance of new positions.
 - d. Reports preparations are complete for the relief.
- .3 ____ Platoon conducts the relief.
 - a. Meets incoming/outgoing element at a designated point.
 - b. Guides incoming element to new position in the determined sequence of relief.
 - c. Effects transfer of equipment, if required.
 - d. Outgoing element leader/commander remains in charge until the entire incoming element is in place and prepared to assume the mission.
 - e. Accepts responsibility for section sectors of observation.
 - f. Reports completion of relief.
 - g. Reports outgoing element clear of old area of responsibility.

ENCLOSURE (1)

KEY INDICATORS:

CRITICAL STANDARDS

The relief is conducted, on time, without degrading sector coverage or operational security, and without fratricide.

10D.4 MOBILITY AND COUNTERMOBILITY

TASK: 10D.4.1 EMLACE/RETRIEVE A HASTY PROTECTIVE MINEFIELD

CONDITION(S): The platoon is in continuous operations. Mines from basic load are available, and use of mines has been allowed. No Threat contact is expected while laying or retrieving mines.

STANDARDS: EVAL: Y; N; NE

.1 ____ Platoon commander reports intentions. Requests authorization to emplace minefield.

- a. Selects location to block most likely avenue of approach.
- b. Ensures site will tie in with natural obstacles.
- c. Ensures site can be covered by direct fires and observation.

.2 ____ Platoon establishes security.

- a. Designates a security element.
- b. Positions element to provide local security until mines have been emplaced.

.3 ____ Platoon installs mines.

- a. Reports initiation and location of mine emplacement.
- b. Selects and marks mine locations.
- c. Emplaces, but does not arm, mines.
- d. Records the minefield.
- e. Arms and camouflages mines, starting with row nearest the Threat.
- f. Collects and stores safeties, shipping plugs, and so forth, pending recovery of mines. (Storage location must be known to all subordinate leaders.)
- g. Marks minefield to include safety lanes. (Markings must only be visible from friendly side.)
- h. Recovers security element.
- i. Reports completion to battalion.
- j. Sends completed minefield records to parent unit.

.4 ____ Platoon retrieves mines.

- a. Receives orders to retrieve minefield.
- b. Emplaces security.
- c. Brings safeties, shipping plugs, and so forth, for the recovery.

ENCLOSURE (1)

- d. Using the completed minefield records, disarms mines, starting with row nearest friendly positions.
- e. Removes and stores mines for use again.
- f. Reports completion of retrieval.

KEY INDICATORS:

CRITICAL STANDARDS

The platoon plans and emplaces the mines, without casualties, to provide local security or to cover deadspace. Retrieves all mines prior to departure.

TASK: 10D.4.2 PERFORM DEMOLITION GUARD FORCE OPERATIONS

CONDITION(S): The platoon is designated as a demolition guard force and is required to accept a reserve demolition target. No Threat contact is expected.

STANDARDS: EVAL: Y; N; NE

- .1 ____ Platoon receives control of the demolition target.
 - a. Makes positive identification check with engineers.
 - b. Coordinates with engineers to identify traffic control and roadblock locations.
 - c. Coordinates with engineers to receive current Threat and friendly situation.
 - d. Receives briefing on minefield record in complete detail from engineers.
 - e. Receives briefing on the target folder in complete detail from engineers.
 - f. Confirms the time required and procedures to change demolition state from "1" (SAFE) to "2" (ARMED).
 - g. Briefs members of the firing party on specific responsibilities.
- .2 ____ Platoon guards the target.
 - a. Provides far side, near side, and demolition site security for the target.
 - b. Obtains clarification (if necessary) from battalion as to whether the guard is authorized to execute the target on his own initiative if it is in danger of capture.
 - c. Develops a tactical plan for the demolition guard to safeguard the activities of the firing party, to include withdrawal after the target is fired.
 - d. Protects the target against all types of attack.
- .3 ____ Platoon fires the demolition.
 - a. The far side security withdraws to the near side of the demolition target prior to becoming decisively engaged.
 - b. The firing party arms the demolition, on order.
 - c. Withdraws target guard immediately prior to firing demolition.
 - d. Fires the demolition, on order.

ENCLOSURE (1)

- e. Demolition guard force provides for the firing party until target is executed.
- f. Reports results of execution to battalion.

KEY INDICATORS:

CRITICAL STANDARDS

The platoon receives the reserve target and guards/destroys the target as directed.

10D.5 AIR DEFENSE

TASK: 10D.5.1 USE PASSIVE AIR DEFENSE MEASURES

CONDITION(S): The platoon is tactically deployed. Hostile aircraft have been operating in the general area. Weapon status is hold.

STANDARDS: EVAL: Y; N; NE

- .1 _____ Platoon uses passive air defense measures in a tactical position.
 - a. Uses all available resources (camouflage, cover, concealment, dispersion, and so forth) to hide the platoon and limit its vulnerability.
 - b. Covers or shades shiny items, particularly windshield and optics.
 - c. Establishes and rehearses air attack alarms and actions.
 - d. Disperses vehicles to reduce vulnerability to air attack.
 - e. Mans observation posts (daytime/nighttime) to provide warning of approaching aircraft.
 - f. Reports any aircraft action to battalion.
- .2 _____ Platoon uses passive air defense measures when moving.
 - a. Platoon leader establishes vehicle order of march.
 - b. Maintains vehicle interval specified in the order.
 - c. Staggers vehicles as necessary to avoid linear patterns.
 - d. Assigns air guards to sectors of search that cover 360 degrees and maintains coverage until movement is completed.
 - e. Reports all aircraft actions to battalion.

KEY INDICATORS:

CRITICAL STANDARDS

The platoon uses dispersion, camouflage, and concealment and avoids detection by Threat aircraft.

ENCLOSURE (1)

TASK: 10D.5.2 TAKE ACTIVE AIR DEFENSE MEASURES AGAINST HOSTILE
AIRCRAFT

CONDITION(S): Warning of aircraft in the area has been received. Unknown/hostile aircraft have been detected by scouts. The platoon is tactically deployed.

STANDARDS: EVAL: Y; N; NE

- .1 _____ Platoon takes active air defense measures against hostile aircraft not attacking the platoon while stationary.
- a. Gives air attack alarm.
 - b. Occupies positions that afford overhead concealment.
 - c. Identifies and reports presence of Threat aircraft in the area to battalion.
 - d. Engages aircraft.
 - e. Once the lead distance is estimated, the riflemen and machine gunners aim and fire their weapons at the aiming point until the aircraft has flown past the point. Maintain the aiming point, not the lead distance. The weapon should not move once the firing cycle has started.
 - f. Preselected aim points can be established when the unit is in a static position.
 - g. Accuracy in relation to target hits is not necessary, however, accuracy in relation to the aiming point is. A coordinated, high volume of fire that the aircraft has to fly through will achieve the desired results.
 - h. The Platoon engages the aircraft with all available small arms (rifles and machine guns).
 - i. Reloads weapons following engagement.
 - j. Reports to battalion.
- .2 _____ Platoon takes active air defense measures against hostile aircraft not attacking the platoon when it is moving.
- a. Gives air attack alarm.
 - b. Disperses vehicles laterally and in depth or vehicle operators continue to move element to a covered and concealed position.
 - c. Identifies and reports the presence of Threat aircraft in the area to battalion.
 - d. Receives orders to engage.
 - e. The platoon/section engages the aircraft with all available small arms (rifles and machine guns).
 - f. Reloads weapons following engagement of aircraft.
 - g. Reports to battalion.
- .3 _____ Platoon takes active air defense measures against hostile aircraft attacking the platoon.
- a. Gives air attack alarm as specified in SOP.
 - b. Visually identifies attacking aircraft.
 - c. Reports Threat aircraft action to battalion.
 - d. All available personnel immediately engage attacking aircraft.
 - e. Reloads weapons following engagement of aircraft.

ENCLOSURE (1)

- f. Personnel assigned observation posts continue to scan their assigned sectors for additional aircraft.
 - g. Reports to battalion.
- .4 _____ Platoon takes active air defense measures against hostile aircraft attacking during convoy movement.
 - a. Gives air attack alarm.
 - b. Disperses vehicles alternately to shoulders of the road (off road if possible), or moves to covered and concealed positions if terrain permits.
 - c. Personnel dismount and take up firing positions.
 - d. Personnel prepare to fire on orders of senior individual present or automatically return fire (IAW engagement procedures).
 - e. Engages the aircraft with all available small arms (rifles, machine guns, and so forth).
 - f. Reloads weapons following the attack.
 - g. Reports the attack to battalion.
- .5 _____ Platoon reorganizes after air attack has ended.
 - a. Maintains air watch.
 - b. Treats any casualties.
 - c. Assesses damage to equipment and supplies.
 - d. Gives report to battalion.
 - e. Continues mission.

KEY INDICATORS:

CRITICAL STANDARDS

The platoon destroys or wards off all attacking aircraft. The platoon incurs losses of no more than one vehicle.

10D.6 COMBAT SERVICE SUPPORT

TASK: 10D.6.1 PERFORM RESUPPLY OPERATIONS

CONDITION(S): The platoon is in continuous operations and has been directed to receive supplies. No Threat contact is expected.

STANDARDS: EVAL: Y; N; NE

- .1 _____ Platoon commander reports personnel status/requests replacements.
 - a. Reports personnel strength and losses.
 - b. Reassigns remaining personnel to ensure key positions are filled and critical weapons are manned.
 - c. Assigns replacements by the same criteria.

ENCLOSURE (1)

- .2 _____ Platoon commander reports vehicle/equipment/fuel/ammunition status.
- a. Reports vehicle/equipment strength, status, and battle damage assessment.
 - b. Requests maintenance, recovery, and evacuation support from battalion, as necessary.
 - c. Requests recovery support from battalion, as necessary.
 - d. Requests evacuation support from battalion, as necessary.
 - e. Reports fuel/ammunition status.
 - f. Requests resupply of Classes I, III, and V, as required.
- .3 _____ Platoon resupplies using the tailgate method.
- a. Platoon sergeant coordinates with company gunnery sergeant for link-up with LOGPAC.
 - b. Meets LOGPAC in a concealed position to the rear of the vehicle to be resupplied.
 - c. Halts LOGPAC in a concealed position to the rear of the vehicle.
 - d. Vehicle is resupplied.
 - e. Provides local security for LOGPAC during resupply.
 - f. Completes resupply and guides LOGPAC to next vehicle position.
 - g. Platoon sergeant monitors progress of resupply operation.
 - h. Platoon sergeant leads LOGPAC to link-up point or another point as designated by the company gunnery sergeant.
 - i. Platoon sergeant coordinates with company gunnery sergeant for future requirements.
 - j. Platoon commander keeps parent unit informed on resupply operation.
- .4 _____ Platoon resupplies using the service-station method.
- a. Platoon sergeant coordinates with company gunnery sergeant for location of LOGPAC.
 - b. If platoon does not move together, platoon commander and platoon sergeant determine which platoon vehicles will be resupplied first and when they will move.
 - c. If platoon moves together, platoon leader determines order of movement to resupply location.
 - d. Moves to resupply location.
 - e. Resupplies and returns to original position.
 - f. Platoon sergeant coordinates with company gunnery sergeant for future requirements.
 - g. Platoon commander keeps parent unit informed on resupply operation.

KEY INDICATORS:

CRITICAL STANDARDS

The platoon's basic load of critical supplies is replenished.

ENCLOSURE (1)

TASK: 10D.6.2 PREPARE/EVACUATE CASUALTIES

CONDITION(S): The platoon is in continuous operations and has sustained casualties. No Threat contact is expected.

STANDARDS: EVAL: Y; N; NE

- .1 ____ The platoon performs medical treatment.
 - a. Identifies serious casualties requiring evacuation.
 - b. Administers the correct life-saving measures.
 - c. Treats Threat casualties IAW some standards as friendly casualties.
- .2 ____ The platoon reports casualties.
 - a. Reports casualties as expeditiously as time permits in keeping with the tactical situation.
 - b. Prepares reports.
- .3 ____ The platoon assists in evacuation of casualties.
 - a. Prepares casualties for evacuation by ground transportation to battalion aid station, or
 - b. Requests helicopter evacuation of casualties.
 - c. Selects and marks the best available covered and concealed landing zone (LZ).
 - d. Moves casualties by best available means to LZ and continues treatment.
 - e. Assists the flight crew with casualty loading.
 - f. Retains classified documents (CEOI, maps, orders, overlays, and so forth) previously controlled by casualty.
 - g. Applies five "Ss" to enemy casualties.
- .4 ____ Platoon personnel evacuate contaminated casualties.
 - a. Decontamination is attempted prior to loading.
 - b. If decontamination is impossible, the hazards of contamination enroute are minimized by covering casualties.
 - c. Reports contamination to transport element.

KEY INDICATORS:

CRITICAL STANDARDS

The platoon provides or assists in medical treatment and evacuation of casualties without causing further injury.

ENCLOSURE (1)

TASK: 10D.6.3 PERFORM PLATOON MAINTENANCE OPERATIONS

CONDITION(S): The platoon is in continuous operations. No Threat contact is expected.

STANDARDS: EVAL: Y; N; NE

- .1 ____ Platoon reports equipment deficiencies.
 - a. Vehicle commanders update platoon sergeant on equipment status.
 - b. Platoon sergeant consolidates equipment status reports.
 - c. Platoon sergeant gives status to platoon commander.
 - d. Platoon sergeant gives status to company gunnery sergeant.
- .2 ____ Platoon performs operator maintenance/emergency repairs.
 - a. Performs operator maintenance on assigned vehicles, weapons, and equipment, whenever the tactical situation permits.
 - b. Effects emergency repairs as far forward as possible to ensure continued functioning of equipment.
 - c. Platoon sergeant informs organizational maintenance personnel of deficiencies as soon as possible.
 - d. Platoon sergeant coordinates for technical or upper echelon maintenance support.
- .3 ____ Platoon recovers vehicles using a similar vehicles.
 - a. Restores vehicle to state of mobility.
 - b. Ensures no further damage is caused to any of the vehicles during recovery operations.
 - c. Provides security for dismounted personnel.
 - d. Tows vehicle to maintenance collection point or designated location.
 - e. Takes all safety precautions to prevent damage to equipment or injury to personnel.

KEY INDICATORS:

CRITICAL STANDARDS

The platoon's equipment deficiencies are corrected or reported. No more than one vehicle is non-mission capable at any given time.

TASK: 10D.6.4 PERFORM FIELD SANITATION OPERATIONS

CONDITION(S): The platoon is conducting combat operations in a tactical environment, and may be either stationary or mobile. The platoon has formed a field sanitation team from within its ranks and has adequate supplies on hand to perform its mission. Threat contact is not expected.

ENCLOSURE (1)

STANDARDS: EVAL: Y; N; NE

- .1 _____ During combat operations, the platoon ensures potable water is available and utilized.
 - a. Platoon personnel consume only potable water as designated by the field sanitation team.
 - b. The platoon maintains its prescribed load of water purification materials IAW the unit SOP.
 - c. As necessary, platoon personnel purify unpotable water.
- .2 _____ When stationary, the platoon establishes head facilities and hand-washing facilities.
 - a. Head facilities are constructed at least 35 meters from water sources and 100 meters from mess areas.
 - b. Hand-washing facilities are provided at the head.
 - c. A soakage pit is provided under the hand-washing facility to prevent accumulation of standing water.
- .3 _____ During mobile operations, the platoon uses catholes when time is not available to construct head facilities. (Platoon personnel prepare, use, and fill catholes, as necessary, throughout mobile operations.)
- .4 _____ When consuming prepared rations, the platoon takes adequate measures to avoid food spoilage, ensures cleanliness of utensils, and controls pests.
 - a. Food is protected from extreme temperatures, moisture, and pests, and is consumed promptly after delivery.
 - b. Cooking utensils and mess kits are cleaned and disinfected before and after use, and a mess kit washing facility is established or clean, disposable mess wear from sealed packages is utilized.
 - c. Garbage and waste are buried, incinerated, or evacuated from the platoon area in sealed bags or containers promptly.
 - d. Feeding locations are selected to minimize insect and rodent hazards. Protective measures against pests, to include wearing netting and insect repellent, spraying, dusting, poisoning, and trapping, as necessary, are employed.

KEY INDICATORS:

CRITICAL STANDARDS

The platoon takes all steps necessary to ensure sanitation standards are established, maintained, and enforced. No platoon members are lost to illness or disease as a direct result of failure to maintain adequate field sanitation.

10D.7 NBC

TASK: 10D.7.1 REACT TO CHEMICAL ATTACK

CONDITION(S): The platoon is subjected to a chemical attack without warning.

ENCLOSURE (1)

STANDARDS: EVAL: Y; N; NE

.1 ____ The platoon reacts to a chemical attack.

- a. The platoon performs appropriate first aid on chemical casualties:
 - 1) Nerve: Give nerve antidote injection. Artificial respiration may be necessary.
 - 2) Blister: None.
 - 3) Blood: Inhale amyl nitrite. Artificial respiration may be necessary.
- b. Leaders supervise the platoon's response to the chemical attack and determine the status of the casualties.
- c. The platoon commander forwards NBC 1 report to battalion headquarters IAW unit SOP.

.2 ____ The platoon detects chemical agent.

- a. Marines attach chemical-agent paper to overgarments and to supplies.
- b. The chemical-agent detector kit is used when the platoon is under chemical-attack, when a chemical attack is likely, or when the presence of a chemical agent is suspected.
- c. Designated personnel perform periodic monitoring using the chemical-agent detector kits.
- d. The platoon performs continuous monitoring using chemical alarms and sends the results to higher headquarters.
- e. Leaders ensure at least two Marines (one primary and one alternate) are assigned to and can use each chemical agent detector kit and chemical alarm.
- f. Positive tests using chemical-agent paper are verified using the chemical detector kit.

.3 ____ The unit minimizes additional contamination.

- a. Leaders order crossing of a known contaminated area only when the area cannot be bypassed. When possible, lanes are cleared through contaminated areas.
- b. When possible, Marines avoid handling contaminated materiel.
- c. Vital sustaining items, such as water, spare clothing, protective mask filters, and food, are carried inside vehicles.
- d. The platoon monitors the communication net to stay informed on the contamination threat in the unit's area.

.4 ____ The platoon unmask.

- a. Before unmasking, the area is checked using the chemical-agent detector kit, when possible.
- b. Unmasking is performed only when the chemical agent is identified as nonpersistent and decontamination is no longer needed.
- c. Only the platoon commander or senior leader present announces, "All clear."
- d. The leader announces, "All clear." only after all unmasking procedures have been completed.
- e. No Marine unmask until he hears "All clear" from his platoon leader or the senior leader present.

.5 ____ Marines perform basic skills decontamination.

- a. Marines use towelettes to wipe down hood, mask, weapons, gloves, and helmets.

ENCLOSURE (1)

- b. Marines use sticks or other objects to remove globs of liquid chemical contamination on overgarments.
 - c. The platoon completes basic skill decontamination within 15 minutes.
- .6 _____ The platoon performs partial decontamination. Partial decontamination allows the unit to perform the assigned mission without additional chemical casualties.
- a. Contaminated clothing and equipment are partly decontaminated as soon as possible.
 - b. Essential items are decontaminated first--seats, crew-served weapons, individual weapon.
- .7 _____ The platoon decontaminates individual equipment.
- a. Any gross contamination is removed using sticks, rags, or other objects, then those sticks, rags, and objects are buried.
 - b. Boots are decontaminated with the personal decontamination kit, washed with soapy water, and rinsed.
 - c. Metal equipment is decontaminated using DS2, soapy water, or the personal decontamination kit.
 - d. Individual weapons are decontaminated with the personal decontamination kit, disassembled, washed in soapy water, rinsed, dried, oiled, reassembled, and test fired.
 - e. Load-bearing equipment is decontaminated.
 - 1) Light contamination: Decontaminated using personal decontamination kit.
 - 2) Heavy contamination: Decontaminated at a personnel decontamination station or buried there and replaced with new 782 gear.
- .8 _____ The unit decontaminates unit equipment.
- a. As soon as possible, the unit decontaminates unit equipment to continue the mission and avoid further casualties.
 - b. Vehicles and crew-served weapons are decontaminated.
 - 1) Areas essential to the vehicle or weapon operation are decontaminated using the M11 portable decontaminating apparatus and, when necessary, field-expedient measures such as mud or rags.
 - 2) Light contamination is removed by airing.
 - 3) Heavier decontamination is removed using DS2, soapy water, solvents, or slurry.
 - 4) Contaminated wood surfaces and tires are decontaminated with STB slurry.
 - 5) No DS2 is used on gunner sights.
 - c. Ammunition is decontaminated.
 - 1) Ammunition is decontaminated with soapy water, wiped with organic solvent, thoroughly dried, and aerated.
 - 2) Ammunition corroded from contact with chemical agents is disposed of, mainly if the brass cannot be cleaned.
 - 3) STB is not used on ammunition contaminated with mustard-type blister agents.
 - d. Optical instruments are decontaminated using the M258-series kit or by blotting with rags and then wiping with an organic solvent. Optical instruments are air-dried (Lens cleaning solvent is used only on Lenses) OR if available, hot air is used.

- e. Communications equipment is decontaminated using hot air, when available, or by airing or weathering.
 - f. Food and water is decontaminated.
 - 1) Packaged rations are decontaminated with soap and water or DS2.
 - 2) Food is decontaminated only by Marines who know decontamination procedures.
 - 3) Decontaminated food is inspected and approved by medical personnel before being eaten.
 - 4) Water in closed containers is consumed after outside of containers is decontaminated using STB slurry or DS2.
 - 5) Contaminated water is not consumed and Marines do not try to purify it.
 - g. Designated personnel verify decontamination is complete using chemical detector kits. Any remaining contamination is decontaminated again.
- .9 ____ The unit continues the mission and maintains security.
- a. The unit maintains security during decontamination.
 - b. M60 machine guns are manned during decontamination based on the tactical situation.
 - c. Leaders rotate personnel between decontaminating, continuing the mission, and maintaining security, as needed.
 - d. The platoon commander adjusts the MOPP level to the NBC threat or IAW the order of the company commander.
 - e. The platoon commander and platoon sergeant coordinate for the resupply of chemical defensive equipment.
 - f. The platoon resumes the mission.

KEY INDICATORS:

CRITICAL STANDARDS

The platoon quickly reestablishes security; casualties are treated; chemical detection monitoring commences; unmasking procedures are conducted; partial decontamination is conducted; and, the platoon resumes its mission.

TASK: 10D.7.2 REACT TO A NUCLEAR ATTACK

CONDITION(S): The platoon is subjected to a nuclear attack without warning.

STANDARDS: EVAL: Y; N; NE

- .1 ____ The platoon reacts to an unwarned nuclear attack.
- a. Leaders supervise platoon's response to nuclear attack and determine status of casualties.
 - b. The platoon commander sends an NBC 1 report to battalion headquarters IAW unit SOP.
- .2 ____ The platoon takes action following nuclear detonation.
- a. Marines check for injuries and give first aid.

- b. Marines monitor each other for initial symptoms of radiation poisoning.
- c. Leaders report unit personnel and equipment status to immediate superiors.
- d. Platoon places radios back into operation and monitors nets.
- e. Vehicles and other equipment are returned to full combat-ready status.
- f. Designated Marines begin continuous monitoring with radiacmeters.
- g. Leaders reestablish security.
- h. Leaders check dosimetry device readings.
- i. When there is no longer a radiation hazard, only the senior leader present announces, "All clear."

.3 _____ The unit detects radiation.

- a. Marines shout. "Fallout!" upon detecting radiation or hearing the command FALLOUT.
- b. All Marines are aware of the radiation hazard.
- c. Leaders collect readings on radiacmeters and dosimeters from Marines and report readings to the platoon leader.
- d. All Marines with dosimeters and leaders know acceptable radiation levels.
- e. Leaders ensure at least two Marines (one primary and one alternate) are assigned to and can use each radiacmeter and radiac set.
- f. The platoon performs periodic or continuous monitoring IAW unit SOP.
- g. The platoon begins continuous monitoring with radiacmeters when a nuclear burst is reported or radiation of 1 cGy per hour is detected by periodic monitoring.
- h. Stationary units stop continuous monitoring with radiacmeters when the dose rate falls below 1 cGy per hour.
- i. Moving units perform continuous monitoring until movement is completed.
- j. Radiation levels are checked whenever the unit moves into a new area and before Marines dismount.

.4 _____ The platoon takes actions to reduce exposure to further radiation.

- a. Floors of vehicles are covered with a layer of sandbags.
- b. At least 24 hours of uncontaminated food and water for each Marine is kept on hand.
- c. The platoon will bypass the area unless the mission requires the contaminated area to be traversed.
- d. When crossing contaminated areas, leaders--
 - 1) Pick the route that allows the fastest travel consistent with the mission.
 - 2) Ensure doors and windows on vehicles are closed, consistent with security requirements.
 - 3) Go as fast as possible through the area while maintaining safety and security.
 - 4) Employ column formation when possible (to avoid throwing dust onto trailing vehicles) and increase the interval between vehicles.
- e. Marines drink and eat only from approved sources.

- f. Marines wear a handkerchief or scarf over their noses and mouths to avoid inhaling contaminated dust.
- g. Leaders monitor radiation levels for each squad and try to reduce exposure to higher radiation dose levels.
- h. Marines wear rubber overshoes (not chemical overboots) outside of vehicles in contaminated areas. Overshoes are stored outside vehicles before Marines enter vehicles.
- i. Marines should avoid handling contaminated materiel.
- j. The platoon monitors the communications nets to stay informed on the contamination threat in the unit's area.

.5 ____ The platoon decontaminates.

- a. Platoon performs partial decontamination by washing and brushing off fallout.
- b. Essential items are decontaminated first seats, crew-served weapons, individual weapons.
- c. Leaders supervise partial decontamination, ensuring unit can perform its assigned mission without exposure to excessive radiation.

.6 ____ The platoon continues the mission.

KEY INDICATORS:

CRITICAL STANDARDS

Within 2 seconds, dismounted personnel drop to prone positions and close their eyes. Within 2 seconds, mounted personnel drop down inside the vehicle and brace themselves for the blast wave. Within 30 seconds after the blast and shock waves, security is established. Within 5 minutes, radiological monitoring is started.

TASK: 10D.7.3 PREPARE FOR A CHEMICAL ATTACK

CONDITION(S): The platoon has received a warning to prepare for a chemical attack.

STANDARDS: EVAL: Y; N; NE

.1 ____ Platoon commander issues warning order.

- a. Orders Marines to put on chemical protective overgarments, overboots, mask with hood, and gloves (MOPP 4).
- b. Marines use the buddy-team method to don and check proper wear of protective suit.
- c. Individual Marines cover their equipment and weapons using ponchos, foliage, plastic, or any material that is expendable or readily decontaminated.
- d. Marines attach M9 paper to overgarments and to supplies.

.2 ____ Marines prepare their vehicles.

- a. Store, in the vehicle, water, rations, and equipment not being used.
- b. The gunner places a poncho or tarpaulin over the launcher (dependent on the tactical situation).

.3 ____ The platoon commander ensures that designated personnel conduct monitoring.

- a. Periodically with a chemical-agent detector kit.
 - b. Continuously monitoring with a chemical alarm.
 - c. Results are sent to the battalion commander.
- .4 _____ Platoon commander inspects to ensure that the platoon is prepared for a chemical attack.
- a. Decontamination equipment is available and serviceable.
 - b. Platoon personnel and equipment are prepared for a chemical attack.
 - c. The platoon is capable of operating in MOPP 4 for six hours.

KEY INDICATORS:

CRITICAL STANDARDS

Within eight minutes, MOPP gear is donned using the buddy-team method. The platoon's chemical-agent detector kit and chemical alarm are put into operation. Weapons and equipment are prepared, as required.

TASK: 10D.7.4 PREPARE FOR A NUCLEAR ATTACK

CONDITION(S): The platoon receives a STRIKWARN message or warning and prepares for a nuclear attack.

STANDARDS: EVAL: Y; N; NE

- .1 _____ The platoon prepares for a nuclear attack.
- a. The platoon commander instructs all personnel to prepare for a nuclear blast.
 - b. Vehicles are positioned so that the front of the vehicles are toward the expected direction of the blast.
- .2 _____ Drivers and gunners prepare vehicles.
- a. Remove and stow daysight and nightsights in vehicle.
 - b. Make sure the vehicles are dug in or in trenches or in cuts in roadways.
- .3 _____ Platoon members prepare vehicles and equipment.
- a. Place one or more layers of sandbags on top of each vehicle and around launcher (offers additional protection from gamma radiation).
 - b. Wet down the sandbags (enhances neutron radiation shielding and protects sandbags from thermal damage).
 - c. Disconnect and stow all radios and antennas. (In the offense, one radio is left on.)
 - d. Stow all water and rations inside the vehicles.
 - e. Tie down all loose equipment inside the vehicles. (This prevents equipment from being thrown about by the blast.)
- .4 _____ Marines prepare themselves.
- a. Position themselves as low as possible within the fighting positions.
 - b. Wear their helmets with chin strap secured.

ENCLOSURE (1)

- c. Brace themselves for the blast.
- .5 ____ The platoon commander inspects to ensure that the platoon is prepared for nuclear attack.
- a. Vehicles are ready.
 - b. Equipment is secured.
 - c. Personnel are prepared.

KEY INDICATORS:

CRITICAL STANDARDS

Within the tile specified in the STRIKWARN message, platoon vehicles and equipment are prepared and personnel assume covered positions.

ENCLOSURE (1)

X-D-47

SECTION 10E
AT (TOW) PLATOON

ENCLOSURE (1)

<u>TABLE OF CONTENTS</u>		<u>PAGE</u>
<u>MPH 10E.1 - MANEUVER</u>		
TASK 10E.1.1	. . . . . OCCUPY AN ASSEMBLY AREA	X-E-1
TASK 10E.1.2	. . . . . DEFEND A BATTLE POSITION	X-E-2
TASK 10E.1.3	. . . . . CONDUCT ANTIARMOR AMBUSH	X-E-4
TASK 10E.1.4	. . . . . CONDUCT TACTICAL ROAD MARCH	X-E-5
TASK 10E.1.5	. . . . . MOVE MOUNTED	X-E-7
TASK 10E.1.6	. . . . . CONDUCT PASSAGE OF LINES	X-E-8
TASK 10E.1.7	. . . . . MOVE (MOUT)	X-E-9
TASK 10E.1.8	. . . . . PREPARE DEFENSIVE POSITIONS (MOUT)	X-E-10
<u>MPH 10E.2 - RECONNAISSANCE AND SECURITY</u>		
TASK 10E.2.1	. . . . . EMPLOY AIR DEFENSE MEASURES	X-E-12
TASK 10E.2.2	. . . . . MAINTAIN OPERATION SECURITY	X-E-13
<u>MPH 10E.3 - SUSTAINMENT</u>		
TASK 10E.3.1	. . . . . PREPARE FOR COMBAT	X-E-16
TASK 10E.3.2	. . . . . CONSOLIDATE AND REORGANIZE	X-E-17
TASK 10E.3.3	. . . . . PLAN AND CONTROL COMBAT OPERATIONS	X-E-19
TASK 10E.3.4	. . . . . REPORT	X-E-21
TASK 10E.3.5	. . . . . SUSTAIN OPERATIONS	X-E-22
TASK 10E.3.6	. . . . . CONDUCT VEHICLE OPERATIONS	X-E-25
<u>MPH 10E.4 - NBC</u>		
TASK 10E.4.1	. . . . . REACT TO CHEMICAL ATTACK	X-E-26
TASK 10E.4.2	. . . . . REACT TO A NUCLEAR ATTACK	X-E-28
TASK 10E.4.3	. . . . . PREPARE FOR A CHEMICAL ATTACK	X-E-30
TASK 10E.4.4	. . . . . PREPARE FOR A NUCLEAR ATTACK	X-E-31

10E.1 MANEUVER

TASK: 10E.1.1 OCCUPY AN ASSEMBLY AREA

CONDITION(S): The platoon, as part of the battalion, occupies an assembly area, day or night, in preparation for combat operations.

STANDARDS: EVAL: Y; N; NE

- .1 _____ The platoon quartering party, under the supervision of the battalion quartering party NCOIC, marks the initial positions and acts as a guide when the platoon arrives. The quartering party performs the following tasks.
 - a. Reconnoiters the assembly area.
 - b. Checks for and marks obstacles.
 - c. Determines and marks vehicle locations.
 - d. Improves entrances and exits, as needed.
 - e. Waits in covered and concealed positions. As the platoon clears the release point, moves out to guide them to selected or designated area without the vehicles halting.
- .2 _____ The platoon establishes and maintains local security.
- .3 _____ MB alarms are positioned to provide warning.
- .4 _____ An OP is designated and provided with wire communications, if available.
- .5 _____ The platoon commander establishes a priority of work to include:
 - a. Repositioning of vehicles and weapons.
 - b. Establishing wire communications between OPs and the sections.
 - c. Observing radio listening silence by section and platoon.
 - d. Constructing firing positions.
 - e. Camouflaging vehicle positions.
 - f. Clearing sector of fire.
 - g. Designates PDF and FPL for automatic weapons.
 - h. Plans for indirect fires.
 - i. Preparing range cards.
 - j. Distributing ammunition and special equipment.
 - k. Conducting personal hygiene and field sanitation.
 - l. Conducting rehearsal of mission (when needed).
 - m. Inspecting personal equipment.
 - n. Prepares night sights and NVGs.
 - o. Testing weapons (if tactical situation permits).
 - p. Allowing designated Marines to rest while others are on security alert.
- .6 _____ The platoon commander coordinates with adjacent units.
 - a. Points out locations of OPs and dead space between units and works out how to cover it.

ENCLOSURE (1)

- b. Points out routes into and out of their positions and routes back to subsequent positions or assembly area, if applicable.
 - c. Exchanges CEOI information.
 - d. Exchanges information regarding the locations and types of obstacles employed.
- .7 ____ The platoon commander forwards a sector sketch to battalion CP. The sketches will include the following:
- a. Platoon sector, including left and right limits.
 - b. Section positions, primary, alternate, and supplementary.
 - c. Maximum engagement lines.
 - d. Azimuth and distance to a known point.
 - e. OPs and TRPs.
 - f. Mines and obstacles.
 - g. Indirect fire targets (covering dead space).
 - h. Direction of north.
 - i. Unit designation.
 - j. Date/time group.

KEY INDICATORS:

CRITICAL STANDARDS

The quartering party guides the platoon into designated positions. Priorities of work are established, and the platoon provides local security.

TASK: 10E.1.2 DEFEND A BATTLE POSITION

CONDITION(S): The platoon is ordered to occupy a battle position as part of the battalion or in support of a company.

STANDARDS: EVAL: Y; N; NE

- .1 ____ The platoon moves to the battle position location.
- .2 ____ Platoon commander and selected personnel, with a security element, conduct a reconnaissance of the position from the rear and secure the battle position.
- .3 ____ Platoon commander assigns tentative positions.
- .4 ____ Tentative positions are selected so that squads are separated a minimum of 300 meters (either laterally or in depth) so that no two squads can be suppressed at the same time by the fires of a single volley of artillery from one battery.
- .5 ____ Firing positions are selected.
 - a. Observation posts are provided with communications (wire).
 - b. M8 chemical alarms, if available, are set up.

ENCLOSURE (1)

- c. CP position is designated.
- .6 _____ Regardless of the method of employment, the entire platoon is assigned alternate and supplementary positions.
- .7 _____ Platoon members begin preparation of TOW firing positions either mounted or dismounted dependent on the operation order. If engineer assets are available, key personnel are present at each position to determine correct dimensions for defilade positions.
- .8 _____ Priorities of work is as follows:
 - a. Establish local security.
 - b. Emplace claymore mines.
 - c. Physically reconnoiter in front of the positions to become familiar with the terrain and to locate dead space.
 - d. Clear fields of fire.
 - e. Construct and improve the firing position.
 - f. Prepare range cards.
 - g. Camouflage entire position.
 - h. Stockpile ammunition, food, and water.
- .9 _____ Platoon commander coordinates with adjacent or collocated units.
- .10 _____ Wire is laid between sections and is checked for operability.
- .11 _____ Platoon commander prepares sector sketch. The sketch will include the following:
 - a. Platoon sector, including left and right limits.
 - b. Squad positions, primary, alternate, and supplementary.
 - c. Maximum engagement lines.
 - d. Azimuth and distance to a known point.
 - e. OPs and TRPs.
 - f. Mines and obstacles.
 - g. Indirect fire targets (covering dead space).
 - h. Direction of north.
 - i. Unit designation.
 - j. Date/time group.
- .12 _____ Platoon commander forwards the sector sketch to the battalion commander.
- .13 _____ The platoon is prepared to defend by the time specified in the operation order.
- .14 _____ The unit conducts defense.
- .15 _____ Sections or squads move to alternate firing positions to avoid return fire, indirect fire, and to obtain flank shots at attacking enemy elements. Sections are displaced based on the following factors:
 - a. Closing speed of the enemy.
 - b. Obstacles affecting enemy.

ENCLOSURE (1)

- c. Distance to subsequent positions.
 - d. Covered and concealed routes to subsequent positions.
 - e. Availability of armor and infantry overwatch elements.
 - f. Effectiveness of enemy fire upon the position.
- .16 ____ The platoon commander/section leader(s) controls the fires and movement of the platoon and sections to ensure that they provide maximum antiarmor fire support.
- .17 ____ The platoon breaks contact on order or continues to defend.
- .18 ____ Casualties are evacuated IAW the operation order.
- .19 ____ The platoon employs air defense measures consistent with the threat.
- .20 ____ The leader reports any change in his combat strength or tactical situation.

KEY INDICATORS:

CRITICAL STANDARDS

Within the time specified in the operation order, the platoon is prepared for the defense. Firing positions are selected. Enemy forces are detected and destroyed. Fires and movement are controlled. The platoon continues the defense or breaks contact (on order).

TASK: 10E.1.3 CONDUCT ANTIARMOR AMBUSH

CONDITION(S): The platoon/section, with attached infantry, is in an assembly area. The platoon/section is ordered to conduct an antiarmor ambush to destroy enemy vehicles and disrupt their reconnaissance efforts.

STANDARDS: EVAL: Y; N; NE

- .1 ____ The platoon commander/section leader and element leaders, accompanied by security personnel, conduct leader's reconnaissance to confirm the plan and return to the OHP.
- .2 ____ The security element departs the assembly area and moves to assigned positions where they can secure the flanks of the ambush site. Communications with the security element is maintained.
- .3 ____ The leader assigns positions that have:
- a. Good fields of fire into the kill zone, offering maximum standoff for the TOW system.
 - b. Cover and concealment,
 - c. An obstacle between the platoon/section and the kill zone.
 - d. Covered and concealed withdrawal routes.
- .4 ____ The platoon commander/section leader plans indirect fire targets in the kill zone to cover the platoon's withdrawal.
- .5 ____ If possible, platoon members prepare or improve covered and concealed positions while waiting for the enemy.
- .6 ____ Upon observing the enemy, the security team alerts the platoon/section leader. As a minimum, the team reports direction of movement, size of target, and any special weapons and equipment carried.

ENCLOSURE (1)

- .7 ____ All platoon/section members remain motionless and employ noise and light discipline until the enemy appears in killzone.
- .8 ____ The leader gives the method of engagement.
- .9 ____ The leader signals the initiating cue to commence firing.
 - a. Upon initiation of the ambush the remainder of the armor-killer team opens fire with remaining weapons.
 - b. Indirect fires should impact in the kill zone as soon as possible after the initiation of the ambush.
 - c. The platoon/section destroys the enemy.
- .10 ____ The leader signals cease fire.
- .11 ____ The platoon commander/section leader gives the signal to withdraw.
 - a. The platoon/section withdraws to the ORP.
 - b. Smoke is used to cover the withdrawal.
- .12 ____ The platoon commander/section leader determines the method of withdrawal.
- .13 ____ The leader reports IAW the operation order.
- .14 ____ The platoon/section halts at least one terrain feature away and disseminates information.

KEY INDICATORS:

CRITICAL STANDARDS

Reconnaissance is conducted. The platoon is the support element. Cover and concealment is maintained. Enemy vehicles are reported as they approach the ambush site. The leader determines method of engagement. Fires are initiated and stopped on signal. The enemy vehicles are destroyed.

TASK: 10E.1.4 CONDUCT TACTICAL ROAD MARCH

CONDITION(S): The platoon is ordered to conduct a tactical road march to an assembly area as part of the battalion. Speed is essential; unit integrity must be maintained; road nets are available; and enemy contact is unlikely.

STANDARDS: EVAL: Y; N; NE

- .1 ____ The platoon prepares for movement.
 - a. The platoon commander issues movement order, which must address: mission; enemy and friendly situations; destination; route, rate of march; catch-up speed; order of march; start point, location, and time; vehicle distances; release point; critical points; CS and CSS; communications; and location of the commander during the march.
 - b. Drivers perform before operation maintenance checks on their vehicles before movement.
 - c. Crews prepare the vehicles for movement IAW unit SOPs (antennas tied down, convoy markings, reflector tape for night movement).
 - d. Leaders inspect personnel and equipment.

ENCLOSURE (1)

- a. Leaders ensure each vehicle has a strip map, overlay, or marked map showing the route of march. As a minimum, the strip map will include the following information: start point, release point, critical points, and the distances between these points.

.2 _____ The platoon conducts road movement.

- a. The platoon begins movement and does not stop once it has started movement to the start point.
- b. The platoon arrives at the start point on time.
- c. Drivers maintain their prescribed vehicle positions in the march unit.
- d. Drivers maintain prescribed vehicle distance, whenever possible.
- e. Platoon follows the prescribed route without deviation.
- f. Drivers maintain prescribed vehicle rate of march.
- g. Drivers use prescribed catch-up speed to close with vehicle in front to reestablish vehicle distance.
- h. Movement is controlled mainly with arm-and-hand or flag set signals with radios serving only as a backup.
- i. Drivers perform during-operation maintenance checks on their vehicles at all halts.

.3 _____ The platoon maintains local security throughout the movement.

- a. Each section maintains 360 degree observation.
- b. Each squad is assigned a sector of fire.
- c. An air guard is designated for each squad and maintains surveillance against air attack.
- d. During scheduled halts, vehicles are moved to the side of the road maintaining the march interval between vehicles.

.4 _____ The platoon takes immediate action for a disabled vehicle.

- a. The disabled vehicle is moved off the route of march.
- b. A crew member of the disabled vehicle visually signals that the vehicle is disabled and for traffic to move around it.
- c. Platoon continues movement.
- d. The march unit commander is informed of the breakdown.
- e. Once the vehicle is clear of the route of march, personnel from the vehicle try to repair it.
- f. Personnel from the disabled vehicle establish local security, maintain aerial surveillance, and provide guide(s) to direct traffic.
- g. The vehicle rejoins the convoy.
 - 1) If the vehicle is repaired and its march unit has not passed, the vehicle rejoins the march unit at the end.
 - 2) If the vehicle cannot be repaired or if its march unit has passed, the vehicle waits for the serial's trail party.
- h. If the vehicle cannot be repaired in time to rejoin its march unit, vital equipment is transferred to another vehicle in the march unit.

.5 _____ The platoon completes the road movement.

- a. The platoon arrives at the release point at the specified time in the operation order.
- b. The platoon passes through the release point without stopping.
- c. The platoon quartermaster party guides (when used) meet the platoon at the release point.

KEY INDICATORS:

CRITICAL STANDARDS

The platoon arrives at the start point and release point at the time specified in the operation order, Prescribed positions, vehicle interval, and rate of march are maintained along the prescribed route, Security is maintained.

TASK: 10E.1.5 MOVE MOUNTED

CONDITION(S): The platoon/section is moving tactically either separately or as part of the battalion formation.

STANDARDS: EVAL: Y; N; NE

- .1 ____ The platoon maintains a tactical movement using traveling techniques.
 - a. The platoon maintains a column formation.
 - b. Sections maintain movement at a maximum safe speed or the speed set in the operation order.
 - c. The platoon maintains all-round security.
 - d. Vehicles maintain 50 to 100 meter interval and lateral dispersion.
 - e. Each driver maintains observation on the vehicle to the front. A designated individual maintains visual contact with the trailing vehicle.
- .2 ____ The platoon conducts a tactical movement using traveling overwatch.
- .3 ____ The platoon conducts a tactical movement using bounding overwatch.
 - a. Overwatch vehicles occupy concealed positions that permit observation and fires to cover the bounding element's movement.
 - b. The overwatch elements are in position and ready to fire before the bounding element moves.
 - c. The bounding section moves using a covered and concealed route to the next position.
 - d. The platoon commander/section leader controls movement of the platoon/section.
 - e. The platoon commander/section leader designates the next bound position.
- .4 ____ Unit maintains all-round security.
 - a. The platoon commander assigns the platoon a sector to observe and cover by fire.
 - b. Air guards are designated and posted for advance warning of air attack.
 - c. The unit maintains all-round observation at all times.
- .5 ____ The unit maximizes protection during movement.

ENCLOSURE (1)

- a. Covered and concealed routes are used, whenever possible.
 - b. Skylining is avoided.
 - c. Obvious kill zones are avoided.
 - d. Open areas are crossed quickly.
- .6 ____ The movement technique is changed to fit the likelihood of enemy contact.
- .7 ____ If contact is made, the overwatch element provides support.
- .8 ____ The vehicle crew in contact reacts to direct fire threat.
- .9 ____ Movement techniques are mainly controlled with arm and hand signals with radios used only as a backup.
- .10 ____ The platoon commander/section leader reports any changes in the tactical situation or unit status.

KEY INDICATORS:

CRITICAL STANDARDS

The unit moves using traveling, traveling overwatch, or bounding overwatch movement techniques consistent with the mission, time, or Threat.

TASK: 10E.1.6 CONDUCT PASSAGE OF LINES

CONDITION(S): The platoon/section has to pass through a stationary unit as part of its operations. The passage of lines may be designated as a forward or rearward passage of lines.

STANDARDS: EVAL: Y; N; NE

- .1 ____ The platoon commander/section leader makes coordination with the stationary unit, The same coordination is required whether the platoon/section is conducting a forward or rearward passage. This includes the following:
- a. Identification and types of unit(s) to pass.
 - b. Time(s) of departure and reentry.
 - c. Number of vehicles and types.
 - d. Mission of units and scheme of maneuver.
 - e. Battle handover line location.
 - f. Presence of NBC contamination.
 - g. Fire support plan.
 - h. Enemy situation.
 - i. Friendly locations (day and night) to include OPs and patrol routes.
 - j. Contact point, coordination points, and dismount point (if required).
 - k. Passage points, lanes, and routes.
 - l. Obstacle locations and types.

ENCLOSURE (1)

- m. Assembly areas or attack position.
 - n. Combat support and combat service support locations for emergency support provided by the stationary unit.
 - o. Recognition signals.
 - p. CEOI information.
- .2 _____ The platoon/section conducts a passage of lines.
- a. The platoon/section arrives at the designated contact point at the time specified displaying the coordinated recognition signals.
 - b. The unit picks up the stationary force guides, moves to the passage points, and continues to move on the designated passage lane without halting.
 - c. A platoon/section representative moves to the contact point(s) and counts platoon/section vehicles through each point to the passage point(s).
 - d. The platoon/section moves rapidly through passage lanes to an assembly area or to a new overwatch position.
 - e. The platoon/section avoids stationary force obstacles.
 - f. A platoon/section representative at the passage point tells guide when all elements have passed.

KEY INDICATORS:

CRITICAL STANDARDS

Coordination is made with the stationary unit commander. The platoon departs or returns through friendly lines at the coordinated time and place.

TASK: 10E.1.7 MOVE (MOUT)

CONDITION(S): The platoon/section is required to move through urban terrain.

STANDARDS: EVAL: Y; N; NE

- .1 _____ The platoon commander determines that his route will take him through an urban area.
- .2 _____ The platoon commander coordinates with other units in the march unit, Coordination includes:
 - a. Order of movement.
 - b. Intelligence about the route and Threat.
 - c. Availability of support assets (for example engineers).
- .3 _____ The platoon establishes an overwatch position outside the urban area.
- .4 _____ The platoon commander sends a reconnaissance element through the built-up area to establish overwatch on the far side.
- .5 _____ The rest of the platoon moves through the urban area on alternating sides of the street, as quickly as possible.
- .6 _____ Leaders control the movement using visual signals.

- .7 _____ Each vehicle commander maintains observation on the three dimensions of urban terrain (cellar, street, and roof).
- a. Driver takes evasive action as required.
 - b. Vehicles not being fired on initially will provide supporting fire.
 - c. Indirect fire or smoke may be used based on the threat and the mission.

KEY INDICATORS:

CRITICAL STANDARDS

The platoon treats the crossing as a danger area. Movement and overwatch elements are designated. The three dimensions of urban terrain are observed. Dispersion is maintained. Actions on contact are conducted correctly.

TASK: 10E.1.8 PREPARE DEFENSIVE POSITIONS (MOUT)

CONDITION(S): The platoon/section is given the mission to occupy a defensive position in an urban area.

STANDARDS: EVAL: Y; N; NE

- .1 _____ The platoon commander/section leader establishes security.
- a. Vehicles are concealed inside of or in the shadows of the buildings.
 - b. At least one OP with communications is emplaced within five minutes of occupation.
 - c. The chemical alarm is set up within ten minutes of occupying the position.
- .2 _____ The platoon commander/section leader conducts his leader's reconnaissance. The platoon/section leader-
- a. Develops a tentative plan.
 - b. Conducts reconnaissance of the position with section/squad leaders, and security.
 - c. Assigns sectors and OP locations.
 - d. Selects tentative building or vehicle locations for defensive positions.
 - e. Selects a location for the platoon/section CP.
- .3 _____ Platoon commander/section leader(s) designates escape routes and priority of work, to include sleeping and feeding, positioning of Class IV and V, booby traps, and unused rooms and buildings.
- .4 _____ The platoon/section establishes and marks routes for movement between positions, both within and between buildings.
- .5 _____ The platoon/section establishes wire communication between positions.
- .6 _____ The platoon commander/section leaders give sectors of fire to gunners for range cards.
- .7 _____ Range cards and sector sketches are prepared.
- .8 _____ Platoon commander/section leaders inspect positions for camouflage, fortification, and obstruction to the TOW missile flight paths.
- .9 _____ The platoon commander/section leader designates alternate and supplementary positions.

- .10 ____ Obstacles are emplaced to deny the enemy access to streets, buildings, or to slow his movement (include rooftops and inside buildings).
- .11 ____ Vehicle positions are selected.
 - a. Vehicles using firing positions hidden inside of buildings enter through the wall opposite the likely direction of enemy advance.
 - b. The building must be sturdy enough to support the weight of the vehicle.
 - c. There must be a 9-inch mask clearance between the launcher and any obstruction.
 - d. All glass from windows, doors, and furniture that could be blown around are removed.
 - e. Vehicle tracks into the building are filled in or brushed over.
- .12 ____ A dismounted TOW position within a building should have the following:
 - a. A sturdy building.
 - b. A ceiling at least 2 meters (7 feet) high.
 - c. A room that is at least 5 by 8 meters (17 by 24 feet) or larger.
 - d. Two square meters (20 square feet) of ventilation to the rear of the system (an open door 2 meters by 1 meter [7 by 3 feet provides that much ventilation).
 - e. There must be 9 inches of clearance between the bottom of the launch tube and the window sill.
 - f. Glass is removed from all windows and doors, and furniture and other objects that could be blown around are removed from the room.
 - g. Everyone in the room wears earplugs and is positioned forward of the rear of the launch tube.
- .13 ____ The platoon/section improves movement routes within the platoon/section position.
- .14 ____ The platoon/section prepares the withdrawal plan.
 - a. Routes are marked.
 - b. Leaders plan and disseminate primary and alternate withdrawal signals.
 - c. The withdrawal plan is rehearsed.
- .15 ____ The leader reports his unit's status and any change in the tactical situation or combat strength.

KEY INDICATORS:

CRITICAL STANDARDS

The platoon sets up security, occupies and prepares to defend per the operation order.

ENCLOSURE (1)

10E.2 RECONNAISSANCE AND SECURITY

TASK: 10E.2.1 EMPLOY AIR DEFENSE MEASURES

CONDITION(S): The platoon/section must operate in the presence of an enemy air threat.

STANDARDS: EVAL: Y; N; NE

.1 ____ The platoon/section employs an air attack warning procedure.

- a. The platoon/section establishes an alarm procedure to warn all personnel of an impending attack.
- b. Air guard personnel maintain continuous surveillance of assigned sector.
- c. OP personnel are assigned air guard duties.
- d. Special air guards are designated if OPs cannot effectively observe local airspace.
- e. Air guards are rotated.
- f. Air guards use correct search techniques.
- g. Air guards are familiar with signs of aircraft (sun reflections from aircraft canopies or cockpit windows; blade flash from rotating helicopter blades; smoke trails from jet aircraft, missiles, or rockets; dust and excessive movement of vegetation from helicopter blades; helicopter blade and aircraft engine noise).
- h. All Marines know emergency air attack signals.
- i. Air guards detect all aircraft in their assigned sectors.
- j. Air guards can distinguish friendly or hostile aircraft.
- k. Air guards immediately disseminate air attack warning.
- l. Air attack warning is disseminated in time for entire platoon/section to take damage-limiting measures.
- m. The platoon/section rehearses air attack alarms and warning.
- n. The senior leader present reports enemy aircraft actions. Priority intelligence requirements are included in the report.

.2 ____ The platoon/section takes attack avoidance measures.

- a. The platoon/section uses all available natural and man-made concealment.
- b. Personnel camouflage themselves and equipment.
- c. Shiny areas are covered or shaded, especially windshields and optics.
- d. Leaders inspect to ensure their units are well camouflaged.

.3 ____ The platoon/section takes damage-limiting measures.

- a. The platoon/section disperses consistent with the need for command and control.
- b. The platoon/section uses available cover to maximum advantage.
- c. The platoon/section continues to improve cover as time permits and consistent with mission.

.4 ____ The platoon/section takes measures to reduce the enemy air threat during convoys.

- a. When possible, movement is performed during limited visibility (night, rain, snow, fog) and under strict blackout conditions.

ENCLOSURE (1)

- b. The platoon/section moves along available hard surface roads to avoid dust, when possible.
 - c. When traveling on unpaved roads, the platoon/section reduces speed to eliminate dust.
 - d. The leader selects routes offering the best natural concealment.
 - e. When crossing open country, the platoon/section attempts to avoid casting long, highly visible shadows.
- .5 ____ The platoon/section takes measures to limit damage to the convoy.
- a. If attacked, the platoon/section uses ditches and embankments along the road and other available cover or, on order, continues movement.
 - b. The platoon/section travels in open column with 80 to 100 meters between vehicles, METT-TSL permitting.
 - c. If attacked, the platoon/section has a plan or SOP to disperse vehicles to prevent bunching. Drivers use evasive driving techniques.
 - d. Vehicles are staggered to avoid linear patterns.

KEY INDICATORS:

CRITICAL STANDARDS

The platoon or section maintains effective air attack warning system.

TASK: 10E.2.2 MAINTAIN OPERATION SECURITY

CONDITION(S): The platoon/section is operating where it can be detected by the enemy.

STANDARDS: EVAL: Y; N; NE

- .1 ____ The platoon/section employs camouflage and concealment.
- a. Personnel do not make unnecessary movement or move vehicles that would allow the enemy to observe them.
 - b. The outlines of the firing positions and vehicles are modified to blend their shadows with terrain shadows. Vehicles parked in shadows are moved as shadows shift.
 - c. Available shaded positions are used to hide the vehicles.
 - d. Obvious positions, such as road junctions and hilltops, are avoided.
 - e. Reflective surfaces are covered with nonreflective materials, such as cloth, mud, or camouflage.
 - f. Camouflage is used to break the distinctive outline of personnel and equipment.
 - g. The color of the camouflage is appropriate for the local environment.
 - h. The platoon/section practices dispersion of personnel and equipment.
 - i. The firing position camouflage does not obstruct weapons' fire or movement.
 - j. The foliage is not stripped near the fighting positions, and earthen berms are camouflaged.

ENCLOSURE (1)

- k. The crews cover, fill in, or brush over the vehicle tracks leading into the positions.
 - l. Leaders inspect their unit's camouflage.
- .2 ____ The platoon/section establishes OPs.
- a. Leaders supervise emplacement of OPs.
 - b. The OPs provide early warning out to a range that denies enemy observation or direct fire.
 - c. The OP personnel know in detail what they are to do, what actions to take if the enemy is detected, and when and how to occupy and return to the platoon/section's position.
 - d. Personnel in the perimeter know the locations of OPs within their sector.
 - e. OPs are repositioned when required by changing visibility conditions.
 - f. OPs are within range of supporting small-arms fire from the perimeter.
 - g. OPs have direct communication with the platoon/section.
 - h. OPs provide cover and concealment to occupants.
 - i. OPs have covered routes to and from each post.
 - j. OPs are operated in reliefs. At least two Marines man each OP relief.
- .3 ____ The platoon/section performs stand-to.
- a. Stand-to is performed at least 30 minutes before BMNT and EENT.
 - b. Personnel are awake, dressed, and ready for combat.
 - c. Vehicles are topped off with fuel, stacked with a basic load of ammunition, and loaded to the extent possible, less deployed weapons.
 - d. Weapons have been cleaned, serviced, assembled, and ready for action.
 - e. Platoon/section radios are checked (by briefly turning them on).
- .4 ____ The platoon/section performs silent watch.
- a. The platoon/section minimizes all sounds that might be detected by the enemy and interfere with friendly security elements.
 - b. Silent watch is maintained during lulls in battle and limited visibility.
- .5 ____ The platoon/section maintains local security.
- a. Local security is continuous and in all directions.
 - b. The security plan denies the enemy the element of surprise.
 - c. Leader locates positions and sectors of fire are coordinated to ensure overlapping fires.
 - d. Sleep and work plans ensure continuous alert surveillance.
- .6 ____ The platoon/section emplaces warning and security devices.
- a. Early warning devices and security devices are emplaced as available and as time permits--for example, trip flares, booby traps, field-expedient early warning devices, mechanical ambushes, chemical alarms.
 - b. All platoon/section personnel are aware of the type and location of warning devices and free lanes.

- c. Leaders supervise emplacement of warning devices.
- .7 ____ The platoon/section maintains noise and light discipline.
- a. Vehicle vision blocks covers are in position at night.
 - b. During evening stand-to, vehicle panel control lights are tested.
 - c. Movement of vehicles is reduced, mainly at night.
 - d. Volume on radios is turned down.
 - e. At night, Marines use red or blue-green filters on flashlights.
 - f. All unnecessary internal vehicle lights are turned off.
 - g. During darkness, one member of each vehicle checks the outside of vehicles for any visible light from inside.
 - h. Fast movements with vehicles and rapid idling are avoided.
 - i. Communication is limited to field telephones, when possible.
 - j. Personnel avoid making loud noises (for example, loud talking, laughing) or creating light at night (for example, building fires, smoking, unnecessary use of flashlights).
- .8 ____ The platoon/section maintains electronic and communications security.
- a. Radios are used only when alternate, more secure means of communication do not meet mission requirements.
 - b. Radio operators require other communicating stations to authenticate, using only authorized authentication systems.
 - c. The unit tries to use directional antennas, low radio power, remote antennas, minimum transmission times, and radio sites behind hills between itself and the enemy.
 - d. Leaders enforce net discipline, CEOI and radio procedures, and limit transmissions to official traffic.
 - e. Leaders ensure radios operate in secure mode, when possible. When not in secure mode, information is transmitted using authorized codes; transmission patterns are avoided.
- .9 ____ The unit exercises information security.
- a. Information is controlled on a need-to-know basis.
 - b. Fraternization with civilians is prohibited.
 - c. Uncontrolled maps do not show the friendly order of battle.
 - d. All vehicle markings are removed or masked--for example, unit or personal identification, convoy series markings.
 - e. Personnel do not carry sensitive information among personal items--for example, letters, notes, drawings, sketches, or photographs.
 - f. Each section exercises trash discipline.
 - g. The platoon/section safeguards weapons, ammunition, sensitive items, and classified documents.
- .10 ____ The platoon/section reestablishes local security after enemy contact.
- .11 ____ The platoon/section maintains security during mounted movement.

ENCLOSURE (1)

KEY INDICATORS:

CRITICAL STANDARDS

The platoon or section takes effective measures to disguise and conceal itself, to prevent the enemy from closing on or infiltrating without detection, and to deny the enemy information from radio transmissions.

10E.3 SUSTAINMENT

TASK: 10E.3.1 PREPARE FOR COMBAT

CONDITION(S): The platoon/section has received a warning order and is preparing for a combat operation.

STANDARDS: EVAL: Y; N; NE

- .1 ____ The platoon commander/section leader issues a warning order.
- .2 ____ The leader conducts a leader's reconnaissance.
 - a. The platoon/section chain of command conducts a map reconnaissance of the area of operation.
 - b. The platoon/section chain of command conducts mounted, dismounted, or aerial reconnaissance of the area of operation (time permitting),
 - c. The platoon commander/section leader takes selected personnel with him on the reconnaissance.
 - d. Communications equipment is taken with the reconnaissance element.
 - e. A communications check is made between the main body of the platoon/section and the reconnaissance element (depending on radio security status).
 - f. A security element is included with the reconnaissance group.
 - g. The reconnaissance is conducted so that the mission is not compromised.
 - h. Reconnaissance is conducted to obtain the following information, as required.
 - 1) Terrain (using KOCOA).
 - 2) Identify tentative platoon/section positions, to include:
 - a) Primary, alternate, and supplementary weapon positions.
 - b) Sectors, limits of fire.
 - c) Fire control measures, potential targets, target reference points, and engagement areas to be used.
 - 3) Identify materials that may be procured locally that will assist in completing the mission.
 - 4) Enemy situation (using SALUTE).
 - i. Identify maneuver control points (checkpoints and phase lines) on the ground from platoon/section location to as far forward as possible.
 - j. Information gathered on the reconnaissance is used to confirm or to change the original plan.

ENCLOSURE (1)

- k. New information gathered on the reconnaissance is quickly passed to higher headquarters.
- .3 ____ The platoon commander/section leader makes his tentative plan.
- .4 ____ The platoon/section prepares for combat. Preparation includes the following:
 - a. Drivers complete preventive maintenance checks and services and required maintenance in accordance with TM.
 - b. Vehicle commanders check all on-board communications equipment guns.
 - c. Crew conducts system operational checks and trouble shooting.
 - d. Section leaders draw ammunition, Class III, and rations.
 - e. All members camouflage vehicles, themselves, and individual equipment per the unit SOP, under section and squad leaders' supervision.
 - f. All members bring their individual equipment to the vehicles. Load vehicles per the load plan under the supervision of a section or squad leader.
 - g. Section leaders check night sights and NVGs.
 - h. Section leaders obtain CEOI.
- .5 ____ The leader receives and issues the operation order.
- .6 ____ Leaders inspect personnel and equipment. All required equipment and ammunition (per operation order and unit SOP) is checked and loaded.
- .7 ____ The platoon/section rehearses drills and operational or movement techniques that apply to the mission.
- .8 ____ The platoon/section is prepared to move by the time specified in operation order.

KEY INDICATORS:

CRITICAL STANDARDS

The platoon commander conducts a leaders reconnaissance. Within 10 minutes of the receipt of the warning order, squads are notified. The platoon is prepared for combat within the time specified in the order.

TASK: 10E.3.2 CONSOLIDATE AND REORGANIZE

CONDITION(S): The platoon/section has completed a combat operation. The platoon/section is required to consolidate and reorganize.

STANDARDS: EVAL: Y; N: NE

- .1 ____ The platoon/section consolidates.
 - a. The platoon commander/section leader positions or repositions the OP forward to provide security. He ensures that members are alert for possible counterattack.
 - b. The platoon/section occupies or reoccupies hasty firing positions and establishes security.
 - c. Leaders adjust positions to cover likely avenues of approach and to ensure mutual support between section/squads and adjacent units.
 - d. The platoon/section conducts a search of the area to be sure it is free of the enemy.

- e. The platoon commander/section leader assigns or reassigns temporary sectors of fire.
- f. Section leaders assign sectors to cover likely avenues of approach.
- g. Firing positions and obstacles are prepared as required or as the tactical situation permits.
- h. Section leaders designate personnel to search and guard PWs and equipment.

.2 ____ The platoon/section conducts reorganization.

- a. The chain of command and communication nets are reestablished.
- b. Key positions are filled.
- c. Leaders redistribute ammunition and equipment.
- d. Section leaders report ammunition, personnel, PWs, vehicles, and equipment status to the platoon commander, and request medical assistance.
- e. The platoon commander/section leader reports status of and requests replacement for personnel, vehicles, weapons, ammunition, fuel, and equipment.
- f. PWs are handled in accordance with the five S's and tagged.
 - 1) Search for weapons, documents, and equipment.
 - 2) Silence, use a gag if necessary.
 - 3) Separate by rank.
 - 4) Speed PWs to battalion collection point(s) along with captured documents and equipment (consistent with the situation).
 - 5) Safeguard the PWs from harm. Allow them to retain protective mask and personal safety equipment.
 - 6) Tag PWs, documents, and equipment with the date, time, location, and unit of capture.
 - 7) Designated guards take PWs to collection point.
- g. Designated Marines give first aid to casualties.
 - 1) Designated Marines gather personal effects and classified documents (CEOI, maps, orders, overlays, key lists, and other equipment) of killed-in-action and wounded-in-action. (Personal effects stay with wounded-in-action.)
 - 2) Evacuate killed-in-action to battalion trains (transport separate from wounded).
- h. The platoon/section prepares to engage counterattacking enemy or continues with the next mission.
- i. The platoon commander/section leader establishes priorities for vehicle maintenance or recovery.
- j. The platoon commander/section leader reports any subsequent changes to the tactical situation or combat strength.

ENCLOSURE (1)

KEY INDICATORS:

CRITICAL STANDARDS

The platoon establishes local security. It is reorganized and prepared to repel a counterattack, or to continue the mission.

TASK: 10E.3.3 PLAN AND CONTROL COMBAT OPERATIONS

CONDITION(S): As required by the mission.

STANDARDS: EVAL: Y; N; NE

- .1 ____ The platoon commander/section leader issues a verbal warning order that includes:
 - a. The mission statement (WHO, WHAT, WHEN, WHERE, WHY).
 - b. The friendly and enemy situations.
 - c. The earliest time of movement.
 - d. Who is to receive the operation order and the time and location for issuance.
 - e. The warning order is given to all subelement leaders to ensure that all individual Marines receive the order.
- .2 ____ The platoon commander/section leaders (time permitting) conduct a leader's reconnaissance.
- .3 ____ The platoon commander/section leader makes a tentative plan.
 - a. The tentative plan is consistent with METT-TSL.
 - b. The tentative plan supports the commander's intent.
 - c. The tentative plan supports accomplishment of all specified and implied tasks.
- .4 ____ The platoon commander/section leader issues an operation order (oral, written, or combination).
 - a. The operation order is issued at the specified time and location.
 - b. Detailed, formatted notes (five-paragraph field order) are used to reinforce presentation of the order.
 - c. The operation order includes:
 - 1) Unit task organization.
 - 2) Friendly and enemy situations.
 - 3) A clear, concise mission statement (WHO, WHAT, WHEN, and WHERE, based on commander's intent.
 - 4) Commander's intent.
 - 5) A plan for movement and control measures (operations overlay).
 - 6) A plan for fires both direct and indirect.
 - a) Direct fire control measures as appropriate (that is, TRP, engagement areas, sectors and limits of fire, target priorities for each weapon system).

ENCLOSURE (1)

- b) Indirect fires planned in coordination with the FO or
- 7) Missions for all subordinate organic and attached units, and necessary coordinating instructions.
- 8) A plan for reorganization and service support.
- 9) Communications-electronics operation instructions information and platoon/section leader command post location.
- d. The platoon commander/section leader asks for and answers all pertinent questions pertaining to the operation order.
- e. A time check (time-hack) is given.
- f. Leaders query personnel on items stated as SOP in the operation order to ensure that the items are understood by all personnel.
- g. The platoon commander/section leader takes one-third or less of his available time and allows subordinates two-thirds or more of time remaining.
- .5 ____ The platoon/section chain of command contacts supporting units as required and arranges for necessary support.
- .6 ____ The platoon/section chain of command coordinates with adjacent unit, as required.
- .7 ____ Leaders control direct fires by:
 - a. Issuing fire commands.
 - b. Referencing TRPs and/or sectors of fire or PDFs.
 - c. Establishing or changing target priorities.
- .8 ____ Leaders control indirect fire support through the forward observer, FAC, or fire support coordinator (FSC) by:
 - a. Engaging or shifting from planned targets.
 - b. Employing fire support coordination measures, such as coordinated fire lines, boundaries, and free-fire zones, to speed the responsiveness of fire support units.
- .9 ____ The platoon commander/section leader issues fragmentary orders, as required, to control operations.
 - a. Task organization. If changed.
 - b. Situation. Brief summary of situation.
 - c. Mission. If mission has changed.
 - d. Execution.
 - 1) Instructions to subordinate units on actions that must be accomplished immediately. If there is no change for combat support assets, state "Remainder, no change."
 - 2) Fire support. Changes to priority of fires (as applicable).
 - 3) Changes to coordinating instructions (if any).
 - e. Command and signal, Current locations of headquarters.
- .10 ____ Leaders maintain orientation to the terrain (land navigation).
- .11 ____ Leaders control unit movements and fires, using graphics, radios, telephone or wire, messengers, and visual control measures (as appropriate), and report crossing start point/line of departure, phase lines, checkpoints, and other control measures as directed.

- .12 ____ The platoon commander/section leader establishes and operates a net control station.

KEY INDICATORS:

CRITICAL STANDARDS

The leaders issue the warning orders, operation orders, and fragmentary orders in a clear and concise manner covering all key elements. They control the combat operation through the use of direct fires, indirect fires, coordination with adjacent units, land navigation, and graphic and visual control measures.

TASK: 10E.3.4 REPORT

CONDITION(S): The unit has information that must be forwarded to the next higher headquarters.

STANDARDS: EVAL: Y; N; NE

- .1 ____ The unit submits a SITREP IAW unit SOP.
- .2 ____ The SITREP is sent by the fastest means available.
- .3 ____ The SITREP is dispatched within five minutes after receipt of the information.
- .4 ____ The unit submits the report even if the information is not complete.
- a. The unit submits a SHELREP/MORTREP/BOMBREP IAW unit SOP.
 - b. The unit submits the report within 30 minutes after event.
 - c. The unit submits the report even if the information is not complete.
 - d. The encryption is IAW the unit and higher headquarters SOP.
- .5 ____ The unit submits a MIJI report.
- a. The unit reports all meaoning, intrusion, jamming, and interference.
 - b. The unit submits the report to the net control station within 10 minutes after event occurs.
 - c. The report is submitted by a secure means, when possible.
 - d. The unit follows the unit SOP.
- .6 ____ The unit submits an operational occurrence report. (For example, crossing LD, reaching checkpoints, logistic reports, intelligence reports.)
- a. The unit submits a report immediately or as soon as the tactical situation permits.
 - b. The unit submits the report IAW the unit SOP or operation orders/fragmentary orders currently in effect.
- .7 ____ The unit submits NBC 1 report.
- a. The unit submits an NBC 1 initial report within five minutes after the attack.
 - b. The unit submits its reports to higher headquarters.
 - c. The report is sent by a secure means, when possible.
 - d. The report includes the most reliable and complete information available.

- e. The report has the correct precedence:
 - 1) Flash precedence for initial burst.
 - 2) Immediate precedence for subsequent attacks.

.8 ____ The unit submits an NBC 4 report.

- a. The unit submits its reports to higher headquarters.
- b. The report is sent by a secure means, when possible.
- c. The report includes the most reliable and complete information available.

KEY INDICATORS:

CRITICAL STANDARDS

All reports are submitted on time, in the correct format, and disseminated to the appropriate level.

TASK: 10E.3.5 SUSTAIN OPERATIONS

CONDITION(S): The platoon/section conduct extended operations.

STANDARDS: EVAL: Y; N; NE

.1 ____ The platoon/section submits status reports.

- a. The platoon/section reports personnel strength and casualties IAW unit SOP.
- b. The platoon/section reports vehicle and equipment strength, status, and losses IAW unit SOP.
- c. The platoon/section reports supply status IAW unit SOP.
- d. Reports are submitted following major changes in status, which impair mission accomplishment or IAW unit SOP.

.2 ____ Leaders ensure the platoon/section is sustained.

- a. The platoon commander/section leader anticipates resupply needs and ensures timely resupply and maintenance requests are submitted.
- b. Platoon sergeant ensures required basic load and platoon/section equipment are on hand.
- c. Platoon sergeant issues timely ammunition resupply requests.
- d. Platoon sergeant supervises ammunition prestockage, when used.
- e. Platoon sergeant ensures maintenance is actively supervised by subordinate leaders.
- f. Platoon sergeant coordinates and supervises resupply and maintenance support.
- g. Platoon sergeant requests fortification materials.

.3 ____ Section leaders supervise maintenance of section vehicles and equipment.

.4 ____ Squad leaders implement squad sleep plan.

.5 ____ Squad leaders supervise maintenance of squad and personal weapons and equipment.

ENCLOSURE (1)

- a. All leaders know the locations of combat trains and field trains.
- .6 ____ Leaders submit support requests.
- a. Requests are based on actual losses and expenditures, and forecasted requirements.
 - b. The platoon/section requests enough replacement personnel, rations, fuel, oil, lubricants, ammunition, and repair parts to meet expected needs until next resupply.
 - c. Requests are submitted soon enough so as not to impair current or future operations.
- .7 ____ The platoon/section coordinates resupply.
- a. Resupply is performed as quickly as possible in covered and concealed positions.
 - b. Supplies are distributed throughout unit consistent with their current and anticipated operations and needs.
 - c. When supplies have been prestocked at firing positions, the platoon/section uses prestocked items first.
 - d. When possible, platoon/section conducts resupply in position instead of out of position.
 - e. The unit prepares a resupply point, when appropriate.
 - f. Unit resupplies without restricting its communications, movement, ability to provide direct fire support.
- .8 ____ The platoon/section rearms.
- a. The platoon/section prepares for rearming.
 - b. The crew unpacks the ammunition and loads it on the vehicle IAW the vehicle TM and unit SOP.
 - c. Crew unpacks only enough ammunition to replenish it IAW SOP.
- .9 ____ The platoon/section refuels.
- a. When near the enemy, driver backs vehicle out of the position and moves, undetected, along a covered and concealed route to the fuel tanker.
 - b. When refueled out of position by a fuel tanker, the vehicle is positioned as directed by the fuel tanker crew.
 - c. The vehicle is refueled IAW TM.
 - d. The vehicle returns to the platoon/section immediately after refueling.
- .10 ____ The platoon/section conducts preventive maintenance on organizational equipment.
- a. The crew performs PMCS on all equipment when the situation permits.
 - b. Maintenance is performed IAW TMs, lubrication orders, and any other maintenance directives.
 - c. Priority for maintenance is given to weapons, vehicles, and radios.
 - d. Units perform emergency repairs as far forward as possible to ensure continued operation and availability of equipment.
 - e. Leaders inspect maintenance performed by their subordinates.
- .11 ____ The platoon/section sustains Marines.
- a. Ill and injured Marines who do not warrant evacuation are given medical treatment as soon as possible.

ENCLOSURE (1)

- b. Marines try to get enough food, water, and rest.
- c. Leaders prescribe a uniform consistent with weather conditions and the mission.
- d. Corpsmen routinely check the physical well-being of Marines.
- a. Marines are trained to administer first aid.

.12 _____ The platoon/section performs field sanitation operations.

- a. Marines shave each day.
- b. Minor wounds (scratches and abrasion:) are cleaned and bandaged to prevent infection.
- c. If wearing chemical protective overgarments continuously, Marines try to bathe and change undergarments every 48 hours to avoid rashes.
- d. Each Marine's ALICE pack or sea bag contains personal hygiene equipment and spare clothing IAW unit SOP.
- e. Marines drink only potable water.
- f. The platoon/section maintains its prescribed load of water purification materials IAW unit SOP.
- g. The unit purifies potable water using iodine tablets, calcium hypochloride ampules, or by boiling.
- h. The unit builds heads at least 100 feet from water sources and 100 meters from mess areas. Hand-washing facilities are provided with a soakage pit beneath.
- i. Marines prepare, use, and fill catholes during mobile operations.
- j. All food is protected from extreme temperatures, moisture, and pests.
- k. Marines clean and disinfect mess kits before and after use.
- l. Measures are taken to reduce exposure to insects and rodents:
 - 1) Unit locations consistent with the mission are chosen to avoid pest:.
 - 2) Marines use protective measures to include wearing netting, using repellent, spraying, dusting, poisoning, and trapping.
- m. Marines wash hands before eating or preparing food.
- n. Leaders ensure their Marines follow field sanitation procedures.

.13 _____ The platoon/section plans and conducts tactical feeding.

- a. The platoon/section maintains local security and noise and light discipline.
- b. Marines do not use heat tabs in enclosed areas where fumes can be trapped.
- c. The platoon/section burns or buries garbage, waste, and trash. When not authorized, waste is carried with the platoon/section and disposed of as soon as possible.
- d. Marines remain 3 to 5 meters apart in the serving line and at the eating site.

KEY INDICATORS:

CRITICAL STANDARDS

Essential supply requirements are fulfilled and maintenance is performed on a routine basis. The health and well-being of Marines are maintained.

ENCLOSURE (1)

TASK: 10E.3.6 CONDUCT VEHICLE OPERATIONS

CONDITION(S): The platoon/section is conducting a tactical operation.

STANDARDS: EVAL: Y; N; NE

- .1 ____ The crew recovers or evacuates vehicles.
- a. The vehicle is recovered or evacuated as quickly as possible.
 - b. Personnel not directly involved in recovery or evacuation are dismounted and in position away from vehicle to provide local security.
 - c. The leader redistributes men and equipment among other vehicles, as necessary, consistent with the tactical situation.
 - d. Recovery or evacuation is performed IAW technical manual.
 - e. Recovery equipment is inspected before use to ensure it is serviceable.
 - f. Only one signalmen is used to control the recovery operation.
- .2 ____ The crew abandons or destroys its vehicle.
- a. The leader decides to abandon or destroy the vehicle only after every effort has been made to recover or evacuate the vehicle. The decision to abandon or destroy vehicle is made by platoon/section leader or, when he is unavailable, the senior leader present.
 - b. The vehicle is stripped of all equipment possible.
 - c. The vehicle crew dismounts vehicle and moves to covered and concealed position at least 50 meters from the vehicle.
 - d. The vehicle is destroyed within five minutes.
 - e. The vehicle and equipment are destroyed IAW FM 23-34.
 - f. If abandoned, the vehicle is rendered inoperative so that it is of no immediate use to the enemy but can be readily repaired.

KEY INDICATORS:

CRITICAL STANDARDS

The crew safely recovers or evacuates its damaged vehicle. The crew abandons or destroys a vehicle that cannot be recovered or evacuated.

ENCLOSURE (1)

TASK: 10E.4.1 REACT TO CHEMICAL ATTACK

CONDITION(S): The unit is subjected to a chemical attack without warning.

STANDARDS: EVAL: Y; N; NE

.1 ____ The unit reacts to a chemical attack.

- a. The unit performs appropriate first aid on chemical casualties:
 - 1) Nerve: Give nerve antidote injection. Artificial respiration may be necessary.
 - 2) Blister: None.
 - 3) Blood: Inhale amyl nitrite. Artificial respiration may be necessary.
- b. Leaders supervise the unit's response to the chemical attack and determine the status of the casualties.
- c. The platoon leader forwards NBC 1 report to battalion headquarters IAW unit SOP.

.2 ____ The unit detects chemical agent.

- a. Marines attach chemical-agent paper to overgarments and to supplies.
- b. The chemical-agent detector kit is used when the platoon is under chemical attack, when a chemical attack is likely, or when the presence of a chemical agent is suspected.
- c. Designated personnel perform periodic monitoring using the chemical-agent detector kits.
- d. The unit performs continuous monitoring using chemical alarms and sends the results to higher headquarters.
- e. Leaders ensure at least two Marines (one primary and one alternate) are assigned to and can use each chemical agent detector kit and chemical alarm.
- f. Positive tests using chemical-agent paper are verified using the chemical detector kit.

.3 ____ The unit minimizes additional contamination.

- a. Leaders order crossing of a known contaminated area only when the area cannot be bypassed. When possible, lanes are cleared through contaminated areas.
- b. When possible, Marines avoid handling contaminated materiel.
- c. Vital sustaining items, such as water, spare clothing, protective mask filters, and food, are carried inside vehicles.
- d. The platoon monitors the communication net to stay informed on the contamination threat in the unit's area.

.4 ____ The unit unmask.

- a. Before unmasking, the area is checked using the chemical-agent detector kit, when possible.
- b. Unmasking is performed only when the chemical agent is identified as nonpersistent and decontamination is no longer needed.
- c. Only the commander or senior leader present announces, "All clear."
- d. The leader announces, "All clear," only after all unmasking procedures have been completed.

- e. No Marine unmask until he hears an authenticated "All clear" from his commander or the senior leader present.
- .5 _____ Marines perform basic skills decontamination.
- a. Marines use towelettes to wipe down hood, mask, weapons, gloves, and helmets.
 - b. Marines use sticks or other objects to remove globs of liquid chemical contamination on overgarments.
 - c. The unit completes basic skill decontamination within 15 minutes.
- .6 _____ The unit performs partial decontamination. Partial decontamination allows the unit to perform the assigned mission without additional chemical casualties.
- a. Contaminated clothing and equipment are partly decontaminated as soon as possible.
 - b. Essential items are decontaminated first--driver's area, gunner's sight, individual weapon.
- .7 _____ The unit decontaminates individual equipment.
- a. Any gross contamination is removed using sticks, rags, or other objects, then those sticks, rags, and objects are buried.
 - b. Boots are decontaminated with the personal decontamination kit, washed with soapy water, and rinsed.
 - c. Metal equipment is decontaminated using DS2, soapy water, or the personal decontamination kit.
 - d. Individual weapons are decontaminated with the personal decontamination kit, disassembled, washed in soapy water, rinsed, dried, oiled, reassembled, and test fired.
 - e. Load-bearing equipment is decontaminated.
 - 1) Light contamination: Decontaminated using personal decontamination kit.
 - 2) Heavy contamination: Decontaminated at a personnel decontamination station or buried there and replaced with new 782 gear.
- .8 _____ The unit decontaminates unit equipment.
- a. As soon as possible, the unit decontaminates unit equipment to continue the mission and avoid further casualties.
 - b. Vehicles and crew-served weapons are decontaminated.
 - 1) Areas essential to the vehicle or weapon operation are decontaminated using the M11 portable decontaminating apparatus and, when necessary, field-expedient measures such as mud or rags.
 - 2) Light contamination is removed by airing.
 - 3) Heavier decontamination is removed using DS2, soapy water, solvents, or slurry.
 - 4) Contaminated wood surfaces and tires are decontaminated with STB slurry.
 - 5) No DS2 is used on gunner sights.
 - c. Ammunition is decontaminated.
 - 1) Ammunition is decontaminated with soapy water, wiped with organic solvent, thoroughly dried, and aerated.
 - 2) Ammunition corroded from contact with chemical agents is disposed of, mainly if the brass cannot be cleaned.

ENCLOSURE (1)

- 3) STB is not used on ammunition contaminated with mustard-type blister agents.
 - d. Optical instruments are decontaminated using the M258-series kit or by blotting with rags and then wiping with an organic solvent. Optical instruments are air-dried (lens cleaning solvent is used only on lenses) OR if available, hot air is used.
 - e. Communications equipment is decontaminated using hot air, when available, or by airing or weathering.
 - f. Food and water is decontaminated.
 - 1) Packaged rations are decontaminated with soap and water or DS2.
 - 2) Food is decontaminated only by Marines who know decontamination procedures.
 - 3) Decontaminated food is inspected and approved by medical personnel before being eaten.
 - 4) Water in closed containers is consumed after outside of containers is decontaminated using STB slurry or DS2.
 - 5) Contaminated water is not consumed and Marines do not try to purify it.
 - g. Designated personnel verify decontamination is complete using chemical detector kits. Any remaining contamination is decontaminated again.
- .9 _____ The unit continues the mission and maintains security.
- a. The unit maintains security during decontamination.
 - b. M60 machine guns are manned during decontamination based on the tactical situation.
 - c. Leaders rotate personnel between decontaminating, continuing the mission, and maintaining security, as needed.
 - d. The platoon leader adjusts the MOPP level to the NBC threat or IAW the order of the company commander.
 - e. The platoon leader and platoon sergeant coordinate for the resupply of chemical defensive equipment.
 - f. The platoon resumes the mission.

KEY INDICATORS:

CRITICAL STANDARDS

The unit quickly reestablishes security; casualties are treated; chemical detection monitoring commences; unmasking procedures are conducted; partial decontamination is conducted; and, the platoon resumes its mission.

TASK: 10E.4.2 REACT TO A NUCLEAR ATTACK

CONDITION(S): The unit is subjected to a nuclear attack without warning.

ENCLOSURE (1)

STANDARDS: EVAL: Y; N; NE

- .1 ____ The unit reacts to an unwarned nuclear attack.
 - a. Leaders supervise unit's response to nuclear attack and determine status of casualties.
 - b. The platoon leader sends and NBC 1 report to battalion headquarters IAW unit SOP.
- .2 ____ The unit takes action following nuclear detonation.
 - a. Marines check for injuries and give first aid.
 - b. Buddy teams monitor each other for initial symptoms of radiation poisoning.
 - c. Leaders report unit personnel and equipment status to immediate superiors.
 - d. Unit places radios back into operation and monitors nets.
 - e. Vehicles and other equipment are returned to full combat-ready status.
 - f. Designated Marines begin continuous monitoring with radiacmeters.
 - g. Leaders reestablish security.
 - h. Leaders check dosimetry device readings.
 - i. When there is no longer a radiation hazard, only the senior leader present announces, "All clear."
- .3 ____ The unit detects radiation.
 - a. Marines shout, "Fallout!" upon detecting radiation or hearing the command FALLOUT.
 - b. All Marines are aware of the radiation hazard.
 - c. Leaders collect readings on radiacmeters and dosimeters from Marines and report readings to the platoon leader.
 - d. All Marines with dosimeters and leaders know acceptable radiation levels.
 - e. Leaders ensure at least two Marines (one primary and one alternate) are assigned to and can use each radiacmeter and radiac set.
 - f. The unit performs periodic or continuous monitoring IAW unit SOP.
 - g. The unit begins continuous monitoring with radiacmeters when a nuclear burst is reported or radiation of 1 cGy per hour is detected by periodic monitoring.
 - h. Stationary units stop continuous monitoring with radiacmeters when the dose rate falls below 1 cGy per hour.
 - i. Moving units perform continuous monitoring until movement is completed.
 - j. Radiation levels are checked whenever the unit moves into a new area and before Marines dismount.
- .4 ____ The unit takes actions to reduce exposure to further radiation.
 - a. Floors of vehicles are covered with a layer of sandbags.
 - b. At least 24 hours of uncontaminated food and water for each soldier is kept on hand.
 - c. The platoon will bypass the area unless the mission requires the contaminated area to be traversed.
 - d. When crossing contaminated areas, leaders--
 - 1) Pick the route that allows the fastest travel consistent with the mission.

ENCLOSURE (1)

- 2) Ensure doors, windows, and hatches on vehicles are closed, consistent with security requirements.
 - 3) Go as fast as possible through the area while maintaining safety and security.
 - 4) Employ column formation when possible (to avoid throwing dust onto trailing vehicles) and increase the interval between vehicles.
- e. Marines drink and eat only from approved sources.
 - f. Marines wear a handkerchief or scarf over their noses and mouths to avoid inhaling contaminated dust.
 - g. Leaders monitor radiation levels for each squad and try to reduce exposure to higher radiation dose levels.
 - h. Marines wear rubber overshoes (not chemical overboots) outside of vehicles in contaminated areas. Overshoes are stored outside vehicles before Marines enter vehicles.
 - i. Marines should avoid handling contaminated materiel.
 - j. The unit monitors the communications nets to stay informed on the contamination threat in the unit's area.

.5 ____ The unit decontaminates.

- a. Unit performs partial decontamination by washing and brushing off fallout.
- b. Essential items are decontaminated first--driver's area, gunner's sight, individual weapon.
- c. Leaders supervise partial decontamination, ensuring unit can perform its assigned mission without exposure to excessive radiation.

.6 ____ The unit continues the mission.

KEY INDICATORS:

CRITICAL STANDARDS

Within 2 seconds, dismounted personnel drop to prone positions and close their eyes. Within 2 seconds, mounted personnel drop down inside the vehicle and brace themselves for the blast wave. Within 30 seconds after the blast and shock waves, security is established. Within 5 minutes, radiological monitoring is started.

TASK: 101E4.3 PREPARE FOR A CHEMICAL ATTACK

CONDITION(S): The platoon has received a warning to prepare for a chemical attack.

STANDARDS: EVAL: Y; N; NE

.1 ____ Platoon commander issues warning order.

- a. Orders members to put on chemical protective overgarments, overboots, mask with hood, and gloves (MOPP 4).
- b. Platoon members use the buddy-team method to don and check proper wear of protective suit.

ENCLOSURE (1)

- c. Individual platoon members cover their equipment and weapons using ponchos, foliage, plastic, or any material that is expendable or readily decontaminated.
 - d. Platoon members attach M9 paper to overgarments and to supplies.
- .2 ____ The vehicle crew prepares the vehicle.
- a. Store, in the vehicle, water, rations, and equipment not being used.
 - b. The gunner places a poncho or tarpaulin over the launcher (dependent on the tactical situation).
- .3 ____ The platoon commander ensures that designated personnel conduct monitoring.
- a. Periodically with a chemical-agent detector kit.
 - b. Continuously monitoring with a chemical alarm.
 - c. Results are sent to the battalion commander.
- .4 ____ Platoon commander inspects to ensure that the platoon is prepared for a chemical attack.
- a. Decontamination equipment is available and serviceable.
 - b. Platoon personnel and equipment are prepared for a chemical attack.
 - c. The platoon is capable of operating in MOPP 4 for six hours.

KEY INDICATORS:

CRITICAL STANDARDS

Within eight minutes, MOPP gear is donned using the buddy-team method. The platoon's chemical-agent detector kit and chemical alarm are put into operation. Weapons and equipment are prepared, as required.

TASK: 10E.4.4 PREPARE FOR A NUCLEAR ATTACK

CONDITION(S): The platoon receives a STRIKWARN message or warning and prepares for a nuclear attack.

STANDARDS: EVAL: Y; N; NE

- .1 ____ The platoon prepares for a nuclear attack.
- a. The platoon leader instructs all personnel to prepare for a nuclear blast.
 - b. Vehicles are positioned so that the front of the vehicles are toward the expected direction of the blast.
- .2 ____ Drivers and gunners prepare vehicles.
- a. Remove and stow daysight and nightsights in vehicle.
 - b. Make sure the vehicles are dug in or in trenches or in cuts in roadways.
- .3 ____ Platoon members prepare vehicles and equipment.
- a. Place one or more layers of sandbags on top of each vehicle and around launcher (offers additional protection from gamma radiation).
 - b. Wet down the sandbags (enhances neutron radiation shielding and protects sandbags from thermal damage).

ENCLOSURE (1)